

User's Guide

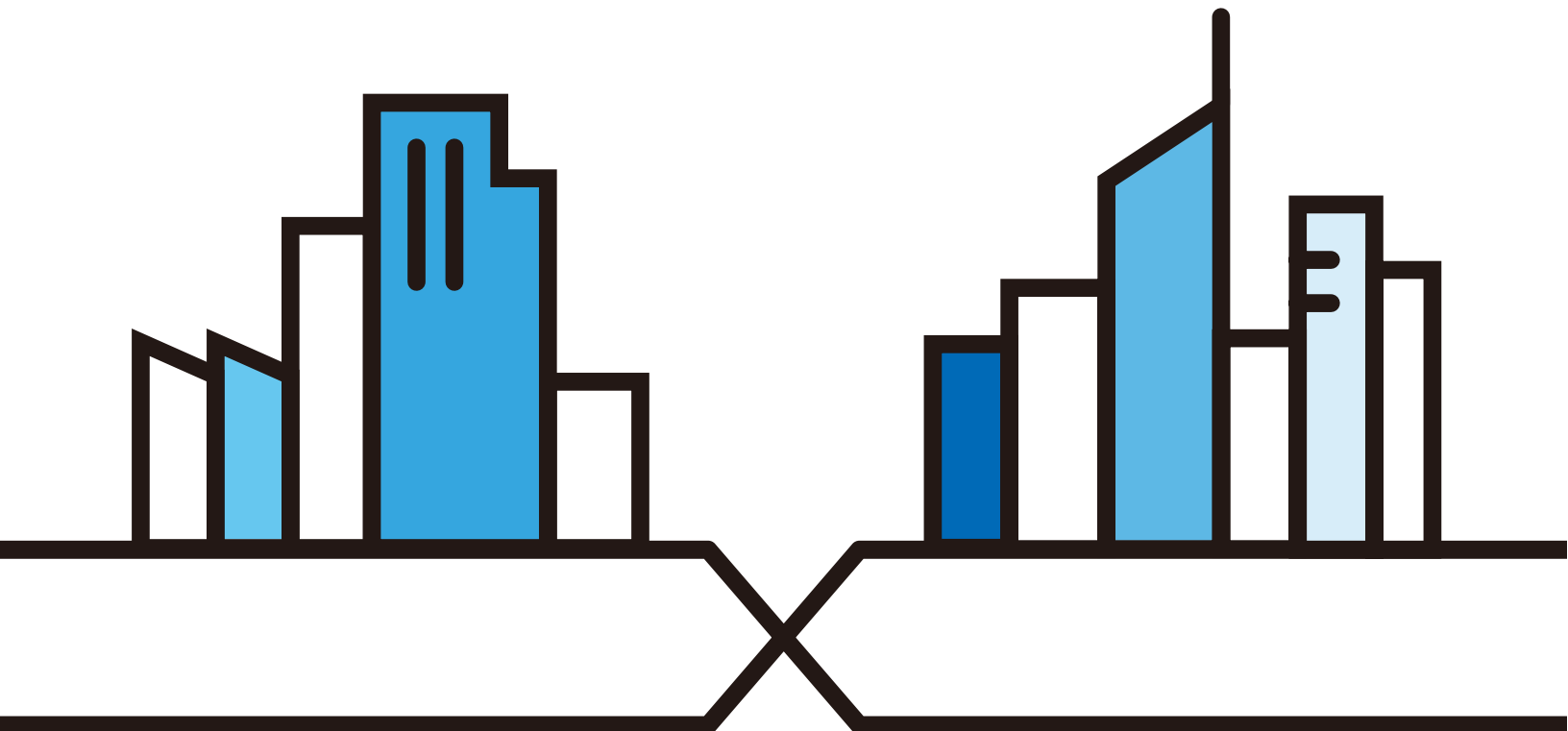
MGS3520/MGS3530-28 Series

Layer 2 Management Switch

Default Login Details

LAN IP Address	http://192.168.1.1
Username	admin
Password	1234

Version 4.10 Edition 5, 8/2024



IMPORTANT!

READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USE.

KEEP THIS GUIDE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

Screenshots and graphics in this book may differ slightly from your product due to differences in your product firmware or your computer operating system. Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate.

Related Documentation

- Quick Start Guide
The Quick Start Guide shows how to connect the Switch and access the Web Configurator.
- CLI Reference Guide
The CLI Reference Guide explains how to use the Command-Line Interface (CLI) and CLI commands to configure the Switch.

Note: It is recommended you use the Web Configurator to configure the Switch.

- Web Configurator Online Help
Click the help icon in any screen for help in configuring that screen and supplementary information.

Contents Overview

User's Guide	18
Getting to Know Your Switch	19
Hardware Installation and Connection	23
Hardware Overview	29
The Web Configurator	40
Initial Setup Example	48
Tutorials	52
Technical Reference	77
System Status and Port Statistics	78
Basic Setting	83
VLAN	105
Static MAC Forward Setup	125
Static Multicast Forward Setup	127
Filtering	130
Spanning Tree Protocol	132
Bandwidth Control	150
Broadcast Storm Control	153
Mirroring	155
Link Aggregation	161
Port Authentication	168
Port Security	176
Range Profile	179
Classifier	184
Policy Rule	190
Queuing Method	195
VLAN Stacking	198
Multicast	205
AAA	228
IP Source Guard	241
Loop Guard	262
VLAN Mapping	265
Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling	268
sFlow	272
PPPoE	276
Error Disable	284
Private VLAN	290
Green Ethernet	292

Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)	294
BPDU Guard	319
Link Flap	323
Static Route	327
Differentiated Services	330
DHCP	338
ARP Setup	352
Maintenance	356
Access Control	365
Diagnostic	388
Syslog	390
Cluster Management	393
MAC Table	399
ARP Table	402
Path MTU Table	404
Configure Clone	405
Neighbor Table	408
Troubleshooting	410

Table of Contents

Contents Overview	3
Table of Contents	5
Part I: User's Guide.....	18
Chapter 1	
Getting to Know Your Switch	19
1.1 Introduction	19
1.1.1 Backbone Application	19
1.1.2 Bridging Example	20
1.1.3 High Performance Switching Example	20
1.1.4 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Application Examples	21
1.1.5 IPv6 Support	22
1.2 Ways to Manage the Switch	22
1.3 Good Habits for Managing the Switch	22
Chapter 2	
Hardware Installation and Connection	23
2.1 Installation Scenarios	23
2.2 Desktop Installation Procedure	23
2.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack	23
2.3.1 Rack-mounted Installation Requirements	24
2.3.2 Attaching the Mounting Brackets to the Switch	24
2.3.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack	24
2.4 Grounding (Bonding)	25
Chapter 3	
Hardware Overview.....	29
3.1 Front & Rear Panels	29
3.1.1 Console Port	30
3.1.2 Ethernet Ports	30
3.1.3 Transceiver Slots	31
3.1.4 Power Connector	33
3.1.5 Signal Slot (MGS3520 and MGS3530 Series)	36
3.2 LEDs	38

Chapter 4	
The Web Configurator.....	40
4.1 Introduction	40
4.2 System Login	40
4.3 The Web Configurator Layout	41
4.3.1 Change Your Password	45
4.4 Saving Your Configuration	45
4.5 Switch Lockout	46
4.6 Resetting the Switch	46
4.6.1 Reload the Configuration File	46
4.7 Logging Out of the Web Configurator	47
4.8 Help	47
Chapter 5	
Initial Setup Example	48
5.1 Overview	48
5.1.1 Creating a VLAN	48
5.1.2 Setting Port VID	49
5.2 Configuring Switch Management IP Address	50
Chapter 6	
Tutorials	52
6.1 How to Use DHCP Snooping on the Switch	52
6.2 How to Use DHCP Relay on the Switch	55
6.2.1 DHCP Relay Tutorial Introduction	55
6.2.2 Creating a VLAN	56
6.2.3 Configuring DHCPv4 Relay	58
6.2.4 Troubleshooting	59
6.3 How to Use PPPoE IA on the Switch	59
6.3.1 Configuring Switch A	60
6.3.2 Configuring Switch B	63
6.4 How to Use Error Disable and Recovery on the Switch	65
6.5 How to Set Up a Guest VLAN	67
6.5.1 Creating a Guest VLAN	67
6.5.2 Enabling IEEE 802.1x Port Authentication	70
6.5.3 Enabling Guest VLAN	71
6.6 How to Do Port Isolation in a VLAN	72
6.6.1 Creating a VLAN	73
6.6.2 Creating a Private VLAN Rule	75
Part II: Technical Reference.....	77

Chapter 7	
System Status and Port Statistics	78
7.1 Overview	78
7.2 Port Status Summary	78
7.2.1 Status: Port Details	79
Chapter 8	
Basic Setting	83
8.1 System Information	83
8.2 General Setup	85
8.3 Introduction to VLANs	86
8.4 Switch Setup	87
8.5 IP Setup	89
8.5.1 Management IP Addresses	89
8.6 Port Setup	91
8.7 Interface Setup	93
8.8 IPv6	94
8.8.1 IPv6 Interface Status	94
8.8.2 IPv6 Configuration	97
8.8.3 IPv6 Global Setup	97
8.8.4 IPv6 Interface Setup	98
8.8.5 IPv6 Link-Local Address Setup	99
8.8.6 IPv6 Global Address Setup	100
8.8.7 IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Setup	101
8.8.8 IPv6 Neighbor Setup	102
8.8.9 DHCPv6 Client Setup	103
Chapter 9	
VLAN	105
9.1 Introduction to IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLANs	105
9.1.1 Forwarding Tagged and Untagged Frames	105
9.2 Automatic VLAN Registration	106
9.2.1 GARP	106
9.2.2 GVRP	106
9.3 Port VLAN Trunking	107
9.4 Select the VLAN Type	107
9.5 Static VLAN	107
9.5.1 VLAN Status	107
9.5.2 VLAN Details	108
9.5.3 Configure a Static VLAN	109
9.5.4 Configure VLAN Port Settings	111
9.6 Subnet Based VLANs	112
9.6.1 Configuring Subnet Based VLAN	113

9.7 Protocol Based VLANs	115
9.7.1 Configuring Protocol Based VLAN	115
9.7.2 Create an IP-based VLAN Example	117
9.8 MAC Based VLAN	118
9.9 VLAN MAC Learning	119
9.10 Port-based VLAN Setup	121
9.10.1 Configure a Port-based VLAN	122
Chapter 10	
Static MAC Forward Setup	125
10.1 Overview	125
10.2 Configuring Static MAC Forwarding	125
Chapter 11	
Static Multicast Forward Setup	127
11.1 Static Multicast Forwarding Overview	127
11.2 Configuring Static Multicast Forwarding	128
Chapter 12	
Filtering.....	130
12.1 Configure a Filtering Rule	130
Chapter 13	
Spanning Tree Protocol	132
13.1 STP/RSTP Overview	132
13.1.1 STP Terminology	132
13.1.2 How STP Works	133
13.1.3 STP Port States	133
13.1.4 Multiple RSTP	133
13.1.5 Multiple STP	134
13.2 Spanning Tree Protocol Status Screen	136
13.3 Spanning Tree Configuration	137
13.4 Configure Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol	137
13.5 Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status	140
13.6 Configure Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol	141
13.7 Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status	143
13.8 Configure Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol	144
13.8.1 Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Port Configuration	146
13.9 Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Status	148
Chapter 14	
Bandwidth Control	150
14.1 Bandwidth Control Overview	150

14.2 Bandwidth Control Setup	150
14.2.1 The Egress Queue Rate Screen	151
Chapter 15	
Broadcast Storm Control	153
15.1 Broadcast Storm Control Setup	153
Chapter 16	
Mirroring	155
16.1 Port Mirroring Overview	155
16.2 Local Port Mirroring Screen	157
16.3 RMirror-Source Screen	158
16.4 RMirror-Destination Screen	159
Chapter 17	
Link Aggregation	161
17.1 Link Aggregation Overview	161
17.2 Dynamic Link Aggregation	161
17.2.1 Link Aggregation ID	162
17.3 Link Aggregation Status	162
17.4 Link Aggregation Setting	163
17.5 Link Aggregation Control Protocol	165
17.6 Static Trunking Example	166
Chapter 18	
Port Authentication	168
18.1 Port Authentication Overview	168
18.1.1 IEEE 802.1x Authentication	168
18.1.2 MAC Authentication	169
18.2 Port Authentication Configuration	170
18.2.1 Activate IEEE 802.1x Security	170
18.2.2 Guest VLAN	171
18.2.3 Activate MAC Authentication	173
Chapter 19	
Port Security	176
19.1 About Port Security	176
19.2 Port Security Setup	176
Chapter 20	
Range Profile	179
20.1 Range Profile Overview	179
20.2 Range Profile Screen	179

20.3 VLAN Range Profile	179
20.4 Port Range Profile	180
20.5 IP Address Range Profile	181
20.6 Socket-Port Range Profile	182
Chapter 21	
Classifier.....	184
21.1 About the Classifier and QoS	184
21.2 Configuring the Classifier	184
21.3 Viewing and Editing Classifier Configuration	187
21.4 Classifier Example	188
Chapter 22	
Policy Rule	190
22.1 Policy Rules Overview	190
22.1.1 DiffServ	190
22.1.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior	190
22.2 Configuring Policy Rules	190
22.3 Viewing and Editing Policy Configuration	192
22.4 Policy Example	193
Chapter 23	
Queuing Method.....	195
23.1 Queuing Method Overview	195
23.1.1 Strictly Priority Queuing	195
23.1.2 Weighted Fair Queuing	195
23.1.3 Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR)	196
23.2 Configuring Queuing	196
Chapter 24	
VLAN Stacking.....	198
24.1 VLAN Stacking Overview	198
24.1.1 VLAN Stacking Example	198
24.2 VLAN Stacking Port Roles	199
24.3 VLAN Tag Format	199
24.3.1 Frame Format	200
24.4 Configuring VLAN Stacking	200
24.4.1 Port-based Q-in-Q	202
24.4.2 Selective Q-in-Q	203
Chapter 25	
Multicast.....	205
25.1 Multicast Overview	205

25.1.1 IP Multicast Addresses	205
25.1.2 IGMP Filtering	205
25.1.3 IGMP Snooping	205
25.1.4 IGMP Snooping and VLANs	206
25.1.5 MLD Snooping-proxy	206
25.1.6 MLD Messages	207
25.2 Multicast Setup	207
25.3 IPv4 Multicast Status	207
25.3.1 IGMP Snooping	208
25.3.2 IGMP Snooping VLAN	211
25.3.3 IGMP Filtering Profile	212
25.4 IPv6 Multicast Status	213
25.4.1 MLD Snooping-proxy	214
25.4.2 MLD Snooping-proxy VLAN	214
25.4.3 MLD Snooping-proxy VLAN Port Role Setting	216
25.4.4 MLD Snooping-proxy Filtering	218
25.4.5 MLD Snooping-proxy Filtering Profile	220
25.5 MVR Overview	221
25.5.1 Types of MVR Ports	221
25.5.2 MVR Modes	221
25.5.3 How MVR Works	221
25.6 General MVR Configuration	222
25.6.1 MVR Group Configuration	224
25.6.2 MVR Configuration Example	226
Chapter 26	
AAA	228
26.1 Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA)	228
26.1.1 Local User Accounts	228
26.1.2 RADIUS and TACACS+	228
26.2 AAA Screens	229
26.2.1 RADIUS Server Setup	229
26.2.2 TACACS+ Server Setup	231
26.2.3 AAA Setup	233
26.2.4 Vendor Specific Attribute	236
26.2.5 Tunnel Protocol Attribute	237
26.3 Supported RADIUS Attributes	237
26.3.1 Attributes Used for Authentication	238
26.3.2 Attributes Used for Accounting	238
Chapter 27	
IP Source Guard	241
27.1 IP Source Guard Overview	241

27.1.1 DHCP Snooping Overview	241
27.1.2 ARP Inspection Overview	243
27.2 IP Source Guard	244
27.3 IP Source Guard Static Binding	245
27.4 DHCP Snooping	247
27.5 DHCP Snooping Configure	250
27.5.1 DHCP Snooping Port Configure	252
27.5.2 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure	253
27.5.3 DHCP Snooping VLAN Port Configure	254
27.6 ARP Inspection Status	255
27.6.1 ARP Inspection VLAN Status	256
27.6.2 ARP Inspection Log Status	257
27.6.3 ARP Inspection Configure	258
27.6.4 ARP Inspection Port Configure	259
27.6.5 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure	260
Chapter 28	
Loop Guard	262
28.1 Loop Guard Overview	262
28.2 Loop Guard Setup	263
Chapter 29	
VLAN Mapping	265
29.1 VLAN Mapping Overview	265
29.1.1 VLAN Mapping Example	265
29.2 Enabling VLAN Mapping	265
29.3 Configuring VLAN Mapping	266
Chapter 30	
Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling	268
30.1 Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling Overview	268
30.1.1 Layer-2 Protocol Tunneling Mode	269
30.2 Configuring Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling	269
Chapter 31	
sFlow	272
31.1 sFlow Overview	272
31.2 sFlow Port Configuration	272
31.2.1 sFlow Collector Configuration	274
Chapter 32	
PPPoE	276
32.1 PPPoE Intermediate Agent Overview	276

32.1.1 PPPoE Intermediate Agent Tag Format	276
32.1.2 Sub-Option Format	276
32.1.3 Port State	277
32.2 PPPoE Screen	278
32.3 PPPoE Intermediate Agent	278
32.3.1 PPPoE IA Per-Port	280
32.3.2 PPPoE IA Per-Port Per-VLAN	281
32.3.3 PPPoE IA for VLAN	283
Chapter 33	
Error Disable.....	284
33.1 CPU Protection Overview	284
33.2 Error-Disable Recovery Overview	284
33.3 Error Disable Screen	284
33.4 Error-Disable Status	285
33.5 CPU Protection Configuration	286
33.6 Error-Disable Detect Configuration	287
33.7 Error-Disable Recovery Configuration	288
Chapter 34	
Private VLAN.....	290
34.1 Private VLAN Overview	290
34.2 Configuring Private VLAN	290
Chapter 35	
Green Ethernet.....	292
35.1 Green Ethernet Overview	292
35.2 Configuring Green Ethernet	292
Chapter 36	
Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP).....	294
36.1 LLDP Overview	294
36.2 LLDP-MED Overview	295
36.3 LLDP Screens	296
36.4 LLDP Local Status	297
36.4.1 LLDP Local Port Status Detail	298
36.5 LLDP Remote Status	302
36.5.1 LLDP Remote Port Status Detail	303
36.6 LLDP Configuration	310
36.6.1 LLDP Configuration Basic TLV Setting	311
36.6.2 LLDP Configuration Org-specific TLV Setting	312
36.7 LLDP-MED Configuration	313
36.8 LLDP-MED Network Policy	315

36.9 LLDP-MED Location	316
Chapter 37	
BPDU Guard	319
37.1 BPDU Guard Overview	319
37.2 BPDU Guard Status	319
37.3 BPDU Guard Configuration	320
Chapter 38	
Link Flap	323
38.1 Link Flap Status	323
38.2 Link Flap Configuration	324
Chapter 39	
Static Route	327
39.1 Static Routing Overview	327
39.2 Static Routing	327
39.3 IPv4 Static Route	328
Chapter 40	
Differentiated Services	330
40.1 DiffServ Overview	330
40.1.1 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior	330
40.1.2 DiffServ Network Example	330
40.2 Two Rate Three Color Marker Traffic Policing (MGS3530-28)	331
40.2.1 TRTCM-Color-blind Mode	332
40.2.2 TRTCM-Color-aware Mode	332
40.2.3 DSCP Remapping	332
40.3 Activating DiffServ	333
40.3.1 Configuring 2-Rate 3 Color Marker Settings	334
40.4 DSCP-to-IEEE 802.1p Priority Settings	336
40.4.1 Configuring DSCP Settings	336
Chapter 41	
DHCP	338
41.1 DHCP Overview	338
41.1.1 DHCP Modes	338
41.1.2 DHCP Configuration Options	338
41.2 DHCP Configuration	338
41.3 DHCPv4 Status	339
41.4 DHCPv4 Relay	339
41.4.1 DHCPv4 Relay Agent Information	339
41.4.2 DHCPv4 Option 82 Profile	340

41.4.3 Configuring DHCPv4 Global Relay	341
41.4.4 DHCPv4 Global Relay Port Configure	342
41.4.5 Global DHCPv4 Relay Configuration Example	343
41.4.6 Configuring DHCPv4 VLAN Settings	344
41.4.7 DHCPv4 VLAN Port Configure	345
41.4.8 Example: DHCPv4 Relay for Two VLANs	346
41.5 DHCPv6 Relay	347
41.5.1 DHCPv6 Options Profile	349
41.5.2 DHCPv6 Port Configure	350
Chapter 42	
ARP Setup.....	352
42.1 ARP Overview	352
42.1.1 How ARP Works	352
42.2 ARP Setup	354
42.2.1 ARP Learning	354
Chapter 43	
Maintenance.....	356
43.1 The Maintenance Screen	356
43.2 Load Factory Default	357
43.3 Save Configuration	357
43.4 Reboot System	357
43.5 Firmware Upgrade	359
43.6 Restore a Configuration File	360
43.7 Backup a Configuration File	360
43.8 Tech-Support	361
43.9 FTP Command Line	362
43.9.1 Filename Conventions	362
43.9.2 FTP Command Line Procedure	363
43.9.3 GUI-based FTP Clients	364
43.9.4 FTP Restrictions	364
Chapter 44	
Access Control.....	365
44.1 Access Control Overview	365
44.2 The Access Control Main Screen	365
44.3 About SNMP	365
44.3.1 SNMP v3 and Security	366
44.3.2 Supported MIBs	366
44.3.3 SNMP Traps	367
44.3.4 Configuring SNMP	371
44.3.5 Configuring SNMP Trap Group	373

44.3.6 Enabling/Disabling Sending of SNMP Traps on a Port	374
44.3.7 Configuring SNMP User	375
44.4 Setting Up Login Accounts	376
44.5 SSH Overview	378
44.6 How SSH works	378
44.7 SSH Implementation on the Switch	379
44.7.1 Requirements for Using SSH	380
44.8 Introduction to HTTPS	380
44.9 HTTPS Example	381
44.9.1 Internet Explorer Warning Messages	381
44.9.2 Mozilla Firefox Warning Messages	382
44.9.3 Google Chrome Warning Messages	384
44.9.4 The Main Screen	384
44.10 Service Port Access Control	385
44.11 Remote Management	386
Chapter 45	
Diagnostic.....	388
45.1 Diagnostic	388
Chapter 46	
Syslog.....	390
46.1 Syslog Overview	390
46.2 Syslog Setup	390
46.3 Syslog Server Setup	391
Chapter 47	
Cluster Management.....	393
47.1 Cluster Management Status Overview	393
47.2 Cluster Management Status	394
47.2.1 Cluster Member Switch Management	394
47.3 Clustering Management Configuration	396
Chapter 48	
MAC Table.....	399
48.1 MAC Table Overview	399
48.2 Viewing the MAC Table	400
Chapter 49	
ARP Table.....	402
49.1 ARP Table Overview	402
49.1.1 How ARP Works	402
49.2 The ARP Table Screen	402

Chapter 50	
Path MTU Table	404
50.1 Path MTU Overview	404
50.2 Viewing the Path MTU Table	404
Chapter 51	
Configure Clone.....	405
51.1 Configure Clone	405
Chapter 52	
Neighbor Table.....	408
52.1 IPv6 Neighbor Table Overview	408
52.2 Viewing the IPv6 Neighbor Table	408
Chapter 53	
Troubleshooting.....	410
53.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs	410
53.2 Switch Access and Login	411
53.3 Switch Configuration	413
Appendix A Common Services	414
Appendix B IPv6.....	417
Appendix C Legal Information	425
Index	429

PART I

User's Guide

CHAPTER 1

Getting to Know Your Switch

This chapter introduces the main features and applications of the Switch.

1.1 Introduction

The Switch is a layer-2 standalone Ethernet switch. A dual personality interface consists of one mini-GBIC slot and one 100/1000 Mbps RJ-45 port, with either the port or the slot active at a time.

This User's Guide covers the MGS3520-28, MGS3520-28F, and MGS3530-28.

Table 1 Switch Comparison Table

PORT/SWITCH DETAILS	MGS3520-28	MGS3520-28F	MGS3530-28
24 10/100/1000Base-T Ethernet ports	√		√
24 100BASE-FX/1000BASE-X SFP Slots		√	
4 Dual Personality Interfaces	√	√	
4 Dual Speed 1G/10G SFP+ Slots			√

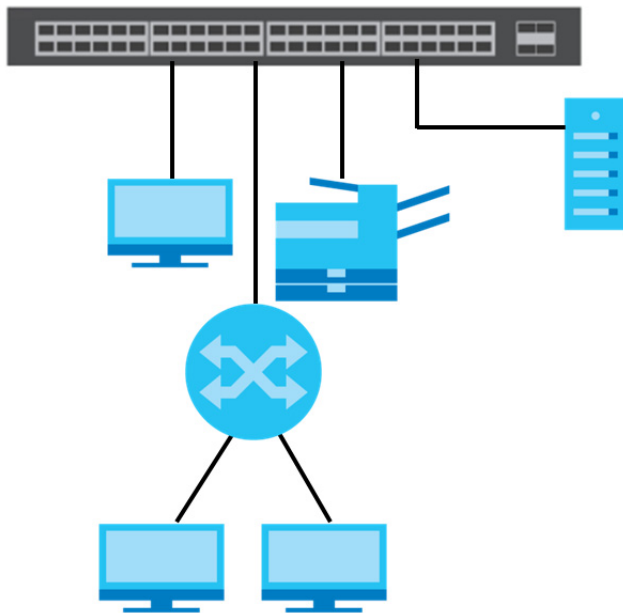
With its built-in web configurator, managing and configuring the Switch is easy. In addition, the Switch can also be managed via Telnet, any terminal emulator program on the console port, or third-party SNMP management.

This section shows a few examples of using the Switch in various network environments.

1.1.1 Backbone Application

The Switch is an ideal solution for small networks where rapid growth can be expected in the near future. The Switch can be used standalone for a group of heavy traffic users. You can connect computers and servers directly to the Switch's port or connect other switches to the Switch.

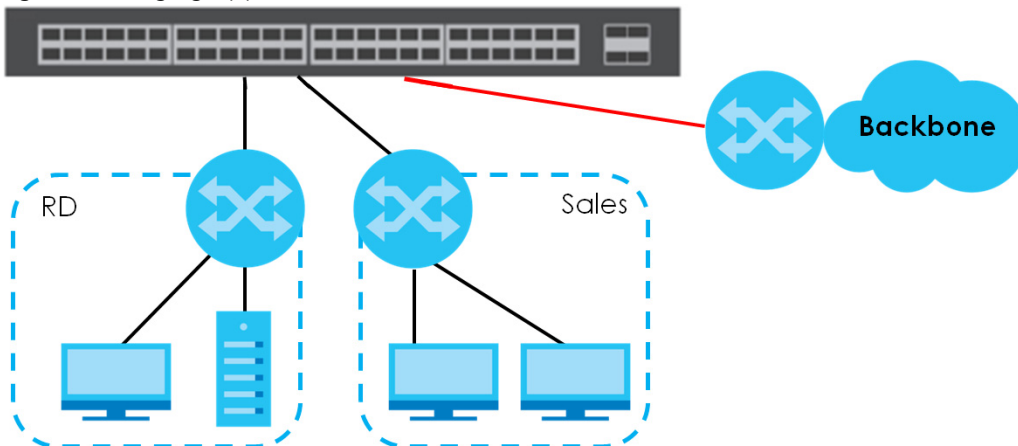
In this example, all computers can share high-speed applications on the server. To expand the network, simply add more networking devices such as switches, routers, computers, print servers etc.

Figure 1 Backbone Application

1.1.2 Bridging Example

In this example, the Switch connects different company departments (**RD** and **Sales**) to the corporate backbone. It can alleviate bandwidth contention and eliminate server and network bottlenecks. All users that need high bandwidth can connect to high-speed department servers via the Switch. You can provide a super-fast uplink connection by using a Gigabit Ethernet/mini-GBIC port on the Switch.

Moreover, the Switch eases supervision and maintenance by allowing network managers to centralize multiple servers at a single location.

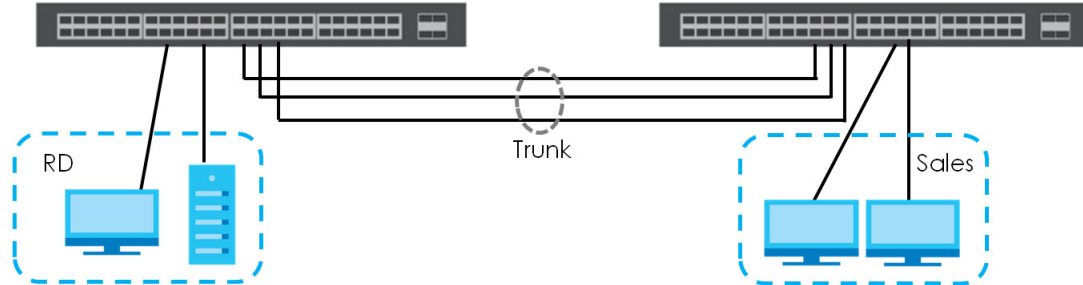
Figure 2 Bridging Application

1.1.3 High Performance Switching Example

The Switch is ideal for connecting two networks that need high bandwidth. In the following example, use trunking to connect these two networks.

Switching to higher-speed LANs such as ATM (Asynchronous Transmission Mode) is not feasible for most people due to the expense of replacing all existing Ethernet cables and adapter cards, restructuring your network and complex maintenance. The Switch can provide the same bandwidth as ATM at much lower cost while still being able to use existing adapters and switches. Moreover, the current LAN structure can be retained as all ports can freely communicate with each other.

Figure 3 High Performance Switched Workgroup Application



1.1.4 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Application Examples

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Stations on a logical network belong to one group. A station can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a station cannot directly talk to or hear from stations that are not in the same group(s) unless such traffic first goes through a router.

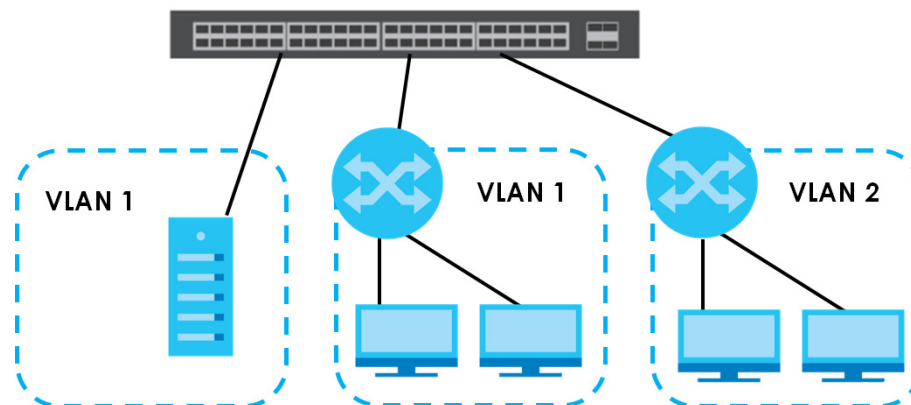
For more information on VLANs, refer to [Chapter 9 on page 105](#).

1.1.4.1 Tag-based VLAN Example

Ports in the same VLAN group share the same frame broadcast domain thus increase network performance through reduced broadcast traffic. VLAN groups can be modified at any time by adding, moving or changing ports without any re-cabling.

Shared resources such as a server can be used by all ports in the same VLAN as the server. In the following figure only ports that need access to the server need to be part of VLAN 1. Ports can belong to other VLAN groups too.

Figure 4 Shared Server Using VLAN Example



1.1.5 IPv6 Support

IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 6), is designed to enhance IP address size and features. The increase in IPv6 address size to 128 bits (from the 32-bit IPv4 address) allows up to 3.4×10^{38} IP addresses. At the time of writing, the Switch supports the following features.

- Static address assignment and stateless auto-configuration
- Neighbor Discovery Protocol (a protocol used to discover other IPv6 devices in a network)
- Remote Management using ping SNMP, telnet, HTTP and FTP services
- ICMPv6 to report errors encountered in packet processing and perform diagnostic functions, such as "ping"
- IPv4/IPv6 dual stack; the Switch can run IPv4 and IPv6 at the same time
- DHCPv6 client and relay
- Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) snooping and proxy

For more information on IPv6, refer to the CLI Reference Guide.

1.2 Ways to Manage the Switch

Use any of the following methods to manage the Switch.

- Web Configurator. This is recommended for everyday management of the Switch using a (supported) web browser. See [Chapter 4 on page 40](#).
- Command Line Interface. Line commands offer an alternative to the web configurator and in some cases are necessary to configure advanced features. See the CLI Reference Guide.
- FTP. Use FTP for firmware upgrades and configuration backup/restore. See [Section 43.9 on page 362](#).
- SNMP. The Switch can be monitored by an SNMP manager. See [Section 44.3 on page 365](#).
- Cluster Management. Cluster Management allows you to manage multiple switches through one switch, called the cluster manager. See [Chapter 47 on page 393](#).

1.3 Good Habits for Managing the Switch

Do the following things regularly to make the Switch more secure and to manage the Switch more effectively.

- Change the password. Use a password that's not easy to guess and that consists of different types of characters, such as numbers and letters.
- Write down the password and put it in a safe place.
- Back up the configuration (and make sure you know how to restore it). Restoring an earlier working configuration may be useful if the device becomes unstable or even crashes. If you forget your password, you will have to reset the Switch to its factory default settings. If you backed up an earlier configuration file, you would not have to totally re-configure the Switch. You could simply restore your last configuration.

CHAPTER 2

Hardware Installation and Connection

This chapter shows you how to install and connect the Switch.

2.1 Installation Scenarios

The Switch can be placed on a desktop or rack-mounted on a standard EIA rack. Use the rubber feet in a desktop installation and the brackets in a rack-mounted installation.

Have qualified service personnel install the Switch in a restricted access area, such as a building's basement or telecommunications equipment room.

Note: For proper ventilation, allow at least 4 inches (10 cm) of clearance at the front and 3.4 inches (8 cm) at the back of the Switch. This is especially important for enclosed rack installations.

2.2 Desktop Installation Procedure

- 1 Make sure the Switch is clean and dry.
- 2 Set the Switch on a smooth, level surface strong enough to support the weight of the Switch and the connected cables. Make sure there is a power outlet nearby.
- 3 Make sure there is enough clearance around the Switch to allow air circulation and the attachment of cables and the power cord.

2.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

The Switch can be mounted on an EIA standard size, 19-inch rack or in a wiring closet with other equipment. Follow the steps below to mount your Switch on a standard EIA rack using a rack-mounting kit.

2.3.1 Rack-mounted Installation Requirements

- Two mounting brackets.
- Eight M3 flat head screws and a #2 Philips screwdriver.
- Four M5 flat head screws and a #2 Philips screwdriver.

Failure to use the proper screws may damage the unit.

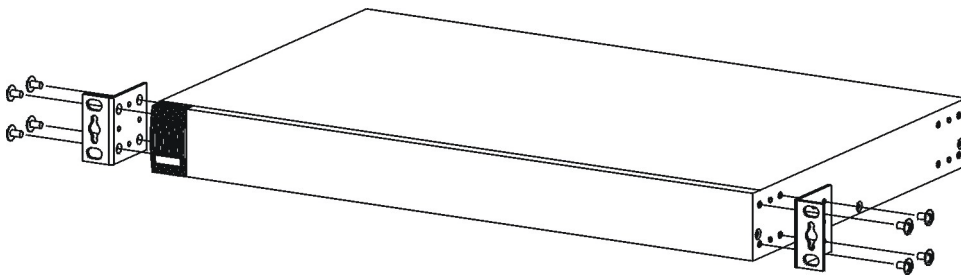
2.3.1.1 Precautions

- Make sure the rack will safely support the combined weight of all the equipment it contains.
- Make sure the position of the Switch does not make the rack unstable or top-heavy. Take all necessary precautions to anchor the rack securely before installing the unit.

2.3.2 Attaching the Mounting Brackets to the Switch

- 1 Position a mounting bracket on one side of the Switch, lining up the four screw holes on the bracket with the screw holes on the side of the Switch.

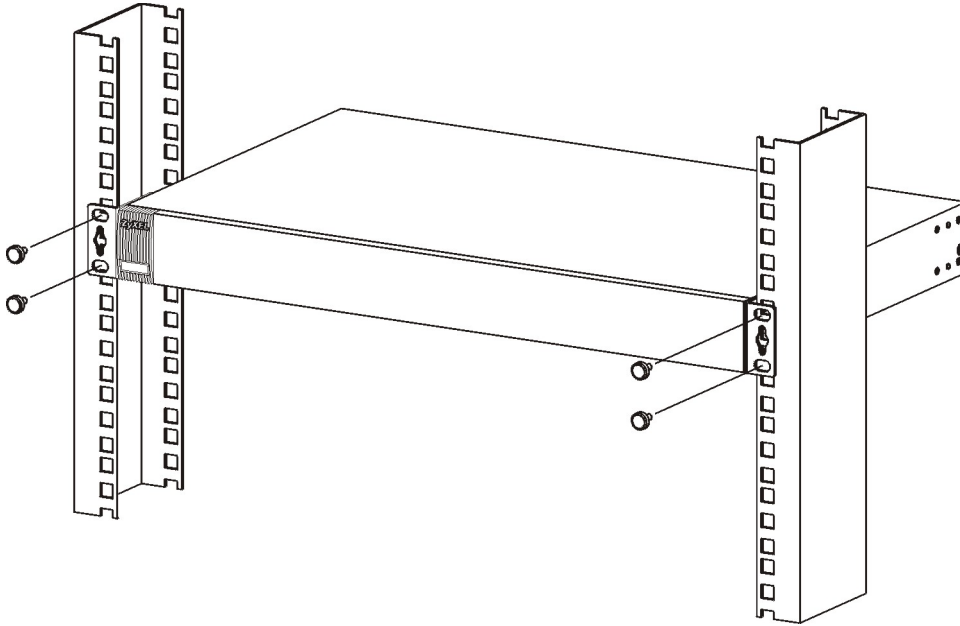
Figure 5 Attaching the Mounting Brackets



- 2 Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, install the M3 flat head screws through the mounting bracket holes into the Switch.
- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to install the second mounting bracket on the other side of the Switch.
- 4 You may now mount the Switch on a rack. Proceed to the next section.

2.3.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

- 1 Position a mounting bracket (that is already attached to the Switch) on one side of the rack, lining up the two screw holes on the bracket with the screw holes on the side of the rack.

Figure 6 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

- 2 Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, install the M5 flat head screws through the mounting bracket holes into the rack.
- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to attach the second mounting bracket on the other side of the rack.

2.4 Grounding (Bonding)

The Switch must be grounded. Do this before you make other connections.

Grounding is a safety measure to direct excess electric charge to the ground. It prevents damage to the Switch, and helps protect you from electrocution. Use the grounding screw and the ground wire of the AC power supply to ground the Switch.

The grounding terminal and AC power ground where you install the Switch must follow your country's regulations. Qualified service personnel must ensure the building's protective earthing terminals are valid terminals.

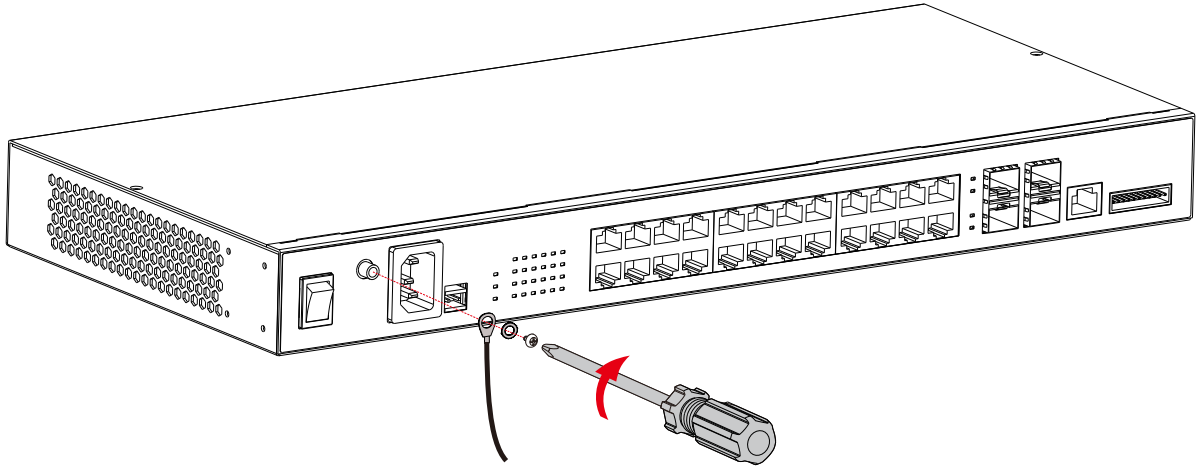
Installation of Ethernet cables must be separate from AC power lines. To avoid electric surge and electromagnetic interference, use a different electrical conduit or raceway (tube/trough or enclosed conduit for protecting electric wiring) that is 15 cm away, or as specified by your country's electrical regulations.

Any device that is located outdoors and connected to this product must be properly grounded and surge protected. To the extent permissible by your country's applicable law, failure to follow these guidelines could result in damage to your Switch which may not be covered by its warranty.

Note: The specification for surge or ESD protection assumes that the Switch is properly grounded.

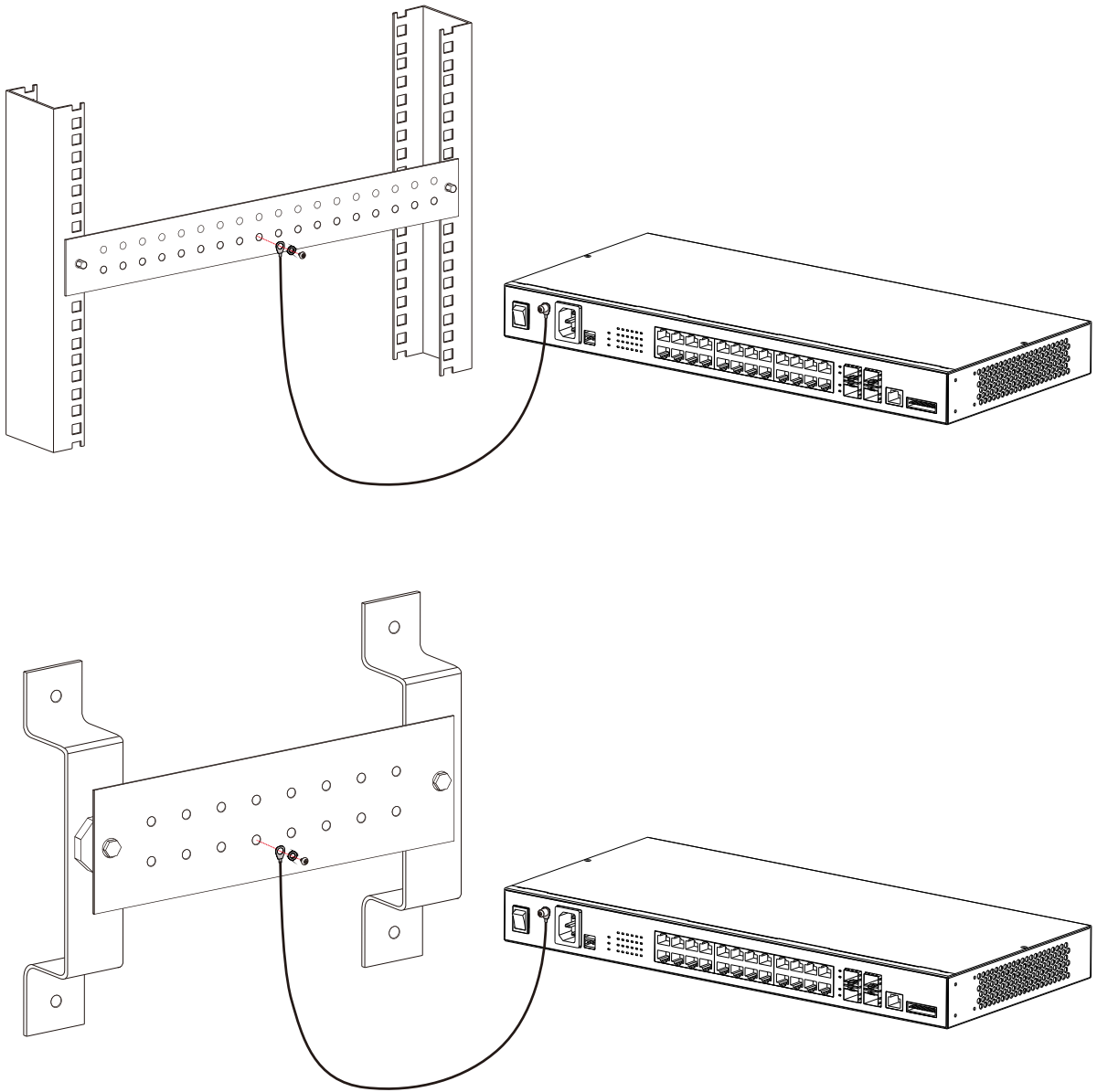
- 1 Remove the M4 ground screw from the Switch.
- 2 Secure a 16 AWG or thicker green or yellow ground cable to the Switch using the M4 ground screw.

Figure 7 Attaching the Ground Cable to the Switch



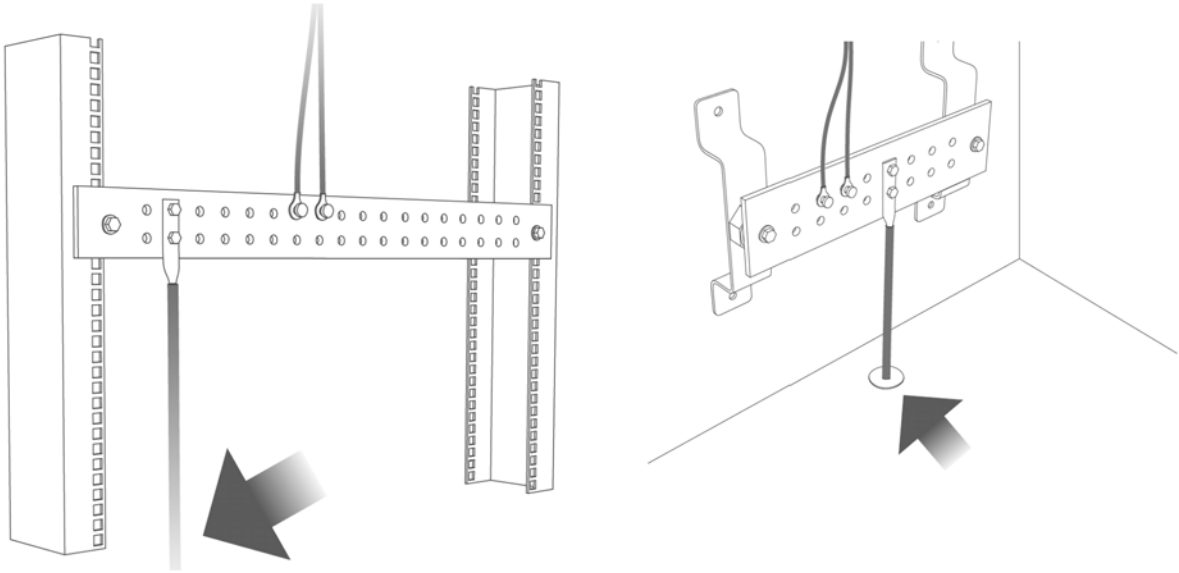
- 3 Attach the other end of the ground cable to a grounding bar located on the rack where you install the Switch or to an on-site grounding terminal.

Figure 8 Attach Ground Cable to Grounding Bar or On-site Grounding Terminal



- 4 The grounding terminal of the server rack or on-site grounding terminal must also be grounded and connected to the building's main grounding electrode. Make sure the grounding terminal is connected to the building's grounding electrode and has an earth resistance of less than 10 ohms, or according to your country's electrical regulations.

Figure 9 Connecting to the Building's Main Grounding Electrode



If you are uncertain that suitable grounding is available, contact the appropriate electrical inspection authority or an electrician.

It is not recommended to ground the positive/negative DC input of the device.

CHAPTER 3

Hardware Overview

This chapter describes the front panel and rear panel of the Switch and shows you how to make the hardware connections.

3.1 Front & Rear Panels

The following figures show the front and rear panels of the Switch.

Figure 10 MGS3520-28 Front Panel: AC/DC Model

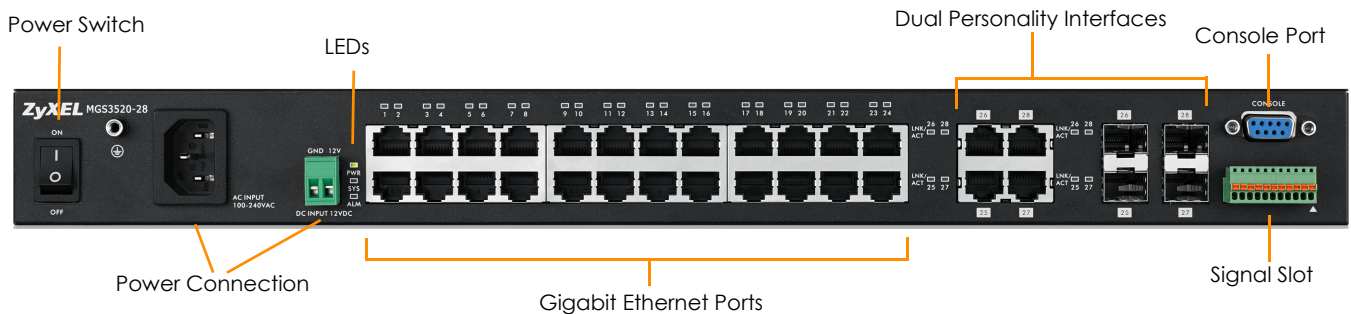


Figure 11 MGS3520-28F Front Panel: AC/DC Model

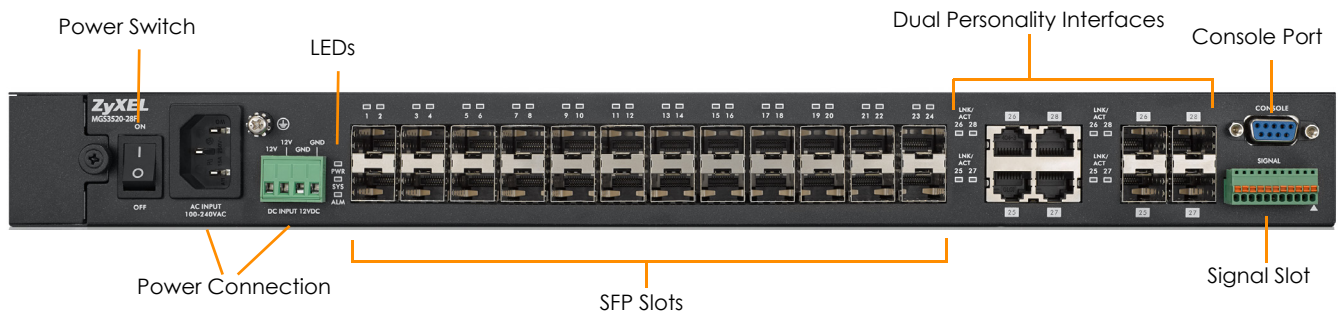
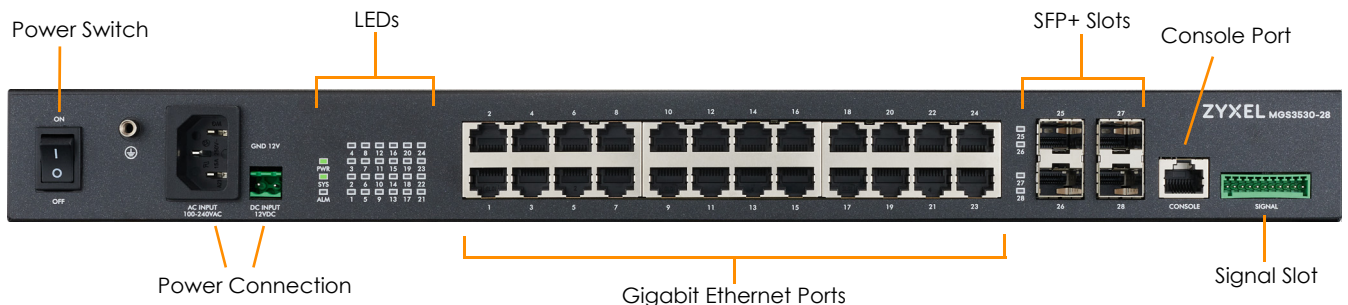


Figure 12 MGS3530-28 Front Panel: AC/DC Model



The following table describes the hardware connections.

Table 2 Connections

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Power Switch	This applies to models with DC power. After you connect the DC power properly (see Section 3.1.4.2 on page 33), put the power switch in the ON position to turn on the Switch.
Power Connection	Connect an appropriate power supply to this port.
RJ-45 Ethernet Ports	Connect these ports to a computer, a hub, an Ethernet switch or router.
SFP Slots	Use transceivers in these slots for fiber-optic or copper connections to a computer, a hub, a switch or router.
Dual Personality Interfaces	Each interface has one 1000BASE-T RJ-45 port and one transceiver slot, with one port or transceiver active at a time.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Four 10/100/1000 Mbps RJ-45 Ports: Connect these ports to high-bandwidth backbone network Ethernet switches using 1000BASE-T compatible Category 5/5e/6 copper cables.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Four Transceiver Slots: Use mini-GBIC or SFP transceivers in these slots for connections to backbone Ethernet switches.
SFP+ Slots	Four transceiver slots. Use SFP+, mini-GBIC, or SFP transceivers in these slots for connections to backbone Ethernet switches.
Console Port	The console port is for local configuration of the Switch.
Signal Slot	Connect the signal input pins to signal output terminals on other pieces of equipment.
	Connect the signal output pins to a signal input terminal on another piece of equipment.

3.1.1 Console Port

For local management, you can use a computer with terminal emulation software configured to the following parameters:

- VT100
- Terminal emulation
- 9600 bps
- No parity, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit
- No flow control

Connect the RJ-45 or male 9-pin end of the console cable to the console port of the Switch. Connect the female end to a serial port (COM1, COM2 or other COM port) of your computer.

3.1.2 Ethernet Ports

The Switch has 24 10/100 Mbps or 24 or 44 10/100/1000 Mbps auto-negotiating, auto-crossover Ethernet ports. In 10/100 Mbps Fast Ethernet, the speed can be 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps and the duplex mode can be half duplex or full duplex. In 10/100/1000 Mbps Gigabit Ethernet, the speed can be 10 Mbps, 100 Mbps or 1000 Mbps and the duplex mode can be full duplex.

An auto-negotiating port can detect and adjust to the optimum Ethernet speed (10/100 Mbps or 10/100/1000 Mbps) and duplex mode (full duplex or half duplex) of the connected device.

An auto-crossover (auto-MDI/MDI-X) port automatically works with a straight-through or crossover Ethernet cable.

The Switch has 1000Base-T Ethernet ports, which are paired with a mini-GBIC slot to create a dual personality interface. The Switch uses up to one connection for each mini-GBIC and 1000Base-T Ethernet pair. The mini-GBIC slots have priority over the Gigabit ports. This means that if a mini-GBIC slot and the corresponding GbE port are connected at the same time, the GbE port will be disabled.

When auto-negotiation is turned on, an Ethernet port negotiates with the peer automatically to determine the connection speed and duplex mode. If the peer Ethernet port does not support auto-negotiation or turns off this feature, the Switch determines the connection speed by detecting the signal on the cable and using half duplex mode. When the Switch's auto-negotiation is turned off, an Ethernet port uses the pre-configured speed and duplex mode when making a connection, thus requiring you to make sure that the settings of the peer Ethernet port are the same in order to connect.

3.1.2.1 Default Ethernet Negotiation Settings

The factory default negotiation settings for the Gigabit ports on the Switch are:

- Speed: Auto
- Duplex: Auto
- Flow control: Off
- Link Aggregation: Disabled

3.1.2.2 Auto-crossover

All ports are auto-crossover, that is auto-MDIX ports (Media Dependent Interface Crossover), so you may use either a straight-through Ethernet cable or crossover Ethernet cable for all Gigabit port connections. Auto-crossover ports automatically sense whether they need to function as crossover or straight ports, so crossover cables can connect both computers and switches/hubs.

3.1.3 Transceiver Slots

These are slots for mini-GBIC (Gigabit Interface Converter) transceivers or 100 Mbps Small Form-factor Pluggable (SFP) transceivers. A transceiver is a single unit that houses a transmitter and a receiver. The Switch does not come with transceivers. You must use transceivers that comply with the SFP Transceiver MultiSource Agreement (MSA). See the SFF committee's INF-8074i specification Rev 1.0 for details.

You can change transceivers while the Switch is operating. You can use different transceivers to connect to Ethernet switches with different types of fiber-optic or even copper cable connectors.

To avoid possible eye injury, do not look into an operating fiber-optic module's connectors.

- Type: SFP connection interface
- Connection speed: 1 Gigabit per second (Gbps) or 1 Megabit per second (Mbps)

3.1.3.1 Transceiver Installation

Use the following steps to install a mini-GBIC transceiver (SFP module).

- 1 Insert the transceiver into the slot with the exposed section of PCB board facing down.
- 2 Press the transceiver firmly until it clicks into place.
- 3 The Switch automatically detects the installed transceiver. Check the LEDs to verify that it is functioning properly.
- 4 Close the transceiver's latch (latch styles vary).
- 5 Connect the fiber optic cables to the transceiver.

Figure 13 Transceiver Installation Example

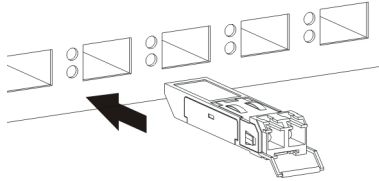
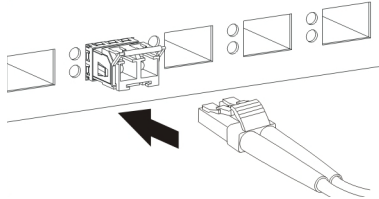


Figure 14 Connecting the Fiber Optic Cables



3.1.3.2 Transceiver Removal

Use the following steps to remove a mini-GBIC transceiver (SFP module).

- 1 Remove the fiber optic cables from the transceiver.
- 2 Open the transceiver's latch (latch styles vary).
- 3 Pull the transceiver out of the slot.

Figure 15 Removing the Fiber Optic Cables

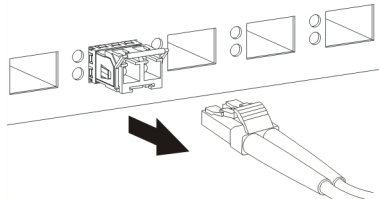


Figure 16 Opening the Transceiver's Latch Example

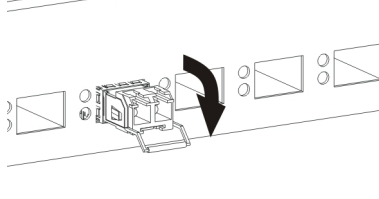
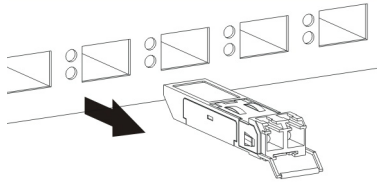


Figure 17 Transceiver Removal Example

3.1.4 Power Connector

Make sure you are using the correct power source as shown on the panel and that no objects obstruct the airflow of the fans.

Use the following procedures to connect the Switch to a power source after you have installed it.

Note: Check the power supply requirements on the panel, and make sure you are using an appropriate power source.

Push the power switches on the device and the power supply to the OFF position. Keep them off until you finish the power connections and come to [Section 3.1.4.3 on page 36](#) for turning on the power.

Use caution when handling live electrical connections. Verify the Switch is bonded before connecting power.

3.1.4.1 AC Power Connection (MGS3520 and MGS3530 Series)

Note: Use the included power cord.

Connect the female end of the included power cord to the power socket of your Switch. Connect the other end of the cord to a power outlet.

3.1.4.2 DC Power Connection (MGS3520 and MGS3530 Series)

Use two 18 AWG gauge wires to connect a DC input to a DC power supply to supply the operating voltage for the Switch.

The DC power wires must be able to handle 12V DC, 3A. The power supply to which the Switch connects must have a built-in circuit breaker or switch to toggle the power.

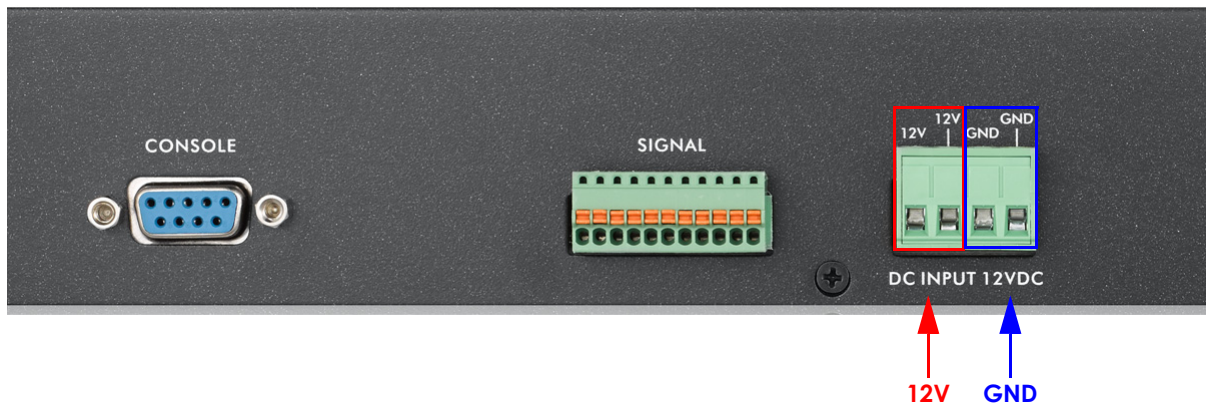
The MGS3520-28 and MGS3530-28 use a single ETB series terminal block plug with two pins for connecting to a power supply. Connect the **12V** (input) terminal to the power supply's positive terminal and the **GND** (return) terminal to the power supply's negative terminal.

Figure 18 Single DC Input Connection



The MGS3520-28F uses a single ETB series terminal block plug with four pins which allows you to connect up to two separate power supplies. If one power supply fails the system can operate on the remaining power supply. Use two wires to connect a single terminal pair to a power supply. Connect the **12V** (input) terminal to the power supply's positive terminal and the **GND** (return) terminal to the power supply's negative terminal.

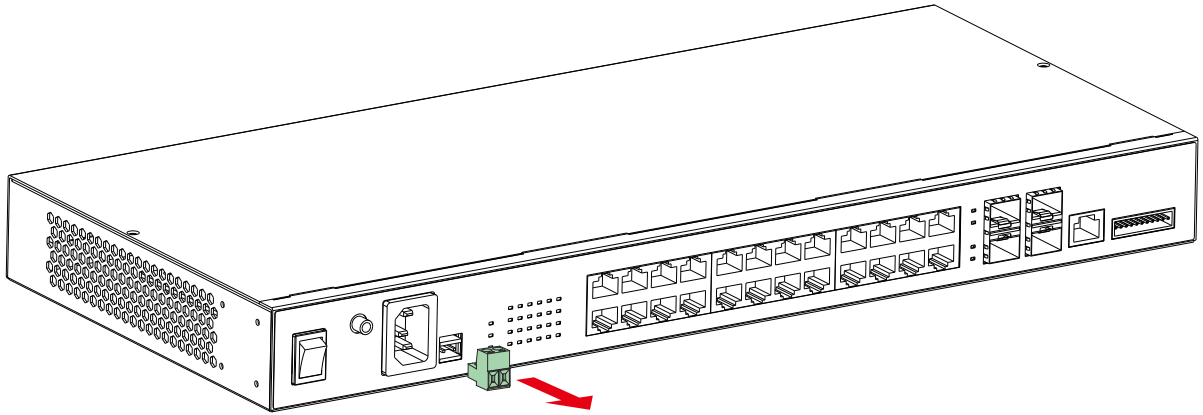
Figure 19 Dual DC Input Connection



Exposed power wire is dangerous. Use extreme care when connecting a DC power source to the device.

- 1 Turn off the Switch and the power supply (or supplies if applicable) and keep them off until the end of this procedure tells you to turn them on.

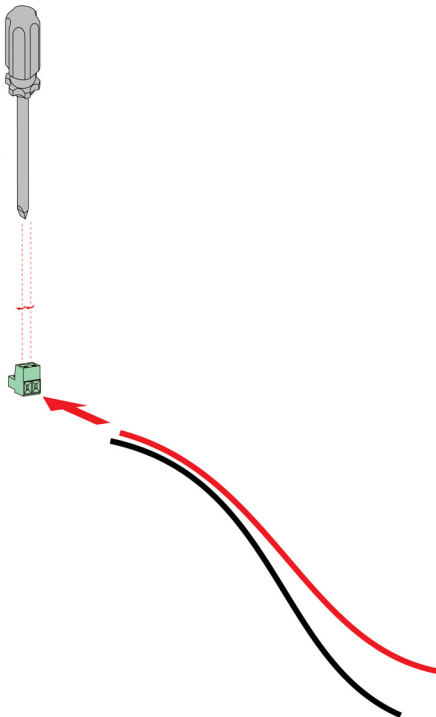
- 2 Remove the green DC power connector block if it is installed in the Switch.



- 3 Use a screwdriver to loosen the terminal block captive screws.

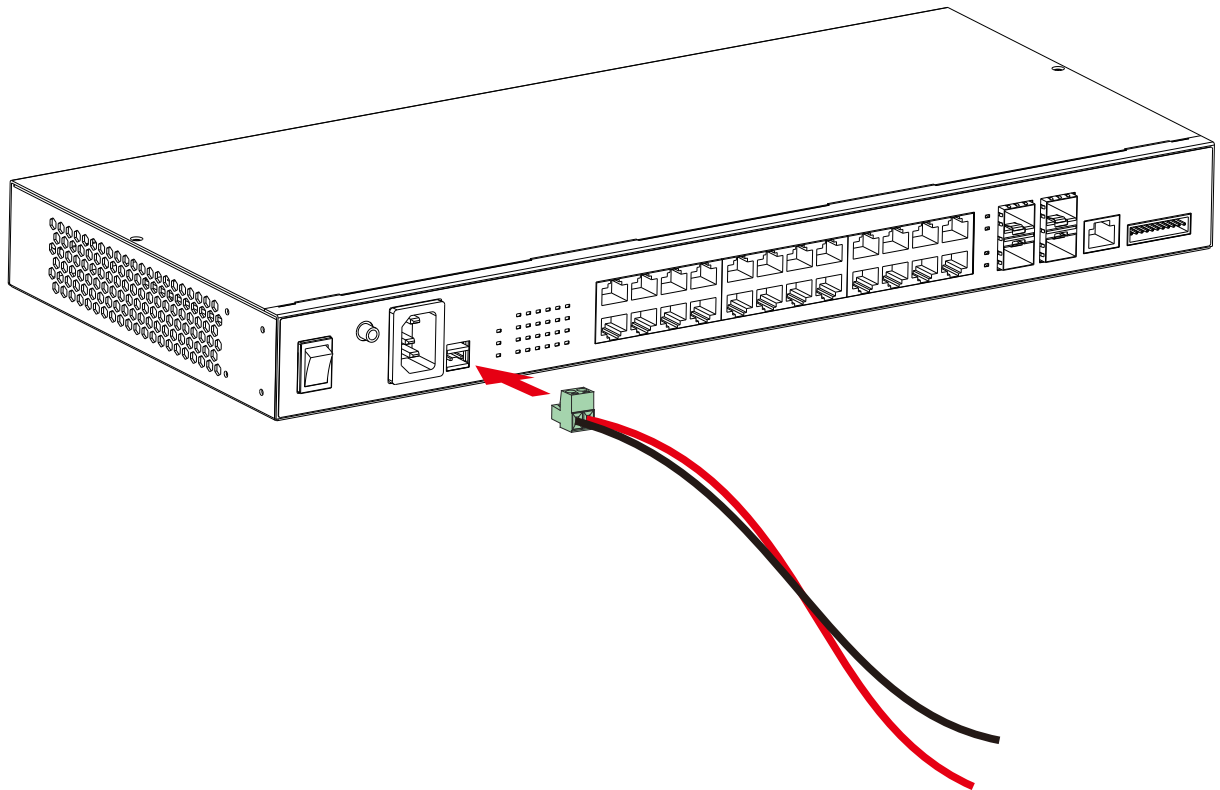
Push the wire firmly into the terminal as deep as possible and make sure that no exposed (bare) wire can be seen or touched.

- 4 Connect a red power wire to the **12V** power terminal on the power connector block and tighten the terminal screw. Repeat for the second **12V** power terminal if applicable.
- 5 Connect a black power wire to the **GND** power terminal on the power connector block and tighten the terminal screw. Repeat for the second **GND** power terminal if applicable.



- 6 Connect the red **12V** power wire to the power supply's positive terminal. Repeat for the second **12V** power wire and power supply if applicable.

- 7 Connect the black **GND** power wire to the power supply's corresponding negative terminal. Repeat for the second **GND** power wire and power supply if applicable.
- 8 Push the power connector block into the front of the power module.



3.1.4.3 Turn on the Power

Turn on the Switch's power switch if it has one and the power supply or supplies.

3.1.5 Signal Slot (MGS3520 and MGS3530 Series)

The **Signal** slot (fitted with the signal connector) allows you to connect devices to the Switch, such as sensors or other Zyxel switches which support the external alarm feature. This feature is in addition to the system alarm, which detects abnormal temperatures, and voltage levels on the Switch.

Your Switch can respond to an external signal in four ways.

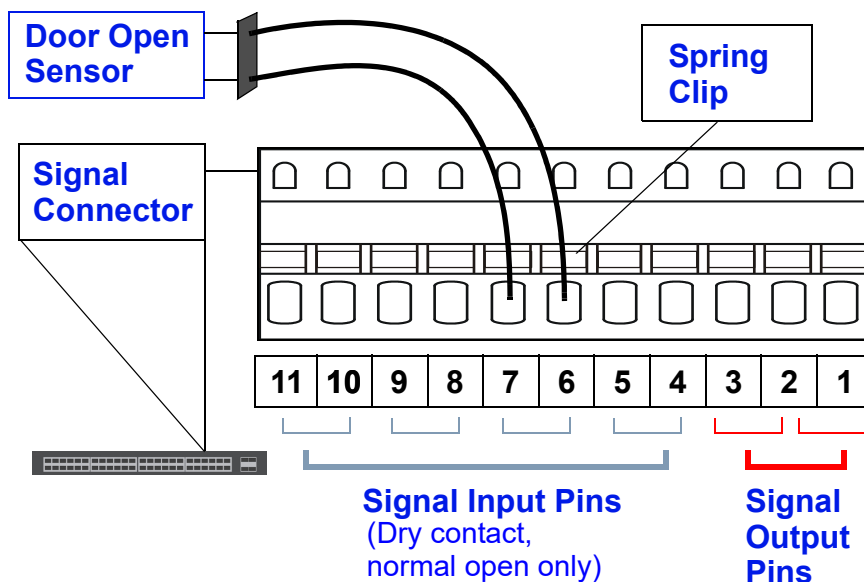
- The **ALM** LED shows an alert.
- The **Signal** slot can send an external alarm on to another device. By daisy-chaining the signal sensor cables from one Switch to another Zyxel switch which supports this feature, the external alarm alert (but not the system alarm) is received on each Switch.
- The Switch can be configured to send an SNMP trap to the SNMP server. See [Section 44.3 on page 365](#) for more information on using SNMP.
- The Switch can be configured to create an error log of the alarm. See [Section 46.1 on page 390](#) for more information on using the system log.

3.1.5.1 Connect a Sensor to the Signal Slot

This section shows you how to connect an external sensor device to the Switch.

- 1 Use a connector to connect wires of the correct gauge (18 AWG or larger) to the sensor's signal output pins. Check the sensor's documentation to identify its two signal output pins.
- 2 Connect these two wires to any one of the following pairs of signal input pins on the Switch's **Signal** connector--(4,5) (6,7) (8,9) (10,11). The pin numbers run from the right side of the connector to the left.
 - 2a Connect each of the sensor's two signal output wires to the **Signal** connector by depressing the spring clip corresponding to the pin you are connecting to.
 - 2b Insert the wire and release the spring clip.
 - 2c Repeat the process for the sensor's other signal output wire. A total of four sensors may be connected to the **Signal** connector in this way using the remaining signal input pins.
- 3 Insert the alarm connector into the **Signal** slot.

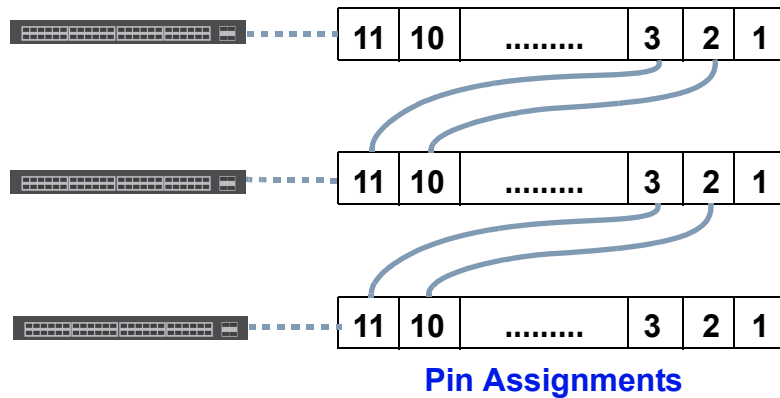
Figure 20 Connecting a Sensor to the **Signal** Slot



- 4 To connect an output device, repeat the previous steps but this time connect to either pins (1,2) or (2,3) on the **Signal** connector.

You can also daisy-chain the external alarm to another Zyxel Switch which supports the external alarm feature. If daisy-chaining to a Zyxel switch that is a different model, check your switch's documentation for the correct pin assignments.

- 1 Use wires of the correct gauge to connect either of the signal output pin pairs (1-normal close, 2-common) or (2-common, 3-normal open) on the **Signal** connector to the input signal pin pairs of an **Signal** connector on another Zyxel Switch.
- 2 When daisy-chaining further Switches ensure that the signal output pins you use are the same as those you used when connecting to the first switch, as shown in the diagram below.

Figure 21 Daisy-chaining an External Alarm Sensor to Other Switches of the Same Model

3.2 LEDs

After you connect the power to the Switch, view the LEDs to ensure proper functioning of the Switch and as an aid in troubleshooting.

Table 3 LED Descriptions

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
PWR	Green	On	The system is turned on.
		Off	The system is off.
SYS	Green	On	The system is on and functioning properly.
		Blinking	The system is rebooting and performing self-diagnostic tests.
		Off	The power is off or the system is not ready/malfunctioning.
ALM	Red	On	A hardware failure is detected, or an external alarm is active.
		Off	The system is functioning normally.
10/100/1000 Mbps Gigabit Ethernet Ports			
1 ~ 24 (MGS3520-28)	Green	On	The link to a 10 Mbps or 1000 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 10 Mbps or 1000 Mbps Ethernet network.
	Amber	On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 100 Mbps Ethernet network.
	Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.	
10/100/1000 Mbps Gigabit Ethernet Ports			
1 ~ 24 (MGS3530-28)	Green	On	The link to a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network.
	Amber	On	The link to a 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps Ethernet network.
	Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.	
100/1000 Mbps SFP Slots			

Table 3 LED Descriptions (continued)

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
1 ~ 28 (MGS3520-28F)	Green	On	The port has a successful 1000 Mbps connection.
		Blinking	The port is receiving or transmitting data at 1000 Mbps.
	Amber	On	The port has a successful 100 Mbps connection.
		Blinking	This port is receiving or transmitting data at 100 Mbps.
		Off	This link is disconnected.
1G/10G SFP+ Slots			
25 ~ 28 (MGS3530-28)	Blue	On	The port has a successful 10 Gbps connection.
		Blinking	The port is receiving or transmitting data at 10 Gbps.
	Green	On	The port has a successful 1000 Mbps connection.
		Blinking	This port is receiving or transmitting data at 1000 Mbps.
		Off	This link is disconnected.
10/100/1000Base-T Ethernet Ports (in Dual Personality Interface)			
LNK/ACT	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 10 Mbps or a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 10 Mbps or a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 100 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.

CHAPTER 4

The Web Configurator

This section introduces the configuration and functions of the web configurator.

4.1 Introduction

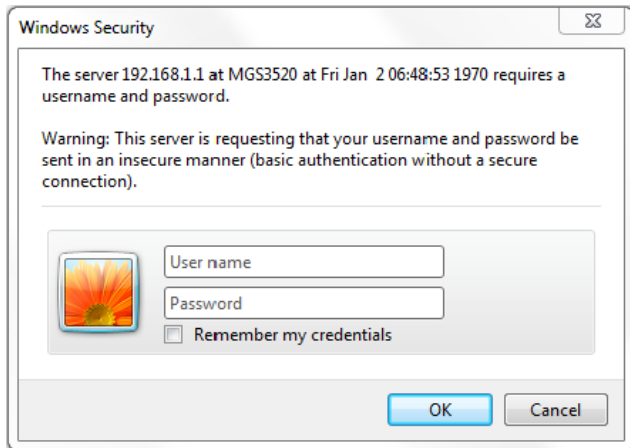
The web configurator is an HTML-based management interface that allows easy Switch setup and management via Internet browser. Use Internet Explorer 6.0 and later or Firefox 2.0 and later versions. The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels.

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device. Web pop-up blocking is enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2.
- JavaScript (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

4.2 System Login

- 1 Configure your computer's IP address in the same network as the Switch's management port. (For example, 192.168.1.x/24)
- 2 Start your web browser.
- 3 Type "http://" and the IP address of the Switch (for example, the default management IP address is 192.168.1.1) in the Location or Address field. Press [ENTER].
- 4 The login screen appears. The default username is **admin** and associated default password is **1234**. The date and time display as shown if you have not configured a time server nor manually entered a time and date in the **General Setup** screen.

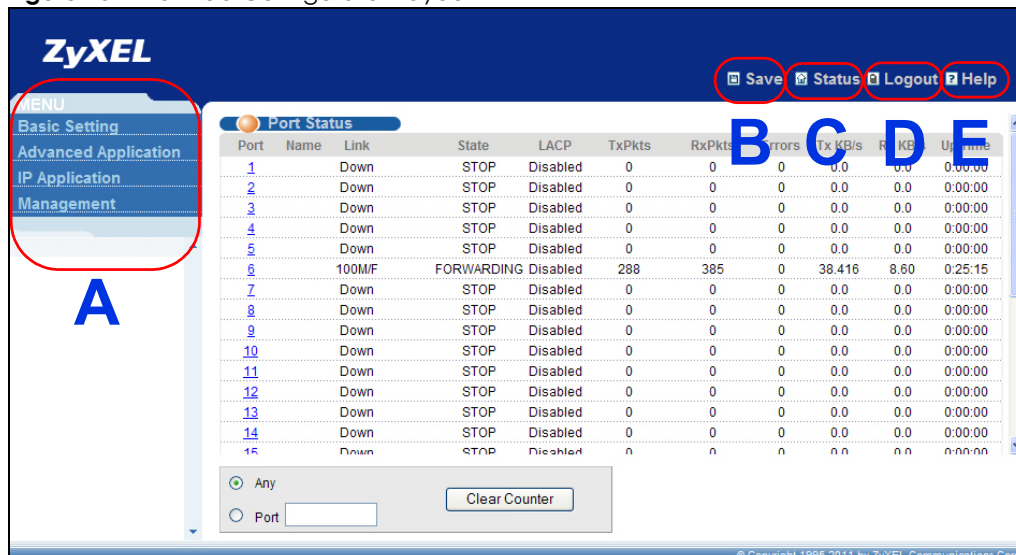
Figure 22 Web Configurator: Login

- 5 Click **OK** to view the first web configurator screen.

4.3 The Web Configurator Layout

The **Status** screen is the first screen that displays when you access the web configurator. This guide uses the MGS3520-28 screens as an example. The screens may vary slightly for different models.

The following figure shows the navigating components of a web configurator screen.

Figure 23 The Web Configurator Layout

A - Click the menu items to open submenu links, and then click on a submenu link to open the screen in the main window.

B, C, D, E - These are quick links which allow you to perform certain tasks no matter which screen you are currently working in.

B - Click this link to save your configuration into the Switch's nonvolatile memory. Nonvolatile memory is saved in the configuration file from which the Switch booted from and it stays the same even if the Switch's power is turned off. See [Section 43.3 on page 357](#) for information on saving your settings to a specific configuration file.

C - Click this link to go to the status page of the Switch.

D - Click this link to log out of the web configurator.

E - Click this link to display web help pages. The help pages provide descriptions for all of the configuration screens.

In the navigation panel, click a main link to reveal a list of submenu links.

Table 4 Navigation Panel Sub-links Overview

BASIC SETTING	ADVANCED APPLICATION	IP APPLICATION	MANAGEMENT

The following table describes the links in the navigation panel.

Table 5 Navigation Panel Links

LINK	DESCRIPTION
Basic Settings	
System Info	This link takes you to a screen that displays general system and hardware monitoring information.
General Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure general identification information and time settings for the Switch.
Switch Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can set up global Switch parameters such as VLAN type, MAC address learning, GARP and priority queues.
IP Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the management IP address, subnet mask (necessary for Switch management) and DNS (domain name server).
Port Setup	This link takes you to screens where you can configure speed, flow control and priority settings for individual Switch ports.
Interface Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure settings for individual interface type and ID.
IPv6	This link takes you to a screen where you can view IPv6 status and configure IPv6 settings.
Advanced Application	
VLAN	This link takes you to screens where you can configure port-based or 802.1Q VLAN (depending on what you configured in the Switch Setup menu). You can also configure a protocol based VLAN or a subnet based VLAN in these screens.
Static MAC Forwarding	This link takes you to screens where you can configure static MAC addresses for a port. These static MAC addresses do not age out.
Static Multicast Forwarding	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure static multicast MAC addresses for port(s). These static multicast MAC addresses do not age out.
Filtering	This link takes you to a screen to set up filtering rules.
Spanning Tree Protocol	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the RSTP/MRSTP/MSTP to prevent network loops.
Bandwidth Control	This link takes you to screens where you can cap the maximum bandwidth allowed on a port.
Broadcast Storm Control	This link takes you to a screen to set up broadcast filters.
Mirroring	This link takes you to screens where you can copy traffic from one port or ports to another port in order that you can examine the traffic from the first port without interference.
Link Aggregation	This link takes you to screen where you can logically aggregate physical links to form one logical, higher-bandwidth link.
Port Authentication	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure IEEE 802.1x port authentication as well as MAC authentication for clients communicating via the Switch.
Port Security	This link takes you to a screen where you can activate MAC address learning and set the maximum number of MAC addresses to learn on a port.
Range Profile	This link takes you to screens where you can configure profiles for a range of VLANs, IP addresses, ports and socket ports.
Classifier	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the Switch to group packets based on the specified criteria.
Policy Rule	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the Switch to perform special treatment on the grouped packets.
Queuing Method	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure queuing with associated queue weights for each port.
VLAN Stacking	This link takes you to screens where you can activate and configure VLAN stacking.
Multicast	This link takes you to screen where you can configure various multicast features, IGMP snooping and create multicast VLANs.

Table 5 Navigation Panel Links (continued)

LINK	DESCRIPTION
AAA	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure authentication, authorization and accounting services via external servers. The external servers can be either RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) or TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus).
IP Source Guard	This link takes you to screens where you can configure filtering of unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network.
Loop Guard	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure protection against network loops that occur on the edge of your network.
VLAN Mapping	This link takes you to screens where you can configure VLAN mapping settings on the Switch.
Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure L2PT (Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling) settings on the Switch.
sFlow (MGS3520 and MGS3530 Series)	This link takes you to screens where you can configure sFlow settings on the Switch.
PPPoE	This link takes you to screens where you can configure how the Switch gives a PPPoE termination server additional subscriber information that the server can use to identify and authenticate a PPPoE client.
Errdisable	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure CPU protection and error disable recovery.
Private VLAN	This link takes you to a screen where you can block traffic between ports in a VLAN on the Switch.
Green Ethernet	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure green Ethernet settings in EEE, auto power down, and short reach for each port.
LLDP	This link takes you to screens where you can configure LLDP settings.
BPDU Guard	This link takes you to screens where you can enable BPDU guard on the Switch and ports, and view the port state.
Link Flap	This link takes you to screens where you can enable link-flap prevention on the Switch and ports, and view the port state.
IP Application	
Static Routing	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure static routes. A static route defines how the Switch should forward traffic by configuring the TCP/IP parameters manually.
DiffServ	This link takes you to screens where you can enable DiffServ, and set DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mappings.
DHCP	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the DHCP settings.
ARP Setup	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the ARP learning settings for each port.
Management	
Maintenance	This link takes you to screens where you can perform firmware and configuration file maintenance as well as reboot the system.
Access Control	This link takes you to screens where you can change the system login password and configure SNMP and remote management.
Diagnostic	This link takes you to screens where you can view system logs and can test port(s).
Syslog	This link takes you to screens where you can setup system logs and a system log server.
Cluster Management	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure clustering management and view its status.
MAC Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the MAC address and VLAN ID of a device attached to a port. You can also view what kind of MAC address it is.
ARP Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the MAC address – IP address resolution table.

Table 5 Navigation Panel Links (continued)

LINK	DESCRIPTION
Path MTU Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the path MTU aging time, index, destination address, MTU, and expire settings.
Configure Clone	This link takes you to a screen where you can copy attributes of one port to (an)other port(s).
Neighbor Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the IPv6 neighbor table which includes index, interface, neighbor address, MAC address, status and type.

4.3.1 Change Your Password

After you log in for the first time, it is recommended you change the default administrator password. Click **Management > Access Control > Logins** to display the next screen.

Figure 24 Change Administrator Login Password

Logins Access Control

Administrator

Old Password

New Password

Retype to confirm

Please record your new password whenever you change it. The system will lock you out if you have forgotten your password.

Edit Logins

Login	User Name	Password	Retype to confirm	Privilege
1				
2				
3				
4				

Apply Cancel

4.4 Saving Your Configuration

When you are done modifying the settings in a screen, click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

Click the **Save** link in the upper right hand corner of the web configurator to save your configuration to nonvolatile memory. Nonvolatile memory refers to the Switch's storage that remains even if the Switch's power is turned off.

Note: Use the **Save** link when you are done with a configuration session.

4.5 Switch Lockout

You could block yourself (and all others) from using in-band-management (managing through the data ports) if you do one of the following:

- 1 Delete the management VLAN (default is VLAN 1).
- 2 Delete all port-based VLANs with the CPU port as a member. The "CPU port" is the management port of the Switch.
- 3 Filter all traffic to the CPU port.
- 4 Disable all ports.
- 5 Misconfigure the text configuration file.
- 6 Forget the password and/or IP address.
- 7 Prevent all services from accessing the Switch.
- 8 Change a service port number but forget it.

Note: Be careful not to lock yourself and others out of the Switch. If you do lock yourself out, try using out-of-band management (via the management port) to configure the Switch.

4.6 Resetting the Switch

If you lock yourself (and others) from the Switch or forget the administrator password, you will need to reload the factory-default configuration file or reset the Switch back to the factory defaults.

4.6.1 Reload the Configuration File

Uploading the factory-default configuration file replaces the current configuration file with the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all previous configurations and the speed of the console port will be reset to the default of 9600bps with 8 data bit, no parity, one stop bit and flow control set to none. The password will also be reset to "1234" and the IP address to 192.168.1.1.

To upload the configuration file, do the following:

- 1 Connect to the console port using a computer with terminal emulation software. See [Section 3.1 on page 29](#) for details.
- 2 Disconnect and reconnect the Switch's power to begin a session. When you reconnect the Switch's power, you will see the initial screen.
- 3 When you see the message "Press any key to enter Debug Mode within 3 seconds ..." press any key to enter debug mode.
- 4 Type `at1c` after the "Enter Debug Mode" message.

- 5 Wait for the "Starting XMODEM upload" message before activating XMODEM upload on your terminal.
- 6 After a configuration file upload, type `atgo` to restart the Switch.

Figure 25 Resetting the Switch: Via the Console Port

```

Bootbase Version: V1.00 | 11/02/2011 11:09:37
RAM: Size = 65536 Kbytes
DRAM POST: Testing: 65536K
OK
DRAM Test SUCCESS !

ZyNOS Version: V4.10(AATN.1)b11 | 07/21/2015 19:26:52

Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds.
.....
Enter Debug Mode
ras> atlc
Starting XMODEM upload (CRC mode)....
CCCCCCCCCCCCCCCC
Total 393216 bytes received.
Erasing..
.....
OK
ras> atgo

```

The Switch is now reinitialized with a default configuration file including the default password of "1234".

4.7 Logging Out of the Web Configurator

Click **Logout** in a screen to exit the web configurator. You have to log in with your password again after you log out. This is recommended after you finish a management session for security reasons.

Figure 26 Web Configurator: Logout Screen



4.8 Help

The web configurator's online help has descriptions of individual screens and some supplementary information. Click the **Help** link from a web configurator screen to view an online help description of that screen.

CHAPTER 5

Initial Setup Example

This chapter shows how to set up the Switch for an example network.

5.1 Overview

The following lists the configuration steps for the initial setup:

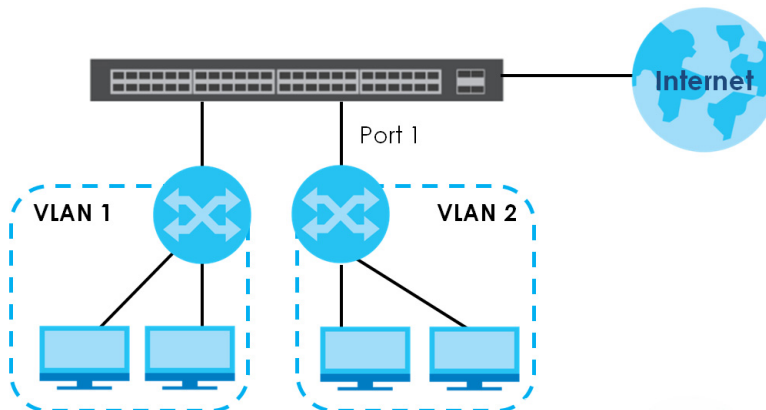
- Create a VLAN
- Set port VLAN ID
- Configure the Switch IP management address.

5.1.1 Creating a VLAN

VLANs confine broadcast frames to the VLAN group in which the port(s) belongs. You can do this with port-based VLAN or tagged static VLAN with fixed port members.

In this example, you want to configure port 1 as a member of VLAN 2.

Figure 27 Initial Setup Network Example: VLAN



- 1 Click **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** in the navigation panel and click the **Static VLAN** link.

VLAN Status VLAN MAC Learning VLAN Port Setting **Static VLAN**

VLAN Search by VID Search

The Number of VLAN: 2.

Index	VID	Elapsed Time	Status
1	1	18:59:02	Static

Change Pages Previous Next

- In the **Static VLAN** screen, select **ACTIVE**, enter a descriptive name in the **Name** field and enter 2 in the **VLAN Group ID** field for the **VLAN2** network.

Static VLAN VLAN Status

ACTIVE

Name

VLAN Group ID

Port	Control	Tagging
*	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
1	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
9	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
10	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

Add Cancel Clear

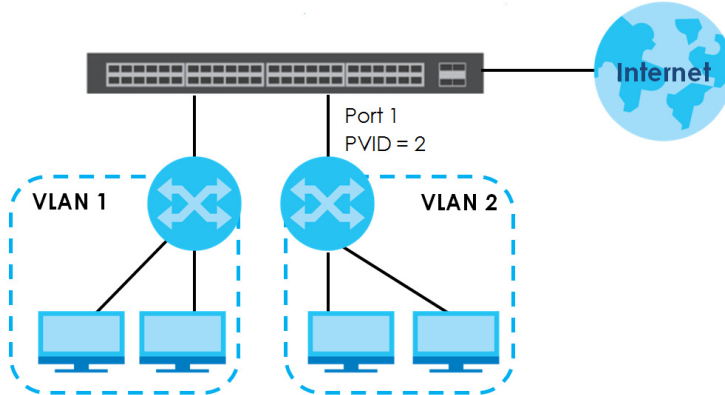
Note: The **VLAN Group ID** field in this screen and the **VID** field in the **IP Setup** screen refer to the same VLAN ID.

- Since the **VLAN2** network is connected to port 1 on the Switch, select **Fixed** to configure port 1 to be a permanent member of the VLAN only.
- To ensure that VLAN-unaware devices (such as computers and hubs) can receive frames properly, clear the **TX Tagging** check box to set the Switch to remove VLAN tags before sending.
- Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

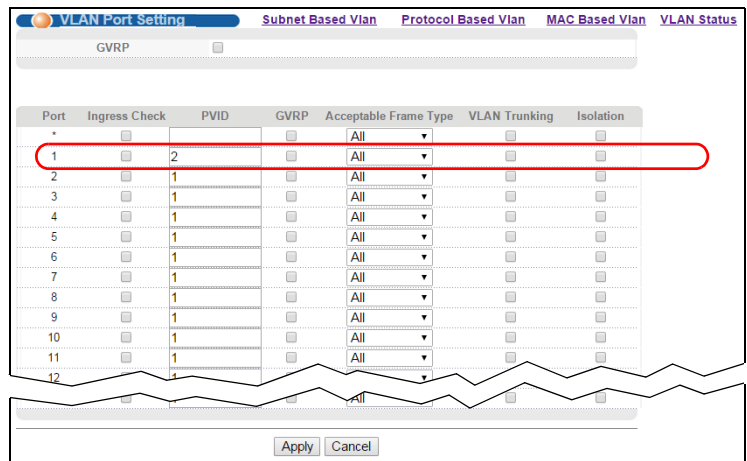
5.1.2 Setting Port VID

Use PVID to add a tag to incoming untagged frames received on that port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.

In the example network, configure 2 as the port VID on port 1 so that any untagged frames received on that port get sent to VLAN 2.

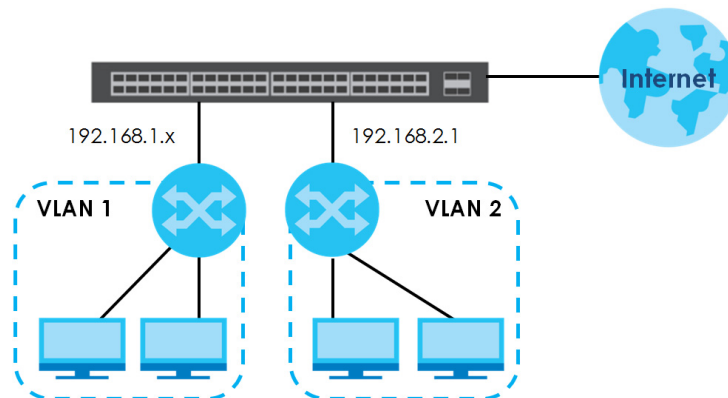
Figure 28 Initial Setup Network Example: Port VID

- 1 Click **Advanced Applications > VLAN** in the navigation panel. Then click the **VLAN Port Setting** link.
- 2 Enter 2 in the **PVID** field for port 1 and click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.



5.2 Configuring Switch Management IP Address

The default management IP address of the Switch is 192.168.1.1. You can configure another IP address in a different subnet for management purposes. The following figure shows an example.

Figure 29 Initial Setup Example: Management IP Address

- 1 Connect your computer to the Switch's port which is not in VLAN 2.
- 2 Open your web browser and enter 192.168.1.1 (the default management IP address) in the address bar to access the web configurator. See [Section 4.2 on page 40](#) for more information.
- 3 Click **Basic Setting** > **IP Setup** in the navigation panel.
- 4 Configure the related fields in the **IP Setup** screen.
- 5 For the **VLAN2** network, enter 192.168.2.1 as the IP address and 255.255.255.0 as the subnet mask.
- 6 In the **VID** field, enter the ID of the VLAN group to which you want this management IP address to belong. This is the same as the VLAN ID you configure in the **Static VLAN** screen.
- 7 Click **Add** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

The screenshot shows the 'IP Setup' configuration page. At the top, there is a 'Domain Name Server' field set to 0.0.0.0. Below that, the 'Default Management IP Address' section has two radio buttons: 'DHCP Client' (unselected) and 'Static IP Address' (selected). Under 'Static IP Address', there are three input fields: 'IP Address' (192.168.1.1), 'IP Subnet Mask' (255.255.255.0), and 'Default Gateway' (0.0.0.0). A 'VID' field is set to 1. There are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons below this section. The 'Management IP Addresses' section contains a table with one entry: IP Address 192.168.2.1, IP Subnet Mask 255.255.255.0, and VID 2. Below the table are 'Add' and 'Cancel' buttons. At the bottom, there is a table with columns: Index, IP Address, IP Subnet Mask, VID, Default Gateway, and Delete. Below this table are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons.

CHAPTER 6

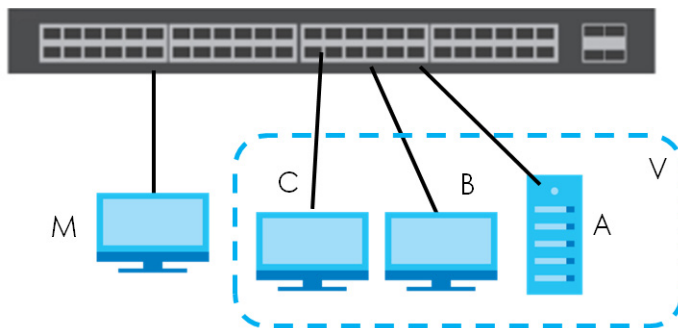
Tutorials

This chapter provides some examples of using the web configurator to set up and use the Switch. The tutorials include:

- [How to Use DHCP Snooping on the Switch](#)
- [How to Use DHCP Relay on the Switch](#)
- [How to Use PPPoE IA on the Switch](#)
- [How to Use Error Disable and Recovery on the Switch](#)
- [How to Set Up a Guest VLAN](#)
- [How to Do Port Isolation in a VLAN](#)

6.1 How to Use DHCP Snooping on the Switch

You only want DHCP server **A** connected to port 5 to assign IP addresses to all devices in VLAN 100. Create a VLAN containing ports 5, 6 and 7. Connect a computer (**M**) to the Switch's port which is not in VLAN 100.



Note: For related information about DHCP snooping, see [Section 27.1 on page 241](#).

The settings in this tutorial are as the following.

Table 6 Settings in this Tutorial

HOST	PORT CONNECTED	VLAN	PVID	DHCP SNOOPING PORT TRUSTED
DHCP Server (A)	5	1 and 100	100	Yes
DHCP Client (B)	6	1 and 100	100	No
DHCP Client (C)	7	1 and 100	100	No

- 1 Access the Switch through **http://192.168.1.1**. Log into the Switch by entering the username (default: **admin**) and password (default: **1234**).

- 2 Go to **Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN**, and create a VLAN with ID of 100. Add ports 5, 6 and 7 in the VLAN by selecting **Fixed** in the **Control** field as shown.

Deselect **Tx Tagging** because you don't want outgoing traffic to contain this VLAN tag.

Click **Add**.

Static VLAN [VLAN Status](#)

ACTIVE

Name

VLAN Group ID

Port	Control			Tagging
*	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
5	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
6	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
7	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
9	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

- 3 Go to **Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting**, and set the PVID of the ports 5, 6 and 7 to 100. This tags untagged incoming frames on ports 5, 6 and 7 with the tag 100.

VLAN Port Setting [Subnet Based Vlan](#) [Protocol Based Vlan](#) [VLAN Status](#)

GVRP

Port	Ingress Check	PVID	GVRP	Acceptable Frame Type	VLAN Trunking	Isolation
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 4 Go to **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP snooping > Configure**, activate and specify VLAN 100 as the DHCP VLAN as shown. Click **Apply**.

DHCP Snooping Configure [Port](#) [VLAN](#) [DHCP Snooping](#)

Active
 Disable
 DHCP Vlan

Database

Agent URL
 Timeout interval seconds
 Write delay interval seconds

Renew DHCP Snooping URL

5 Click the **Port** link at the top right corner.



6 The **DHCP Snooping Port Configure** screen appears. Select **Trusted** in the **Server Trusted state** field for port 5 because the DHCP server is connected to port 5. Keep ports 6 and 7 **Untrusted** because they are connected to DHCP clients. Click **Apply**.

DHCP Snooping Port Configure [Configure](#)

Port	Server Trusted state	Rate (pps)
*	Untrusted	<input type="text"/>
1	Untrusted	<input type="text" value="0"/>
2	Untrusted	<input type="text" value="0"/>
3	Untrusted	<input type="text" value="0"/>
4	Untrusted	<input type="text" value="0"/>
5	Trusted	<input type="text" value="0"/>
6	Untrusted	<input type="text" value="0"/>
7	Untrusted	<input type="text" value="0"/>
8	Untrusted	<input type="text" value="0"/>
9	Untrusted	<input type="text" value="0"/>

7 Go to **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP snooping > Configure > VLAN**, show VLAN 100 by entering 100 in the **Start VID** and **End VID** fields and click **Apply**. Then select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field of the VLAN 100 entry shown at the bottom section of the screen.

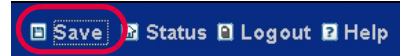
If you want to add more information in the DHCP request packets such as source VLAN ID or system name, you can also select the **Option82** and **Information** fields in the entry. See [Section 27.1.1.3 on page 242](#).

DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure [Port Configure](#)

Show VLAN Start VID End VID

VID	Enabled	Option 82 Profile
*	No	
100	No	

- 8 Click **Save** at the top right corner of the web configurator to save the configuration permanently.



- 9 Connect your DHCP server to port 5 and a computer (as DHCP client) to either port 6 or 7. The computer should be able to get an IP address from the DHCP server. If you put the DHCP server on port 6 or 7, the computer will not be able to get an IP address.
- 10 To check if DHCP snooping works, go to **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard**, you should see an IP assignment with the type **dhcp-snooping** as shown.

IP Source Guard [Static Binding](#) [DHCP Snooping](#) [ARP Inspection](#)

Index	MAC Address	IP Address	Lease	Type	VID	Port
1	00:02:00:00:00:1c	10.10.1.16	6d23h17m 0s	dhcp-snooping	100	7

You can also telnet or log into the Switch's console. Use the command "show dhcp snooping binding" to see the DHCP snooping binding table as shown next.

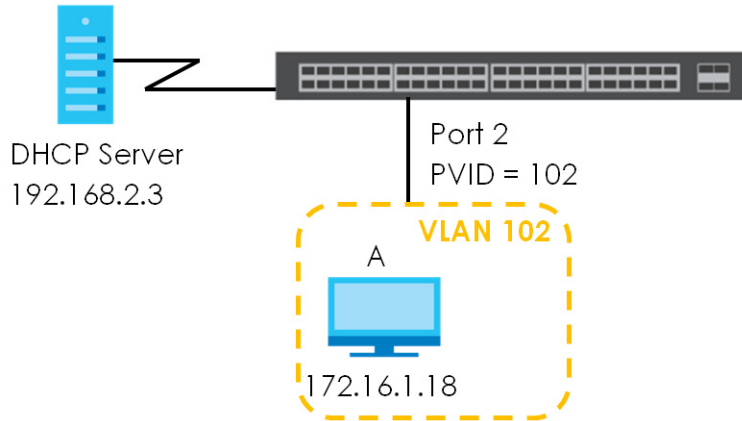
```
sysname# show dhcp snooping binding
      MacAddress      IpAddress      Lease      Type  VLAN  Port
-----
00:02:00:00:00:1c    10.10.1.16    6d23h59m20s  dhcp-snooping  100   7
Total number of bindings: 1
```

6.2 How to Use DHCP Relay on the Switch

This tutorial describes how to configure your Switch to forward DHCP client requests to a specific DHCP server. The DHCP server can then assign a specific IP address based on the information in the DHCP requests.

6.2.1 DHCP Relay Tutorial Introduction

In this example, you have configured your DHCP server (192.168.2.3) and want to have it assign a specific IP address (say 172.16.1.18) and gateway information to DHCP client **A** based on the system name, VLAN ID and port number in the DHCP request. Client **A** connects to the Switch's port 2 in VLAN 102.



6.2.2 Creating a VLAN

Follow the steps below to configure port 2 as a member of VLAN 102.

- 1 Access the web configurator through the Switch's port which is not in VLAN 102.
- 2 Go to **Basic Setting > Switch Setup** and set the VLAN type to **802.1Q**. Click **Apply** to save the settings to the run-time memory.

The screenshot shows the 'Switch Setup' web interface. The 'VLAN Type' is set to '802.1Q'. The 'Priority Queue Assignment' table is visible, showing the mapping of priority levels to queue numbers.

Priority	Queue
Level7	7
Level6	6
Level5	5
Level4	4
Level3	3
Level2	1
Level1	0
Level0	2

- 3 Click **Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN**.
- 4 In the **Static VLAN** screen, select **ACTIVE**, enter a descriptive name (VALN 102 for example) in the **Name** field and enter 102 in the **VLAN Group ID** field.
- 5 Select **Fixed** to configure port 2 to be a permanent member of this VLAN.

- 6 Clear the **TX Tagging** check box to set the Switch to remove VLAN tags before sending.
- 7 Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

Static VLAN VLAN Status

ACTIVE

Name

VLAN Group ID

Port	Control	Tagging
*	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
24	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
25	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
26	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
27	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
28	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

- 8 Click the **VLAN Status** link in the **Static VLAN** screen and then the **VLAN Port Setting** link in the **VLAN Status** screen.

VLAN Status VLAN MAC Learning **VLAN Port Setting** Static VLAN

VLAN Search by VID

The Number of VLAN: 1.

Index	VID	Elapsed Time	Status
1	1	0:01:18	Static

Change Pages

- 9 Enter 102 in the **PVID** field for port 2 to add a tag to incoming untagged frames received on that port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.
- 10 Click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory.

VLAN Port Setting

Subnet Based Vlan Protocol Based Vlan MAC Based Vlan VLAN Status

GVRP

Port	Ingress Check	PVID	GVRP	Acceptable Frame Type	VLAN Trunking	Isolation
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	All ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	102	<input type="checkbox"/>	All ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
25	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

- 11 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.

6.2.3 Configuring DHCPv4 Relay

Follow the steps below to enable DHCPv4 relay on the Switch and allow the Switch to add relay agent information (such as the VLAN ID) to DHCP requests.

- 1 Click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4** and then the **Global** link to open the **DHCP Relay** screen.
- 2 Select the **Active** check box.
- 3 Enter the DHCP server's IP address (192.168.2.3 in this example) in the **Remote DHCP Server 1** field.
- 4 Select a pre-defined **Option 82 Profile** that includes the system name, VLAN ID and port number in the client DHCP requests (default2 in this example).
- 5 Click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory.

DHCP Relay	
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Remote DHCP Server 1	192.168.2.3
Remote DHCP Server 2	0.0.0.0
Remote DHCP Server 3	0.0.0.0
Option 82 Profile	default2 ▼

- 6 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.
- 7 The DHCP server can then assign a specific IP address based on the DHCP request.

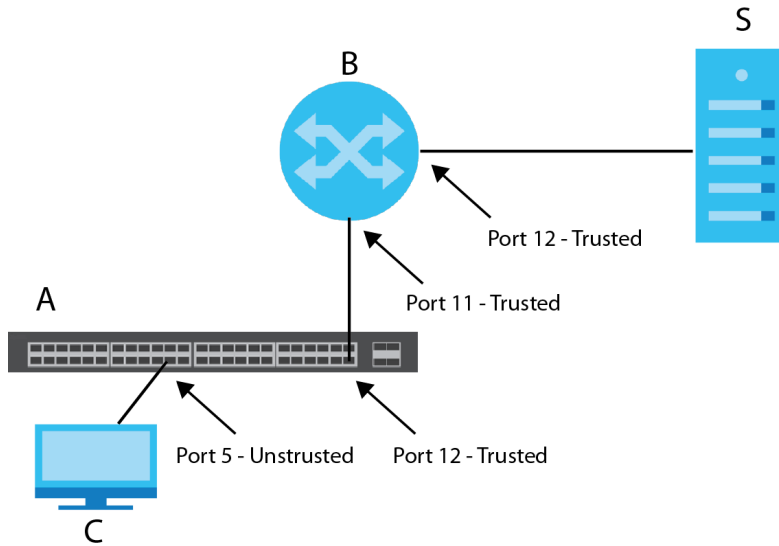
6.2.4 Troubleshooting

Check the client **A**'s IP address. If it did not receive the IP address 172.16.1.18, make sure:

- 1 Client **A** is connected to the Switch's port 2 in VLAN 102.
- 2 You configured the correct VLAN ID, port number and system name for DHCP relay on both the DHCP server and the Switch.
- 3 You clicked the **Save** link on the Switch to have your settings take effect.

6.3 How to Use PPPoE IA on the Switch

You want to configure PPPoE Intermediate Agent on the Switch (**A**) to pass a subscriber's information to a PPPoE server (**S**). There is another switch (**B**) between switch **A** and server **S**. Switch **B** is connected to switch **A**. In this way, PPPoE server **S** can identify subscriber **C** and may apply different settings to it.



Note: For related information about PPPoE IA, see [Section 32.3 on page 278](#).

The settings in this tutorial are as follows:

Table 7 Settings in this Tutorial

SWITCH	PORT CONNECTED	VLAN	CIRCUIT-ID	REMOTE-ID	PPPOE IA PORT TRUSTED
A	Port 5 (to C)	1	userC	00134900000A	Untrusted
	Port 12 (to B)	1	N/A	N/A	Trusted
B	Port 11 (to A)	1	N/A	N/A	Trusted
	Port 12 (to S)	1	N/A	N/A	Trusted

6.3.1 Configuring Switch A

- 1 Click **Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent**. Select **Active** then click **Apply**.

Intermediate Agent **Port** **VLAN** **PPPoE**

Active

access-node-identifier MGS3520

circuit-id

Active

hostname

identifier-string

option spv ▼

delimiter / ▼

Apply Cancel

Click **Port** on the top of the screen.

- 2 Select **Untrusted** for port 5 and enter **userC** as **Circuit-id** and **0013490000A** as **Remote-id**. Select **Trusted** for port 12 and then leave the other fields empty. Click **Apply**.

Port **VLAN** **Intermediate Agent**

Port	Server Trusted State	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	Untrusted ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
1	Untrusted ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
2	Untrusted ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
3	Untrusted ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
4	Untrusted ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
5	Untrusted ▼	userC	0013490000A
6	Untrusted ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
7	Untrusted ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
8	Untrusted ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
9	Untrusted ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
10	Untrusted ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
11	Untrusted ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
12	Trusted ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
13	Untrusted ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
14	Untrusted ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Then Click **Intermediate Agent** on the top of the screen.

- 3 The **Intermediate Agent** screen appears. Click **VLAN** on the top of the screen.

Intermediate Agent [Port](#) **VLAN** [PPPoE](#)

Active

access-node-identifier

circuit-id

Active

hostname

identifier-string

option

delimiter

- 4 Enter 1 for both **Start VID** and **End VID** since both the Switch and PPPoE server are in VLAN 1 in this example. Click **Apply**.

VLAN [Intermediate Agent](#)

Show VLAN Start VID End VID

VID	Enabled	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 5 Then select **Yes** to enable PPPoE IA in VLAN 1 and also select **Circuit-id** and **Remote-id** to allow the Switch to add these two strings to frames tagged with VLAN 1 and pass to the PPPoE server. Click **Apply**.

VLAN [Intermediate Agent](#)

Show VLAN Start VID End VID

VID	Enabled	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Yes	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

6.3.2 Configuring Switch B

The example uses another MGS3520-28/28F as switch **B**.

- 1 Click **Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent**. Select **Active** then click **Apply**.

The screenshot shows the 'Intermediate Agent' configuration page. At the top, there are tabs for 'Intermediate Agent', 'Port', 'VLAN', and 'PPPoE'. The 'Intermediate Agent' tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a section for 'Intermediate Agent' configuration. The 'Active' checkbox is checked and circled in red. The 'access-node-identifier' field contains the text 'MGS3520'. Below this is a section for 'circuit-id' configuration. It includes an 'Active' checkbox (unchecked), a 'hostname' field (empty), an 'identifier-string' field (empty), an 'option' dropdown menu set to 'spv', and a 'delimiter' dropdown menu set to '/'. At the bottom of the page, there are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Click **Port** on the top of the screen.

- 2 Select **Trusted** for ports 11 and 12 and then click **Apply**.

The screenshot shows the 'Port' configuration page. At the top, there are tabs for 'Port', 'VLAN', and 'Intermediate Agent'. The 'Port' tab is selected. Below the tabs is a table with the following columns: 'Port', 'Server Trusted State', 'Circuit-id', and 'Remote-id'. The table contains 15 rows, numbered 1 to 14, plus a '*' row at the top. The 'Server Trusted State' column has dropdown menus for each row. Ports 11 and 12 are set to 'Trusted' and are circled in red. All other ports are set to 'Untrusted'. The 'Circuit-id' and 'Remote-id' columns are empty for all rows.

Port	Server Trusted State	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	Untrusted		
1	Untrusted		
2	Untrusted		
3	Untrusted		
4	Untrusted		
5	Untrusted		
6	Untrusted		
7	Untrusted		
8	Untrusted		
9	Untrusted		
10	Untrusted		
11	Trusted		
12	Trusted		
13	Untrusted		
14	Untrusted		

Then Click **Intermediate Agent** on the top of the screen.

- 3 The **Intermediate Agent** screen appears. Click **VLAN** on the top of the screen.

Intermediate Agent Port **VLAN** PPPoE

Active

access-node-identifier MGS3520

circuit-id

Active

hostname

identifier-string

option spv ▾

delimiter / ▾

Apply Cancel

- 4 Enter 1 for both **Start VID** and **End VID**. Click **Apply**.

VLAN Intermediate Agent

Show VLAN Start VID 1 End VID 1

Apply

VID	Enabled	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	No ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

- 5 Then select **Yes** to enable PPPoE IA in VLAN 1 and also select **Circuit-id** and **Remote-id** to allow the Switch to add these two strings to frames tagged with VLAN 1 and pass to the PPPoE server. Click **Apply**.

VLAN Intermediate Agent

Show VLAN Start VID End VID

Apply

VID	Enabled	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	No ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Yes ▾	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

The settings are completed now. If you miss some settings above, subscriber **C** could not successfully receive an IP address assigned by the PPPoE Server. If this happens, make sure you follow the steps exactly in this tutorial.

6.4 How to Use Error Disable and Recovery on the Switch

This tutorial shows you how to shut down a port when:

- there is a loop occurred

or

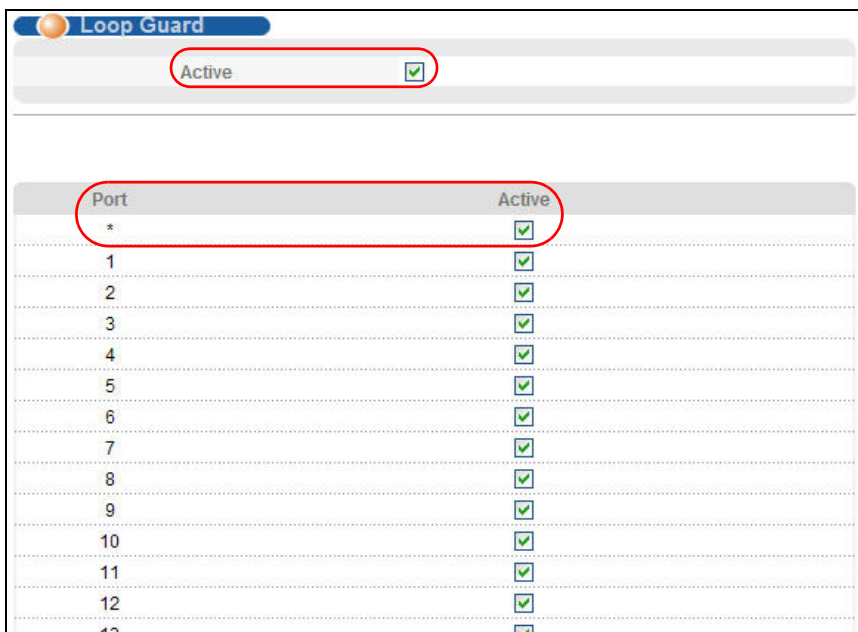
- too many ARP requests (over 100 packets per second) received on a port

You also want the Switch to wait for a period of time (10 minutes) before resuming the port automatically, after the problem(s) are gone. Loop guard and Errdisable features are helpful for this demand.

Note: Refer to [Section 28.2 on page 263](#) and [Section 33.3 on page 284](#) for more information about Loop Guard and Errdisable.

To configure the settings:

- 1 First, click **Advanced Application > Loop Guard**. Select the **Active** option in the first section to enable loop guard on the Switch. Then select the **Active** option of the first entry (port *) to enable loop guard for all ports. Click **Apply**.



- 2 Click **Advanced Application > Errdisable > CPU Protection**, select **ARP** as the reason, enter 100 as the rate limit (packets per second) for the first entry (port *) to apply the setting to all ports. Then click **Apply**.

CPU protection Errdisable

Reason: ARP

Port	Rate Limit (pkt/s)
*	100
1	100
2	100
3	100
4	100
5	100
6	100
7	100
8	100
9	100
10	100
11	100
12	100
13	100

- 3 Click **Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Detect**, select **Active** for cause **ARP** and **inactive-port** as the mode. Then click **Apply**.

Errdisable Detect Errdisable

Cause	Active	Mode
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port
ARP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port
BPDU	<input type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port
IGMP	<input type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port

Apply Cancel

- 4 Click **Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Recovery**, select **Active** and **Timer Status** for **loopguard** and **ARP** entries. Also enter 180 (180 seconds = 3 minutes) in the **Interval** field for both entries. Then click **Apply**.

Errdisable Recovery Errdisable

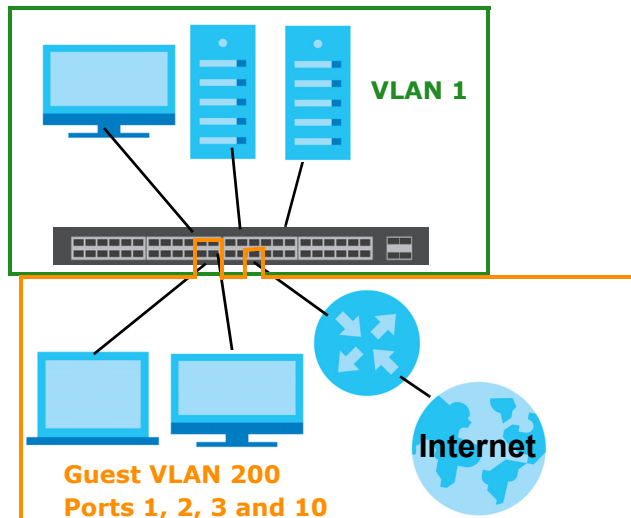
Active

Reason	Timer Status	Interval
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	
loopguard	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	180
ARP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	180
BPDU	<input type="checkbox"/>	300
IGMP	<input type="checkbox"/>	300
stormcontrol	<input type="checkbox"/>	300
portsecurity	<input type="checkbox"/>	300

Apply Cancel

6.5 How to Set Up a Guest VLAN

All ports on the Switch are in VLAN 1 by default. Say you enable IEEE 802.1x authentication on ports 1 to 8. Clients that connect to these ports should provide the correct user name and password in order to access the ports. You want to assign clients that connect to ports 1, 2 or 3 to a guest VLAN (200 for example) before they can authenticate with the authentication server. In this guest VLAN, clients can surf the Internet through the default gateway attached to port 10, but are not allowed to access other network resources, such as the mail server or local data base.



6.5.1 Creating a Guest VLAN

Follow the steps below to configure port 1, 2, 3 and 10 as a member of VLAN 200.

- 1 Access the web configurator through the Switch's port which is not in VLAN 200.
- 2 Go to **Basic Setting > Switch Setup** and set the VLAN type to **802.1Q**. Click **Apply** to save the settings to the run-time memory.

Switch Setup			
VLAN Type		<input checked="" type="radio"/> 802.1Q <input type="radio"/> Port Based	
MAC Address Learning	Aging Time	300	seconds
ARP Aging Time	Aging Time	300	seconds
GARP Timer	Join Timer	200	milliseconds
	Leave Timer	600	milliseconds
	Leave All Timer	10000	milliseconds
Priority Queue Assignment	Priority	Queue	
	Level7	7 ▼	
	Level6	6 ▼	
	Level5	5 ▼	
	Level4	4 ▼	
	Level3	3 ▼	
	Level2	1 ▼	
	Level1	0 ▼	
Level0	2 ▼		
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>			

- 3 Click **Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN**.
- 4 In the **Static VLAN** screen, select **ACTIVE**, enter a descriptive name (VLAN 200 for example) in the **Name** field and enter 200 in the **VLAN Group ID** field.
- 5 Select **Fixed** to configure ports 1, 2, 3 and 10 to be permanent members of this VLAN.
- 6 Clear the **TX Tagging** check box to set the Switch to remove VLAN tags before sending frames out of these ports.
- 7 Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

Static VLAN VLAN Status

ACTIVE

Name

VLAN Group ID

Port	Control			Tagging
*	Normal			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
1	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
3	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
9	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
10	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
11	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

- 8 Click the **VLAN Status** link in the **Static VLAN** screen and then the **VLAN Port Setting** link in the **VLAN Status** screen.

VLAN Status VLAN MAC Learning VLAN Port Setting Static VLAN

VLAN Search by VID

The Number of VLAN: 1.

Index	VID	Elapsed Time	Status
1	1	23:30:39	Static

Change Pages

- 9 Enter 200 in the **PVID** field for ports 1, 2, 3 and 10 to add a tag to incoming untagged frames received on these ports so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.
- 10 Click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory.

Port	Ingress Check	PVID	GVRP	Acceptable Frame Type	VLAN Trunking	Isolation
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	200	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	200	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	200	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	200	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 11 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.

6.5.2 Enabling IEEE 802.1x Port Authentication

Follow the steps below to enable port authentication to validate access to ports 1~8 to clients based on a RADIUS server.

- 1 Click **Advanced Application > Port Authentication** and then the **Click Here** link for **802.1x**.

Port Authentication

802.1x [Click here](#)

MAC Authentication [Click here](#)

- 2 Select the first **Active** check box to enable 802.1x authentication on the Switch.
Select the **Active** check boxes for ports 1 to 8 to turn on 802.1x authentication on the selected ports.
Click **Apply**.

802.1x Port Authentication [Guest Vlan](#)

Active

Port	Active	Max-Req	Reauth	Reauth-period secs	Quiet-period secs	Tx-period secs	Supp-Timeout secs
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		On ▼				
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30

Apply Cancel

6.5.3 Enabling Guest VLAN

- 1 Click the **Guest Vlan** link in the **802.1x** screen.
- 2 Select **Active** and enter the guest VLAN ID (200 in this example) on ports 1, 2 and 3. The Switch puts unauthenticated clients in the specified guest VLAN.

Set **Host-mode** to **Multi-Secure** to have the Switch authenticate each client that connects to one of these ports, and specify the maximum number of clients that the Switch will authenticate on each of these port (5 in this example).

Click **Apply**.

Port	Active	Guest Vlan	Host-mode	Multi-Secure Num
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		Multi-Host	
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	200	Multi-Secure	5
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	200	Multi-Secure	5
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	200	Multi-Secure	5
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1

802.1x

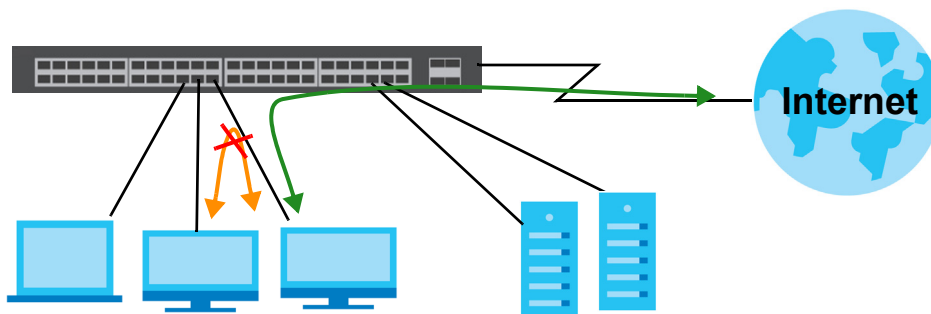
Apply Cancel

- 3 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.

Clients that attach to port 1, 2 or 3 and fail to authenticate with the RADIUS server now should be in VLAN 200 and can access the Internet, but cannot communicate with devices in VLAN 1.

6.6 How to Do Port Isolation in a VLAN

You want to prevent communications between ports in a VLAN but still allow them to access the Internet or network resources through the uplink port in the same VLAN. You use private VLAN to do port isolation in a VLAN instead of assigning each port to a separate VLAN and creating a different IP routing domain for each individual port.



In this example, you put ports 2 to 4 and 25 in VLAN 123 and create a private VLAN rule for VLAN 123 to block traffic between ports 2, 3 and 4.

6.6.1 Creating a VLAN

Follow the steps below to configure port 2, 3, 4 and 25 as a member of VLAN 123.

- 1 Access the web configurator through the Switch's port which is not in VLAN 123.
- 2 Go to **Basic Setting > Switch Setup** and set the VLAN type to **802.1Q**. Click **Apply** to save the settings to the run-time memory.

The screenshot shows the 'Switch Setup' web interface. At the top, there is a 'VLAN Type' section with two radio buttons: '802.1Q' (selected) and 'Port Based'. Below this are several configuration sections:

- MAC Address Learning**: Aging Time is set to 300 seconds.
- ARP Aging Time**: Aging Time is set to 300 seconds.
- GARP Timer**: Join Timer is 200 milliseconds, Leave Timer is 600 milliseconds, and Leave All Timer is 10000 milliseconds.
- Priority Queue Assignment**: A table showing priority levels and their corresponding queue numbers.

Priority	Queue
Level7	7
Level6	6
Level5	5
Level4	4
Level3	3
Level2	1
Level1	0
Level0	2

At the bottom of the interface, there are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons. The 'Apply' button is circled in red in the original image.

- 3 Click **Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN**.
- 4 In the **Static VLAN** screen, select **ACTIVE**, enter a descriptive name (VLAN 123 for example) in the **Name** field and enter 123 in the **VLAN Group ID** field.
- 5 Select **Fixed** to configure ports 2, 3, 4 and 25 to be permanent members of this VLAN.
- 6 Clear the **TX Tagging** check box to set the Switch to remove VLAN tags before sending frames out of these ports.
- 7 Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

Static VLAN VLAN Status

ACTIVE

Name

VLAN Group ID

Port	Control			Tagging
*	Normal			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
3	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
4	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
9	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
24	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
25	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
26	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
27	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
28	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

- 8 Click the **VLAN Status** link in the **Static VLAN** screen and then the **VLAN Port Setting** link in the **VLAN Status** screen.

VLAN Status VLAN MAC Learning VLAN Port Setting Static VLAN

VLAN Search by VID

The Number of VLAN: 3.

Index	VID	Elapsed Time	Status
1	1	5:19:47	Static
2	102	5:19:47	Static
3	123	0:05:28	Static

Change Pages

- 9 Enter 123 in the **PVID** field for ports 2, 3, 4 and 25 to add a tag to incoming untagged frames received on these ports so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.
- 10 Click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory.

VLAN Port Setting Subnet Based Vlan Protocol Based Vlan MAC Based Vlan VLAN Status

GVRP

Port	Ingress Check	PVID	GVRP	Acceptable Frame Type	VLAN Trunking	Isolation
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	123	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	123	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	123	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
25	<input type="checkbox"/>	123	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 11 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.

6.6.2 Creating a Private VLAN Rule

Follow the steps below to configure private VLAN for VLAN 123.

- 1 Click **Advanced Application > Private VLAN**.

- 2 In the **Private VLAN** screen, select **Active**.

Enter a descriptive name (PrivateVLAN123 for example) in the **Name** field and enter 123 in the **VLAN ID** field.

Click **Add**.

Private VLAN

Active

Name PrivateVLAN123

VLAN ID 123

Add Cancel Clear

Index	Active	Name	VLAN	Delete
-------	--------	------	------	--------

Delete Cancel

- 3 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.

Ports 2, 3 and 4 in this VLAN will be added to the isolated port list automatically and cannot send traffic to each other.

From port 2, 3, or 4, you should be able to access the device that attaches to port 25, such as a server or default gateway.

PART II

Technical Reference

CHAPTER 7

System Status and Port Statistics

This chapter describes the system status (web configurator home page) and port details screens.

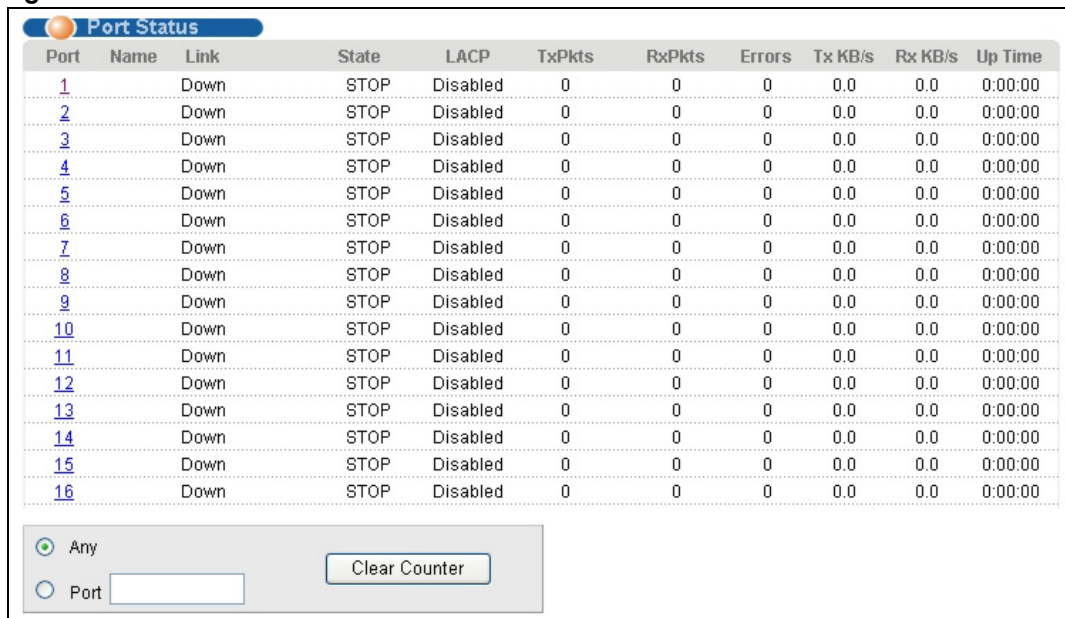
7.1 Overview

The home screen of the web configurator displays a port statistical summary with links to each port showing statistical details.

7.2 Port Status Summary

To view the port statistics, click **Status** in all web configurator screens to display the **Status** screen as shown next.

Figure 30 Status



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Port Status" with a table of port statistics. The table has 11 columns: Port, Name, Link, State, LACP, TxPkts, RxPkts, Errors, Tx KB/s, Rx KB/s, and Up Time. All 16 ports listed are in a "Down" state with "STOP" status and "Disabled" LACP. Below the table are radio buttons for "Any" (selected) and "Port" (with an empty input field), and a "Clear Counter" button.

Port	Name	Link	State	LACP	TxPkts	RxPkts	Errors	Tx KB/s	Rx KB/s	Up Time
1		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
2		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
3		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
4		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
5		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
6		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
7		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
8		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
9		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
10		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
11		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
12		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
13		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
14		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
15		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
16		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00

Any
 Port

Clear Counter

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 8 Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This identifies the Ethernet port. Click a port number to display the Port Details screen (refer to Figure 31 on page 80).
Name	This is the name you assigned to this port in the Basic Setting > Port Setup screen.
Link	This field displays the speed (either 10M for 10Mbps, 100M for 100Mbps, 1000M for 1000Mbps, or 10G for 10Gbps) and the duplex (F for full duplex or H for half). It also shows the cable type (Copper or Fiber) for the combo ports. This field displays Down if the port is not connected to any device.
State	If STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) is enabled, this field displays the STP state of the port (see Section 13.1 on page 132 for more information). If STP is disabled, this field displays FORWARDING if the link is up, otherwise, it displays STOP .
LACP	This field displays whether LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) has been enabled on the port.
TxPkts	This field shows the number of transmitted frames on this port.
RxPkts	This field shows the number of received frames on this port.
Errors	This field shows the number of received errors on this port.
Tx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second transmitted on this port.
Rx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second received on this port.
Up Time	This field shows the total amount of time in hours, minutes and seconds the port has been up.
Clear Counter	Enter a port number and then click Clear Counter to erase the recorded statistical information for that port, or select Any to clear statistics for all ports.

7.2.1 Status: Port Details

Click a number in the **Port** column in the **Status** screen to display individual port statistics. Use this screen to check status and detailed performance data about an individual port on the Switch.

Figure 31 Status > Port Details

Port Details		Port Status
Port Info	Port NO.	1
	Name	
	Link	Down
	State	STOP
	LACP	Disabled
	TxPkts	0
	RxPkts	0
	Errors	0
	Tx KBs/s	0.0
	Rx KBs/s	0.0
	Up Time	0:00:00
TX Packet	Unicast	0
	Multicast	0
	Broadcast	0
	Pause	0
RX Packet	Unicast	0
	Multicast	0
	Broadcast	0
	Pause	0
TX Collision	Single	0
	Multiple	0
	Excessive	0
	Late	0
Error Packet	RX CRC	0
	Length	0
	Runt	0
Distribution	64	0
	65 to 127	0
	128 to 255	0
	256 to 511	0
	512 to 1023	0
	1024 to 1518	0
	Giant	0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 9 Status: Port Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port Info	
Port NO.	This field displays the port number you are viewing.
Name	This field displays the name of the port.
Link	This field displays the speed (either 10M for 10Mbps, 100M for 100Mbps, 1000M for 1000Mbps, or 10G for 10Gbps) and the duplex (F for full duplex or H for half duplex). It also shows the cable type (Copper or Fiber). This field displays Down if the port is not connected to any device.
State	If STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) is enabled, this field displays the STP state of the port (see Section 13.1 on page 132 for more information). If STP is disabled, this field displays FORWARDING if the link is up, otherwise, it displays STOP .
LACP	This field shows if LACP is enabled on this port or not.
TxPkts	This field shows the number of transmitted frames on this port
RxPkts	This field shows the number of received frames on this port
Errors	This field shows the number of received errors on this port.

Table 9 Status: Port Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Tx KB/s	This field shows the number kilobytes per second transmitted on this port.
Rx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second received on this port.
Up Time	This field shows the total amount of time the connection has been up.
Tx Packet The following fields display detailed information about packets transmitted.	
Unicast	This field shows the number of good unicast packets transmitted.
Multicast	This field shows the number of good multicast packets transmitted.
Broadcast	This field shows the number of good broadcast packets transmitted.
Pause	This field shows the number of 802.3x Pause packets transmitted.
Rx Packet The following fields display detailed information about packets received.	
Unicast	This field shows the number of good unicast packets received.
Multicast	This field shows the number of good multicast packets received.
Broadcast	This field shows the number of good broadcast packets received.
Pause	This field shows the number of 802.3x Pause packets received.
TX Collision The following fields display information on collisions while transmitting.	
Single	This is a count of successfully transmitted packets for which transmission is inhibited by exactly one collision.
Multiple	This is a count of successfully transmitted packets for which transmission was inhibited by more than one collision.
Excessive	This is a count of packets for which transmission failed due to excessive collisions. Excessive collision is defined as the number of maximum collisions before the retransmission count is reset.
Late	This is the number of times a late collision is detected, that is, after 512 bits of the packets have already been transmitted.
Error Packet	
RX CRC	This field shows the number of packets received with CRC (Cyclic Redundant Check) error(s).
Length	This field shows the number of packets received with a length that was out of range.
Runt	This field shows the number of packets received that were too short (shorter than 64 octets), including the ones with CRC errors.
Distribution	
64	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were 64 octets in length.
65-127	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 65 and 127 octets in length.
128-255	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 128 and 255 octets in length.
256-511	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 256 and 511 octets in length.
512-1023	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 512 and 1023 octets in length.

Table 9 Status: Port Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
1024-1518	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 1024 and 1518 octets in length.
Giant	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 1519 octets and the maximum frame size. The maximum frame size varies depending on your switch model.

CHAPTER 8

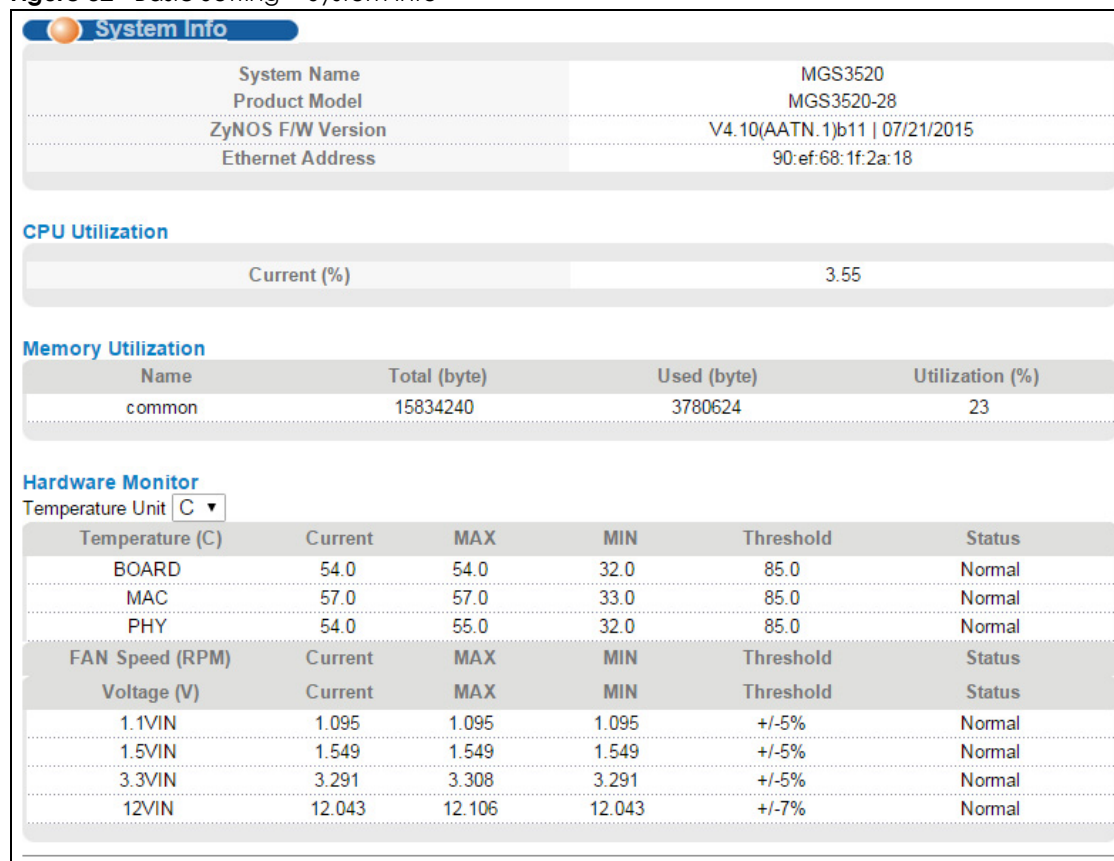
Basic Setting

This chapter describes how to configure the **Basic Setting** screens.

8.1 System Information

In the navigation panel, click **Basic Setting > System Info** to display the screen as shown. You can check the firmware version number and monitor the Switch temperature, fan speeds and voltage in this screen.

Figure 32 Basic Setting > System Info



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 10 Basic Setting > System Info

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the Switch for identification purposes.
Product Model	This field displays the model number of the Switch.

Table 10 Basic Setting > System Info (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ZyNOS F/W Version	This field displays the version number of the Switch 's current firmware including the date created.
Ethernet Address	This field refers to the Ethernet MAC (Media Access Control) address of the Switch.
CPU Utilization	CPU utilization quantifies how busy the system is. Current (%) displays the current percentage of CPU utilization.
Memory Utilization	Memory utilization shows how much DRAM memory is available and in use. It also displays the current percentage of memory utilization.
Name	This field displays the name of memory pool.
Total (byte)	This field displays the total number of bytes in this memory pool.
Used (byte)	This field displays the number of bytes being used in this memory pool.
Utilization (%)	This field displays the percentage (%) of memory being used in this memory pool.
Hardware Monitor	
Temperature Unit	The Switch has temperature sensors that are capable of detecting and reporting if the temperature rises above the threshold. You may choose the temperature unit (Centigrade or Fahrenheit) in this field.
Temperature (C)	BOARD, MAC and PHY refer to the location of the temperature sensors on the Switch printed circuit board.
Current	This shows the current temperature at this sensor.
MAX	This field displays the maximum temperature measured at this sensor.
MIN	This field displays the minimum temperature measured at this sensor.
Threshold	This field displays the upper temperature limit at this sensor.
Status	This field displays Normal for temperatures below the threshold and Error for those above.
Fan Speed (RPM)	A properly functioning fan is an essential component (along with a sufficiently ventilated, cool operating environment) in order for the device to stay within the temperature threshold. Each fan has a sensor that is capable of detecting and reporting if the fan speed falls below the threshold shown.
Current	This field displays this fan's current speed in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM).
MAX	This field displays this fan's maximum speed measured in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM).
MIN	This field displays this fan's minimum speed measured in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM). "<41" is displayed for speeds too small to measure (under 2000 RPM).
Threshold	This field displays the minimum speed at which a normal fan should work.
Status	Normal indicates that this fan is functioning above the minimum speed. Error indicates that this fan is functioning below the minimum speed.
Voltage(V)	The power supply for each voltage has a sensor that is capable of detecting and reporting if the voltage falls out of the tolerance range.
Current	This is the current voltage reading.
MAX	This field displays the maximum voltage measured at this point.
MIN	This field displays the minimum voltage measured at this point.
Threshold	This field displays the percentage tolerance of the voltage with which the Switch still works.
Status	Normal indicates that the voltage is within an acceptable operating range at this point; otherwise Error is displayed.

8.2 General Setup

Use this screen to configure general settings such as the system name and time. Click **Basic Setting > General Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 33 Basic Setting > General Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 11 Basic Setting > General Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	Choose a descriptive name for identification purposes. This name consists of up to 64 printable characters; spaces are allowed.
Location	Enter the geographic location of your Switch. You can use up to 32 printable ASCII characters; spaces are allowed.
Contact Person's Name	Enter the name of the person in charge of this Switch. You can use up to 32 printable ASCII characters; spaces are allowed.
Use Time Server when Bootup	<p>Enter the time service protocol that your timeserver uses. Not all time servers support all protocols, so you may have to use trial and error to find a protocol that works. The main differences between them are the time format.</p> <p>When you select the Daytime (RFC 867) format, the Switch displays the day, month, year and time with no time zone adjustment. When you use this format it is recommended that you use a Daytime timeserver within your geographical time zone.</p> <p>Time (RFC-868) format displays a 4-byte integer giving the total number of seconds since 1970/1/1 at 0:0:0.</p> <p>NTP (RFC-1305) is similar to Time (RFC-868).</p> <p>None is the default value. Enter the time manually. Each time you turn on the Switch, the time and date will be reset to 1970-1-1 0:0.</p>

Table 11 Basic Setting > General Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Time Server Address	<p>Enter the IP address or domain name of your timeserver. You can enter up to three time server addresses. The Switch tries to synchronize with the first server. If the synchronization fails, then the Switch goes through the rest of the list in order.</p> <p>The Switch attempts to connect to the timeserver for up to 60 seconds. If you specify a timeserver that is unreachable, then this screen will appear locked for 60 seconds. Please wait.</p>
Current Time	This field displays the time you open this menu (or refresh the menu).
New Time (hh:min:ss)	Enter the new time in hour, minute and second format. The new time then appears in the Current Time field after you click Apply .
Current Date	This field displays the date you open this menu.
New Date (yyyy-mm-dd)	Enter the new date in year, month and day format. The new date then appears in the Current Date field after you click Apply .
Time Zone	Select the time difference between UTC (Universal Time Coordinated, formerly known as GMT, Greenwich Mean Time) and your time zone from the drop-down list box.
Daylight Saving Time	<p>Daylight saving is a period from late spring to early fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening.</p> <p>Select this option if you use Daylight Saving Time.</p>
Start Date	<p>Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you selected Daylight Saving Time. The time is displayed in the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the second Sunday of March. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select Second, Sunday, March and 2:00.</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select Last, Sunday, March and the last field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select 2:00 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).</p>
End Date	<p>Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you selected Daylight Saving Time. The time field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the first Sunday of November. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select First, Sunday, November and 2:00.</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select Last, Sunday, October and the last field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select 2:00 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

8.3 Introduction to VLANs

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Devices on a logical network belong to one group. A device can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a device cannot directly talk to or hear from devices that are not in the same group(s); the traffic must first go through a router.

In MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) applications, VLAN is vital in providing isolation and security among the subscribers. When properly configured, VLAN prevents one subscriber from accessing the network resources of another on the same LAN, thus a user will not see the printers and hard disks of another user in the same building.

VLAN also increases network performance by limiting broadcasts to a smaller and more manageable logical broadcast domain. In traditional switched environments, all broadcast packets go to each and every individual port. With VLAN, all broadcasts are confined to a specific broadcast domain.

Note: VLAN is unidirectional; it only governs outgoing traffic.

See [Chapter 9 on page 105](#) for information on port-based and 802.1Q tagged VLANs.

8.4 Switch Setup

Click **Basic Setting** > **Switch Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. The VLAN setup screens change depending on whether you choose **802.1Q** or **Port Based** in the **VLAN Type** field in this screen. Refer to the chapter on VLAN.

Figure 34 Basic Setting > Switch Setup

Switch Setup			
VLAN Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 802.1Q <input type="radio"/> Port Based		
MAC Address Learning	Aging Time	300	seconds
ARP Aging Time	Aging Time	300	seconds
GARP Timer	Join Timer	200	milliseconds
	Leave Timer	600	milliseconds
	Leave All Timer	10000	milliseconds
Priority Queue Assignment	Priority	Queue	
	Level7	7	▼
	Level6	6	▼
	Level5	5	▼
	Level4	4	▼
	Level3	3	▼
	Level2	1	▼
	Level1	0	▼
Level0	2	▼	
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>			

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 12 Basic Setting > Switch Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Type	Choose 802.1Q or Port Based . The VLAN Setup screen changes depending on whether you choose 802.1Q VLAN type or Port Based VLAN type in this screen. See Chapter 9 on page 105 for more information.
MAC Address Learning	MAC address learning reduces outgoing traffic broadcasts. For MAC address learning to occur on a port, the port must be active.
Aging Time	Enter a time from 10 to 3000 seconds. This is how long all dynamically learned MAC addresses remain in the MAC address table before they age out (and must be relearned).
ARP Aging Time	
Aging Time	Enter a time from 60 to 1000000 seconds. This is how long dynamically learned ARP entries remain in the ARP table before they age out (and must be relearned). The setting here applies to ARP entries which are newly added in the ARP table after you click Apply .
GARP Timer: Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a Join message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a Leave message. A Leave All message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values. See the chapter on VLAN setup for more background information.	
Join Timer	Join Timer sets the duration of the Join Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a Join Period timer. The allowed Join Time range is between 100 and 65535 milliseconds; the default is 200 milliseconds. See the chapter on VLAN setup for more background information.
Leave Timer	Leave Time sets the duration of the Leave Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single Leave Period timer. Leave Time must be two times larger than Join Timer ; the default is 600 milliseconds.
Leave All Timer	Leave All Timer sets the duration of the Leave All Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single Leave All Period timer. Leave All Timer must be larger than Leave Timer.
Priority Queue Assignment	
IEEE 802.1p defines up to eight separate traffic types by inserting a tag into a MAC-layer frame that contains bits to define class of service. Frames without an explicit priority tag are given the default priority of the ingress port. Use the next fields to configure the priority level-to-physical queue mapping.	
The Switch has eight physical queues that you can map to the 8 priority levels. On the Switch, traffic assigned to higher index queues gets through faster while traffic in lower index queues is dropped if the network is congested.	
Priority Level (The following descriptions are based on the traffic types defined in the IEEE 802.1d standard (which incorporates the 802.1p).	
Level 7	Typically used for network control traffic such as router configuration messages.
Level 6	Typically used for voice traffic that is especially sensitive to jitter (jitter is the variations in delay).
Level 5	Typically used for video that consumes high bandwidth and is sensitive to jitter.
Level 4	Typically used for controlled load, latency-sensitive traffic such as SNA (Systems Network Architecture) transactions.
Level 3	Typically used for "excellent effort" or better than best effort and would include important business traffic that can tolerate some delay.
Level 2	This is for "spare bandwidth".
Level 1	This is typically used for non-critical "background" traffic such as bulk transfers that are allowed but that should not affect other applications and users.
Level 0	Typically used for best-effort traffic.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields.

8.5 IP Setup

Use the **IP Setup** screen to configure the Switch IP address, default gateway device, the default domain name server and the management VLAN ID. The default gateway specifies the IP address of the default gateway (next hop) for outgoing traffic.

8.5.1 Management IP Addresses

The Switch needs an IP address for it to be managed over the network. The factory default in-band IP address is 192.168.1.1. The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. The factory default subnet mask is 255.255.255.0.

You can configure up to 64 IP addresses which are used to access and manage the Switch from the ports belonging to the pre-defined VLAN(s).

Note: You must configure a VLAN first.

Figure 35 Basic Setting > IP Setup

The screenshot shows the 'IP Setup' configuration page. At the top, there is a 'Domain Name Server' field with the value '0.0.0.0'. Below this, the 'Default Management IP Address' section has two radio buttons: 'DHCP Client' (unselected) and 'Static IP Address' (selected). Under 'Static IP Address', there are three input fields: 'IP Address' (192.168.1.1), 'IP Subnet Mask' (255.255.255.0), and 'Default Gateway' (0.0.0.0). A 'VID' field contains the value '1'. At the bottom of this section are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Below the 'Default Management IP Address' section is the 'Management IP Addresses' section. It contains a table with four rows of input fields: 'IP Address' (0.0.0.0), 'IP Subnet Mask' (0.0.0.0), 'VID' (empty), and 'Default Gateway' (0.0.0.0). Below the table are 'Add' and 'Cancel' buttons.

At the bottom of the page is a table header with columns: 'Index', 'IP Address', 'IP Subnet Mask', 'VID', 'Default Gateway', and 'Delete'. Below the header are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 13 Basic Setting > IP Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Domain Name Server	DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. Enter a domain name server IP address in order to be able to use a domain name instead of an IP address.
Default Management IP Address	
DHCP Client	Select this option if you have a DHCP server that can assign the Switch an IP address, subnet mask, a default gateway IP address and a domain name server IP address automatically.
Static IP Address	Select this option if you don't have a DHCP server or if you wish to assign static IP address information to the Switch. You need to fill in the following fields when you select this option.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of your Switch in dotted decimal notation for example 192.168.1.1.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask of your Switch in dotted decimal notation for example 255.255.255.0.
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation, for example 192.168.1.254.
VID	Enter the VLAN identification number associated with the Switch IP address. This is the VLAN ID of the CPU and is used for management only. The default is "1". All ports, by default, are fixed members of this "management VLAN" in order to manage the device from any port. If a port is not a member of this VLAN, then users on that port cannot access the device. To access the Switch make sure the port that you are connected to is a member of Management VLAN.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring the fields again.
Management IP Addresses	
You can create up to 64 IP addresses, which are used to access and manage the Switch from the ports belonging to the pre-defined VLAN(s). You must configure a VLAN first.	
IP Address	Enter the IP address for managing the Switch by the members of the VLAN specified in the VID field below.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask in dotted decimal notation.
VID	Type the VLAN group identification number.
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation.
Add	Click Add to insert the entry to the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to edit the rule.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address.
IP Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.
Default Gateway	This field displays the IP address of the default gateway.
Delete	Check the management IP addresses that you want to remove in the Delete column, then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the selected check boxes in the Delete column.

8.6 Port Setup

Use this screen to configure Switch port settings. Click **Basic Setting** > **Port Setup** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen.

Figure 36 Basic Setting > Port Setup

Port	Active	Name	Type	Speed / Duplex	Flow Control	802.1p Priority
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		-	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
28	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
27	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
28	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0

Apply Cancel

Figure 37 Basic Setting > Port Setup (MGS3530-28)

Port	Active	Name	Type	Speed / Duplex	Flow Control	802.1p Priority
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		-	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
9	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
12	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
13	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
14	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
15	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
17	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
18	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
19	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
20	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
21	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
22	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
23	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
24	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
25	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		1000M/10G	10G / Full Duplex	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
26	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		1000M/10G	10G / Full Duplex	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
27	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		1000M/10G	10G / Full Duplex	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
28	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		1000M/10G	10G / Full Duplex	<input type="checkbox"/>	0

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 14 Basic Setting > Port Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This is the port index number.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Active	Select this check box to enable a port. The factory default for all ports is enabled. A port must be enabled for data transmission to occur.
Name	<p>Enter a descriptive name that identifies this port. You can enter up to 64 alpha-numerical characters.</p> <p>Note: Due to space limitation, the port name may be truncated in some web configurator screens.</p>
Type	This field displays 10/100M for Fast Ethernet connections and 10/100/1000M for Gigabit connections.
Speed/Duplex	<p>Select the speed and the duplex mode of the Ethernet connection on this port. Choices are Auto, 10M/Half Duplex, 10M/Full Duplex, 100M/Half Duplex, 100M/Full Duplex, 1000M / Full Duplex (Gigabit connections only), and 10G / Full Duplex (10 Gigabit connections only).</p> <p>Selecting Auto (auto-negotiation) allows one port to negotiate with a peer port automatically to obtain the connection speed and duplex mode that both ends support. When auto-negotiation is turned on, a port on the Switch negotiates with the peer automatically to determine the connection speed and duplex mode. If the peer port does not support auto-negotiation or turns off this feature, the Switch determines the connection speed by detecting the signal on the cable and using half duplex mode. When the Switch's auto-negotiation is turned off, a port uses the pre-configured speed and duplex mode when making a connection, thus requiring you to make sure that the settings of the peer port are the same in order to connect.</p>
Flow Control	<p>A concentration of traffic on a port decreases port bandwidth and overflows buffer memory causing packet discards and frame losses. Flow Control is used to regulate transmission of signals to match the bandwidth of the receiving port.</p> <p>The Switch uses IEEE802.3x flow control in full duplex mode and backpressure flow control in half duplex mode.</p> <p>IEEE802.3x flow control is used in full duplex mode to send a pause signal to the sending port, causing it to temporarily stop sending signals when the receiving port memory buffers fill.</p> <p>Back Pressure flow control is typically used in half duplex mode to send a "collision" signal to the sending port (mimicking a state of packet collision) causing the sending port to temporarily stop sending signals and resend later. Select Flow Control to enable it.</p>
802.1p Priority	This priority value is added to incoming frames without a (802.1p) priority queue tag. See Priority Queue Assignment in Table 12 on page 88 for more information.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

8.7 Interface Setup

An IPv6 address is configured on a per-interface basis. The interface can be a physical interface (for example, an Ethernet port) or a virtual interface (for example, a VLAN). The Switch supports the VLAN interface type for IPv6 at the time of writing.

Use this screen to set IPv6 interfaces on which you can configure an IPv6 address to access and manage the Switch. Click **Basic Setting > Interface Setup** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen.

Figure 38 Basic Setting > Interface Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 15 Basic Setting > Interface Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface Type	Select the type of IPv6 interface for which you want to configure. The Switch supports the VLAN interface type for IPv6 at the time of writing.
Interface ID	Specify a unique identification number (from 1 to 4094) for the interface. Note: To have IPv6 function properly, you should configure a static VLAN with the same ID number in the Advanced Setup > VLAN screens.
Add	Click this to create a new entry. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Index	This field displays the index number of an entry.
Interface Type	This field displays the type of interface.
Interface ID	This field displays the identification number of the interface.
Interface	This field displays the interface's descriptive name which is generated automatically by the Switch. The name is from a combination of the interface type and ID number.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

8.8 IPv6

Use this screen to view the IPv6 interface status and configure Switch's management IPv6 addresses. See [Appendix B on page 417](#) for more information about IPv6.

Click **Basic Setting** > **IPv6** in the navigation panel to display the IPv6 status screen as shown next.

Figure 39 Basic Setting > IPv6

Index	Interface	Active
1	VLAN1	No
2	VLAN123	Yes
3	VLAN463	No
4	VLAN1111	No

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 16 Basic Setting > IPv6 Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of an IPv6 interface. Click on an index number to view more interface details.
Interface	This is the name of the IPv6 interface you created.
Active	This field displays whether the IPv6 interface is activated or not.

8.8.1 IPv6 Interface Status

Use this screen to view a specific IPv6 interface status and detailed information. Click an interface index number in the **Basic Setting** > **IPv6** screen. The following screen opens.

Figure 40 Basic Setting > IPv6 Interface Status

IPv6 Interface Status		IPv6 Status
Interface: VLAN123		
IPv6 Active	enable	
MTU Size	1500	
ICMPv6 Rate Limit Bucket Size	100	
ICMPv6 Rate Limit Error Interval	1000	
Stateless Address Autoconfig	enable	
Link Local Address	fe80::219:cbff:fe37:49/64 [preferred]	
Global Unicast Address(es)	ff02::2	
Joined Group Address(es)	ff01::1	
	ff02::1	
	ff02::1:ff37:49	
ND DAD Active	enable	
Number of DAD Attempts	1	
NS-Interval (millisecond)	1000	
ND Reachable Time (millisecond)	30000	
DHCPv6 Client Active		
		Yes
Identity Association	IA Type	IA-NA
	IAID	1231
	T1	0
	T2	0
	State	
	SID	
	Address	
	Preferred Lifetime	0
	Valid Lifetime	0
	DNS	
Domain List		
Restart DHCPv6 Client		Click Here

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 17 Basic Setting > IPv6 Interface Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv6 Active	This field displays whether the IPv6 interface is activated or not.
MTU Size	This field displays the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) size for IPv6 packets on this interface.
ICMPv6 Rate Limit Bucket Size	This field displays the maximum number of ICMPv6 error messages which are allowed to transmit in a given time interval. If the bucket is full, subsequent error messages are suppressed.
ICMPv6 Rate Limit Error Interval	This field displays the time period (in milliseconds) during which ICMPv6 error messages of up to the bucket size can be transmitted. 0 means no limit.
Stateless Address Autoconfig	This field displays whether the Switch's interface can automatically generate a link-local address via stateless autoconfiguration.

Table 17 Basic Setting > IPv6 Interface Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link Local Address	This field displays the Switch's link-local IP address and prefix generated by the interface. It also shows whether the IP address is preferred, which means it is a valid address and can be used as a sender or receiver address.
Global Unicast Address(es)	This field displays the Switch's global unicast address to identify this interface.
Joined Group Address(es)	This field displays the IPv6 multicast addresses of groups the Switch's interface joins.
ND DAD Active	This field displays whether Neighbor Discovery (ND) Duplicate Address Detection (DAD) is enabled on the interface.
Number of DAD Attempts	This field displays the number of consecutive neighbor solicitations the Switch sends for this interface.
NS-Interval (millisecond)	This field displays the time interval (in milliseconds) at which neighbor solicitations are re-sent for this interface.
ND Reachable Time (millisecond)	This field displays how long (in milliseconds) a neighbor is considered reachable for this interface.
DHCPv6 Client Active	This field displays whether the Switch acts as a DHCPv6 client to get an IPv6 address from a DHCPv6 server.
Identity Association	An Identity Association (IA) is a collection of addresses assigned to a DHCP client, through which the server and client can manage a set of related IP addresses. Each IA must be associated with exactly one interface.
IA Type	The IA type is the type of address in the IA. Each IA holds one type of address. IA_NA means an identity association for non-temporary addresses and IA_TA is an identity association for temporary addresses.
IAID	Each IA consists of a unique IAID and associated IP information.
T1	This field displays the DHCPv6 T1 timer. After T1, the Switch sends the DHCPv6 server a Renew message. An IA_NA option contains the T1 and T2 fields, but an IA_TA option does not. The DHCPv6 server uses T1 and T2 to control the time at which the client contacts with the server to extend the lifetimes on any addresses in the IA_NA before the lifetimes expire.
T2	This field displays the DHCPv6 T2 timer. If the time T2 is reached and the server does not respond, the Switch sends a Rebind message to any available server.
State	This field displays the state of the TA. It shows <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Active when the Switch obtains addresses from a DHCPv6 server and the TA is created. • Renew when the TA's address lifetime expires and the Switch sends out a Renew message. • Rebind when the Switch doesn't receive a response from the original DHCPv6 server and sends out a Rebind message to another DHCPv6 server.
SID	This field displays the DHCPv6 server's unique ID.
Address	This field displays the Switch's global address which is assigned by the DHCPv6 server.
Preferred Lifetime	This field displays how long (in seconds) that the global address remains preferred.
Valid Lifetime	This field displays how long (in seconds) that the global address is valid.
DNS	This field displays the DNS server address assigned by the DHCPv6 server.
Domain List	This field displays the address record when the Switch queries the DNS server to resolve domain names.
Restart DHCPv6 Client	Click Click Here to send a new DHCP request to the DHCPv6 server and update the IPv6 address and DNS information for this interface.

8.8.2 IPv6 Configuration

Use this screen to configure IPv6 settings on the Switch. Click the **IPv6 Configuration** link in the **Basic Setting > IPv6** screen. The following screen opens.

Figure 41 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 18 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv6 Global Setup	Click the link to go to a screen where you can configure the global IPv6 settings on the Switch.
IPv6 Interface Setup	Click the link to go to a screen where you can enable an IPv6 interface on the Switch.
IPv6 Addressing	
IPv6 Link-Local Address Setup	Click the link to go to a screen where you can configure the IPv6 link-local address for an interface.
IPv6 Global Address Setup	Click the link to go to a screen where you can configure the IPv6 global address for an interface.
IPv6 Neighbor Discovery	
IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Setup	Click the link to go to a screen where you can configure the IPv6 neighbor discovery settings.
IPv6 Neighbor Setup	Click the link to go to a screen where you can create a static IPv6 neighbor entry in the Switch's IPv6 neighbor table.
DHCPv6 Client Setup	Click the link to go to a screen where you can configure the Switch DHCP settings.

8.8.3 IPv6 Global Setup

Use this screen to configure the global IPv6 settings. Click the link next to **IPv6 Global Setup** in the **IPv6 Configuration** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 42 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Global Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 19 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Global Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv6 Hop Limit	Specify the maximum number of hops (from 1 to 255) in router advertisements. This is the maximum number of hops on which an IPv6 packet is allowed to transmit before it is discarded by an IPv6 router, which is similar to the TTL field in IPv4.
ICMPv6 Rate Limit Bucket Size	Specify the maximum number of ICMPv6 error messages (from 1 to 200) which are allowed to transmit in a given time interval. If the bucket is full, subsequent error messages are suppressed.
ICMPv6 Rate Limit Error Interval	Specify the time period (from 0 to 2147483647 milliseconds) during which ICMPv6 error messages of up to the bucket size can be transmitted. 0 means no limit.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.

8.8.4 IPv6 Interface Setup

Use this screen to turn on or off an IPv6 interface and enable stateless autoconfiguration on it. Click the link next to **IPv6 Interface Setup** in the **IPv6 Configuration** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 43 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Interface Setup

Index	Interface	Active	Address Autoconfig
1	VLAN123	No	No
2	VLAN2222	No	No

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 20 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Interface Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	Select the IPv6 interface you want to configure.
Active	Select this option to enable the interface.
Address Autoconfig	Select this option to allow the interface to automatically generate a link-local address via stateless autoconfiguration.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the interface index number. Click on an index number to change the settings.
Interface	This is the name of the IPv6 interface you created.
Active	This field displays whether the IPv6 interface is activated or not.
Address Autoconfig	This field displays whether stateless autoconfiguration is enabled on the interface.

8.8.5 IPv6 Link-Local Address Setup

A link-local address uniquely identifies a device on the local network (the LAN). It is similar to a "private IP address" in IPv4. You can have the same link-local address on multiple interfaces on a device. A link-local unicast address has a predefined prefix of fe80::/10.

Use this screen to configure the interface's link-local address and default gateway. Click the link next to **IPv6 Link-Local Address Setup** in the **IPv6 Configuration** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 44 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Link-Local Address Setup

Index	Interface	IPv6 Link-Local Address	IPv6 Default Gateway
1	VLAN123		
2	VLAN2222		

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 21 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Link-Local Address Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	Select the IPv6 interface you want to configure.
Link-Local Address	Manually configure a static IPv6 link-local address for the interface.
Default Gateway	Set the default gateway IPv6 address for the interface. When an interface cannot find a routing information for a frame's destination, it forwards the packet to the default gateway.

Table 21 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Link-Local Address Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the interface index number. Click on an index number to change the settings.
Interface	This is the name of the IPv6 interface you created.
IPv6 Link-Local Address	This is the static IPv6 link-local address for the interface.
IPv6 Default Gateway	This is the default gateway IPv6 address for the interface.

8.8.6 IPv6 Global Address Setup

Use this screen to configure the interface's IPv6 global address. Click the link next to **IPv6 Global Address Setup** in the **IPv6 Configuration** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 45 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Global Address Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 22 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Global Address Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	Select the IPv6 interface you want to configure.
IPv6 Global Address	Manually configure a static IPv6 global address for the interface.
Prefix Length	Specify an IPv6 prefix length that specifies how many most significant bits (start from the left) in the address compose the network address.
EUI-64	Select this option to have the interface ID be generated automatically using the EUI-64 format.
Add	Click Add to create a new entry or update an existing one.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the interface index number. Click on an index number to change the settings.
Interface	This is the name of the IPv6 interface you created.
IPv6 Global Address/Prefix Length	This field displays the IPv6 global address and prefix length for the interface.

Table 22 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Global Address Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
EUI-64	This shows whether the interface ID of the global address is generated using the EUI-64 format.
Delete	Check the entries that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click Delete to remove the selected entries from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

8.8.7 IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Setup

Use this screen to configure neighbor discovery settings for each interface. Click the link next to **IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Setup** in the **IPv6 Configuration** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 46 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Setup

Index	Interface	DAD Attempts	NS Interval	Reachable Time
1	VLAN123	1	1000	30000
2	VLAN2222	1	1000	30000

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 23 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	Select the IPv6 interface you want to configure.
DAD Attempts	The Switch uses Duplicate Address Detection (DAD) with neighbor solicitation and advertisement messages to check whether an IPv6 address is already in use before assigning it to an interface, such as the link-local address it creates through stateless address autoconfiguration. Specify the number of consecutive neighbor solicitations (from 0 to 600) the Switch sends for this interface. Enter 0 to turn off DAD.
NS Interval	Specify the time interval (from 1000 to 3600000 milliseconds) at which neighbor solicitations are re-sent for this interface.
Reachable Time	Specify how long (from 1000 to 3600000 milliseconds) a neighbor is considered reachable for this interface.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the interface index number. Click on an index number to change the settings.
Interface	This is the name of the IPv6 interface you created.

Table 23 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DAD Attempts	This field displays the number of consecutive neighbor solicitations the Switch sends for this interface.
NS Interval	This field displays the time interval (in milliseconds) at which neighbor solicitations are re-sent for this interface.
Reachable Time	This field displays how long (in milliseconds) a neighbor is considered reachable for this interface.

8.8.8 IPv6 Neighbor Setup

Use this screen to create a static IPv6 neighbor entry in the Switch's IPv6 neighbor table to store the neighbor information permanently. Click the link next to **IPv6 Neighbor Setup** in the **IPv6 Configuration** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 47 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Neighbor Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 24 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Neighbor Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface Type	Select the type of IPv6 interface for which you want to configure. The Switch supports the VLAN interface type for IPv6 at the time of writing.
Interface ID	Specify a unique identification number (from 1 to 4094) for the interface. Note: A static IPv6 neighbor entry displays in the Management > Neighbor Table screen only when the interface ID is also created in the Basic Setup > Interface Setup screen. Note: To have IPv6 function properly, you should configure a static VLAN with the same ID number in the Advanced Setup > VLAN screens.
Neighbor Address	Specify the IPv6 address of the neighboring device which can be reached through the interface.
MAC	Specify the MAC address of the neighboring device which can be reached through the interface.

Table 24 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Neighbor Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the interface index number. Click on an index number to change the settings.
Interface	This is the name of the IPv6 interface you created.
Neighbor Address	This field displays the IPv6 address of the neighboring device which can be reached through the interface
MAC	This field displays the MAC address of the neighboring device which can be reached through the interface.
Delete	Check the entries that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click Delete to remove the selected entries from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

8.8.9 DHCPv6 Client Setup

Use this screen to configure the Switch's DHCP settings when it is acting as a DHCPv6 client. Click the link next to **IPv6 Neighbor Setup** in the **IPv6 Configuration** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 48 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > DHCPv6 Client Setup

Index	Interface	IA-NA	Rapid-Commit	DNS	Domain-List	Information Refresh Minimum
1	VLAN123	No	No	No	No	86400
2	VLAN2222	No	No	No	No	86400

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 25 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > DHCPv6 Client Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	Select the IPv6 interface you want to configure.
IA Type	Select IA-NA to set the Switch to get a non-temporary IP address from the DHCPv6 server for this interface. Optionally, you can also select Rapid-Commit to have the Switch send its DHCPv6 Solicit message with a Rapid Commit option to obtain information from the DHCPv6 server by a rapid two-message exchange. The Switch discards any Reply messages that do not include a Rapid Commit option. The DHCPv6 server should also support the Rapid Commit option to have it work well.

Table 25 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > DHCPv6 Client Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Options	Select DNS to have the Switch obtain DNS server IPv6 addresses and/or select Domain-List to have the Switch obtain a list of domain names from the DHCP server.
Information Refresh Minimum	Specify the time interval (from 600 to 4294967295 seconds) at which the Switch exchanges other configuration information with a DHCPv6 server again.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the interface index number. Click on an index number to change the settings.
Interface	This is the name of the IPv6 interface you created.
IA-NA	This field displays whether the Switch obtains a non-temporary IP address from the DHCPv6 server.
Rapid-Commit	This field displays whether the Switch obtains information from the DHCPv6 server by a rapid two-message exchange.
DNS	This field displays whether the Switch obtains DNS server IPv6 addresses from the DHCPv6 server.
Domain-List	This field displays whether the Switch obtains a list of domain names from the DHCP server.
Information Refresh Minimum	This field displays the time interval (in seconds) at which the Switch exchanges other configuration information with a DHCPv6 server again.

CHAPTER 9

VLAN

The type of screen you see here depends on the **VLAN Type** you selected in the **Switch Setup** screen. This chapter shows you how to configure 802.1Q tagged and port-based VLANs.

9.1 Introduction to IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLANs

A tagged VLAN uses an explicit tag (VLAN ID) in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges - they are not confined to the switch on which they were created. The VLANs can be created statically by hand or dynamically through GVRP. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that switches need to process the frame across the network. A tagged frame is four bytes longer than an untagged frame and contains two bytes for the TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier, residing within the type/length field of the Ethernet frame) and two bytes for the TCI (Tag Control Information, starting after the source address field of the Ethernet frame).

The CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) is a single-bit flag, always set to zero for Ethernet switches. If a frame received at an Ethernet port has a CFI set to 1, then that frame should not be forwarded as it is to an untagged port. The remaining twelve bits define the VLAN ID, giving a possible maximum number of 4,096 VLANs. Note that user priority and VLAN ID are independent of each other. A frame with VID (VLAN Identifier) of null (0) is called a priority frame, meaning that only the priority level is significant and the default VID of the ingress port is given as the VID of the frame. Of the 4096 possible VIDs, a VID of 0 is used to identify priority frames and the value 4095 (FFF) is reserved, so the maximum possible number of VLAN configurations is 4,094.

TPID	User Priority	CFI	VLAN ID
2 Bytes	3 Bits	1 Bit	12 bits

9.1.1 Forwarding Tagged and Untagged Frames

Each port on the Switch is capable of passing tagged or untagged frames. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch, the Switch first decides where to forward the frame and then strips off the VLAN tag. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch, the Switch first decides where to forward the frame, and then inserts a VLAN tag reflecting the ingress port's default VID. The default PVID is VLAN 1 for all ports, but this can be changed.

A broadcast frame (or a multicast frame for a multicast group that is known by the system) is duplicated only on ports that are members of the VID (except the ingress port itself), thus confining the broadcast to a specific domain.

9.2 Automatic VLAN Registration

GARP and GVRP are the protocols used to automatically register VLAN membership across switches.

9.2.1 GARP

GARP (Generic Attribute Registration Protocol) allows network switches to register and de-register attribute values with other GARP participants within a bridged LAN. GARP is a protocol that provides a generic mechanism for protocols that serve a more specific application, for example, GVRP.

9.2.1.1 GARP Timers

Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a Join message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a Leave message. A Leave All message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values.

9.2.2 GVRP

GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Enable this function to permit VLAN groups beyond the local Switch.

Please refer to the following table for common IEEE 802.1Q VLAN terminology.

Table 26 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Terminology

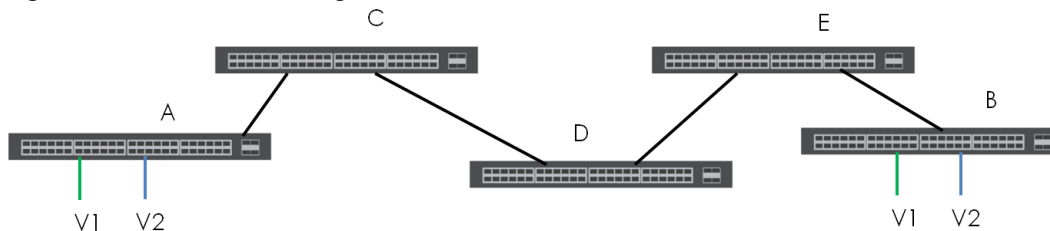
VLAN PARAMETER	TERM	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Type	Permanent VLAN	This is a static VLAN created manually.
	Dynamic VLAN	This is a VLAN configured by a GVRP registration/deregistration process.
VLAN Administrative Control	Registration Fixed	Fixed registration ports are permanent VLAN members.
	Registration Forbidden	Ports with registration forbidden are forbidden to join the specified VLAN.
	Normal Registration	Ports dynamically join a VLAN using GVRP.
VLAN Tag Control	Tagged	Ports belonging to the specified VLAN tag all outgoing frames transmitted.
	Untagged	Ports belonging to the specified VLAN don't tag all outgoing frames transmitted.
VLAN Port	Port VID	This is the VLAN ID assigned to untagged frames that this port received.
	Acceptable Frame Type	You may choose to accept both tagged and untagged incoming frames, just tagged incoming frames or just untagged incoming frames on a port.
	Ingress filtering	If set, the Switch discards incoming frames for VLANs that do not have this port as a member.

9.3 Port VLAN Trunking

Enable **VLAN Trunking** on a port to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through that port. This is useful if you want to set up VLAN groups on end devices without having to configure the same VLAN groups on intermediary devices.

The following figure describes **VLAN Trunking**. Suppose you want to create VLAN groups 1 and 2 (V1 and V2) on devices A and B. Without **VLAN Trunking**, you must configure VLAN groups 1 and 2 on all intermediary switches C, D and E; otherwise they will drop frames with unknown VLAN group tags. However, with **VLAN Trunking** enabled on a port(s) in each intermediary switch you only need to create VLAN groups in the end devices (A and B). C, D and E automatically allow frames with VLAN group tags 1 and 2 (VLAN groups that are unknown to those switches) to pass through their VLAN trunking port(s).

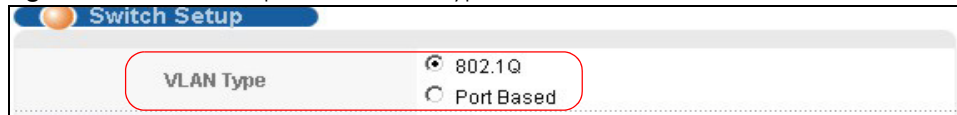
Figure 49 Port VLAN Trunking



9.4 Select the VLAN Type

Select a VLAN type in the **Basic Setting > Switch Setup** screen.

Figure 50 Switch Setup: Select VLAN Type



9.5 Static VLAN

Use a static VLAN to decide whether an incoming frame on a port should be

- sent to a VLAN group as normal depending on its VLAN tag.
- sent to a group whether it has a VLAN tag or not.
- blocked from a VLAN group regardless of its VLAN tag.

You can also tag all outgoing frames (that were previously untagged) from a port with the specified VID.

9.5.1 VLAN Status

See [Section 9.1 on page 105](#) for more information on Static VLAN. Click **Advanced Application > VLAN** from the navigation panel to display the **VLAN Status** screen as shown next.

Figure 51 Advanced Application > VLAN: VLAN Status

Index	VID	Elapsed Time	Status
1	1	8:27:49	Static

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 27 Advanced Application > VLAN: VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Search by VID	Enter an existing VLAN ID number(s) (separated by a comma) and click Search to display only the specified VLAN(s) in the list below. Leave this field blank and click Search to display all VLANs configured on the Switch.
The Number of VLAN	This is the number of VLANs configured on the Switch.
The Number of Search Results	This is the number of VLANs that match the searching criteria and display in the list below. This field displays only when you use the Search button to look for certain VLANs.
Index	This is the VLAN index number. Click on an index number to view more VLAN details.
VID	This is the VLAN identification number that was configured in the Static VLAN screen.
Elapsed Time	This field shows how long it has been since a normal VLAN was registered or a static VLAN was set up.
Status	This field shows how this VLAN was added to the Switch. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dynamic - using GVRP • Static - manually added as a normal VLAN • RMirror - manually added as a remote port mirroring VLAN • MVR - added via Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR)
Change Pages	Click Previous or Next to show the previous/next screen if all status information cannot be seen in one screen.

9.5.2 VLAN Details

Use this screen to view detailed port settings and status of the VLAN group. See [Section 9.1 on page 105](#) for more information on static VLAN. Click on an index number in the **VLAN Status** screen to display VLAN details.

Figure 52 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Detail

VLAN Detail														VLAN Status		
VID	Port Number													Elapsed Time	Status	
	2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	26			28
1	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	3:22:07	Static

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 28 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Detail

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Status	Click this to go to the VLAN Status screen.
VID	This is the VLAN identification number that was configured in the Static VLAN screen.
Port Number	This column displays the ports that are participating in a VLAN. A tagged port is marked as T , an untagged port is marked as U and ports not participating in a VLAN are marked as "-".
Elapsed Time	This field shows how long it has been since a normal VLAN was registered or a static VLAN was set up.
Status	This field shows how this VLAN was added to the Switch. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dynamic - using GVRP • Static - manually added as a normal VLAN • RMirror - manually added as a remote port mirroring VLAN • MVR - added via Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR)

9.5.3 Configure a Static VLAN

Use this screen to configure and view 802.1Q VLAN parameters for the Switch. See [Section 9.1 on page 105](#) for more information on static VLAN. To configure a static VLAN, click **Static VLAN** in the **VLAN Status** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 53 Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN

Static VLAN VLAN Status

ACTIVE

Name

VLAN Group ID

Port	Control			Tagging
*	Normal ▼			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
9	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
10	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
11	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
12	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
13	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
14	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

Add Cancel Clear

Rule Usage: 1 / 4094

VID	Active	Name	Delete
1	Yes	1	<input type="checkbox"/>

Delete Cancel

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 29 Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ACTIVE	Select this check box to activate the VLAN settings.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the VLAN group for identification purposes. This name consists of up to 64 printable characters; spaces are allowed.
VLAN Group ID	Enter the VLAN ID for this static entry; the valid range is between 1 and 4094.
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

Table 29 Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Control	Select Normal for the port to dynamically join this VLAN group using GVRP. This is the default selection. Select Fixed for the port to be a permanent member of this VLAN group. Select Forbidden if you want to prohibit the port from joining this VLAN group.
Tagging	Select TX Tagging if you want the port to tag all outgoing frames transmitted with this VLAN Group ID.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click Clear to start configuring the screen again.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group. Click the number to edit the VLAN settings.
Active	This field indicates whether the VLAN settings are enabled (Yes) or disabled (No).
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this VLAN group.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

9.5.4 Configure VLAN Port Settings

Use the VLAN Port Setting screen to configure the static VLAN (IEEE 802.1Q) settings on a port. See [Section 9.1 on page 105](#) for more information on static VLAN. Click the **VLAN Port Setting** link in the **VLAN Status** screen.

Figure 54 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting

The screenshot shows the 'VLAN Port Setting' configuration page. At the top, there are navigation tabs: 'VLAN Port Setting' (selected), 'Subnet Based Vlan', 'Protocol Based Vlan', 'MAC Based Vlan', and 'VLAN Status'. Below the tabs is a 'GVRP' checkbox. The main content is a table with the following columns: Port, Ingress Check, PVID, GVRP, Acceptable Frame Type, VLAN Trunking, and Isolation. The table lists ports 1 through 13. For each port, the 'Ingress Check' is a checkbox, 'PVID' is a text field containing '1', 'GVRP' is a checkbox, 'Acceptable Frame Type' is a dropdown menu set to 'All', 'VLAN Trunking' is a checkbox, and 'Isolation' is a checkbox. At the bottom of the page, there are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Port	Ingress Check	PVID	GVRP	Acceptable Frame Type	VLAN Trunking	Isolation
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 30 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
GVRP	GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Select this check box to permit VLAN groups beyond the local Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Ingress Check	If this check box is selected for a port, the Switch discards incoming frames for VLANs that do not include this port in its member set. Clear this check box to disable ingress filtering.
PVID	A PVID (Port VLAN ID) is a tag that adds to incoming untagged frames received on a port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines. Enter a number between 1 and 4094 as the port VLAN ID.
GVRP	Select this check box to allow GVRP on this port.
Acceptable Frame Type	Specify the type of frames allowed on a port. Choices are All, Tag Only and Untag Only . Select All from the drop-down list box to accept all untagged or tagged frames on this port. This is the default setting. Select Tag Only to accept only tagged frames on this port. All untagged frames will be dropped. Select Untag Only to accept only untagged frames on this port. All tagged frames will be dropped.
VLAN Trunking	Enable VLAN Trunking on ports connected to other switches or routers (but not ports directly connected to end users) to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through the Switch.
Isolation	Select this to allow this port to communicate only with the CPU management port and the ports on which the isolation feature is not enabled.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.6 Subnet Based VLANs

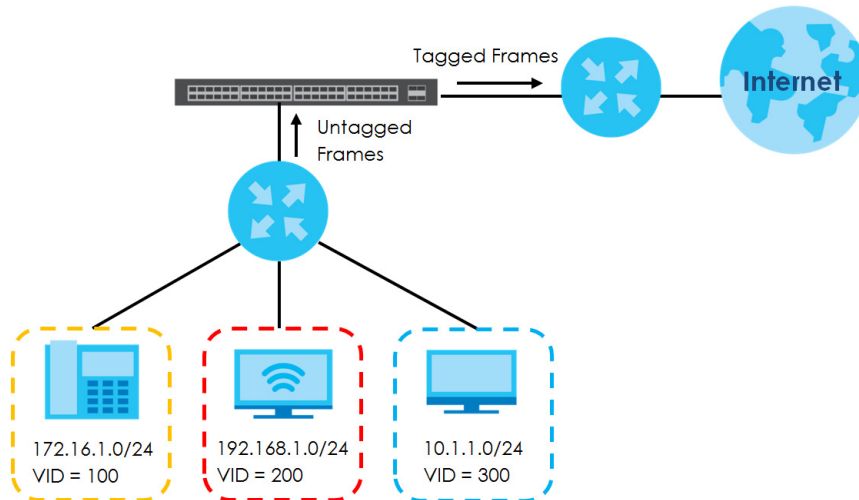
Subnet based VLANs allow you to group traffic into logical VLANs based on the source IP subnet you specify. When a frame is received on a port, the Switch checks if a tag is added already and the IP subnet it came from. The untagged packets from the same IP subnet are then placed in the same subnet based VLAN. One advantage of using subnet based VLANs is that priority can be assigned to traffic from the same IP subnet.

For example, an ISP (Internet Service Provider) may divide different types of services it provides to customers into different IP subnets. Traffic for voice services is designated for IP subnet 172.16.1.0/24,

video for 192.168.1.0/24 and data for 10.1.1.0/24. The Switch can then be configured to group incoming traffic based on the source IP subnet of incoming frames.

You can then configure a subnet based VLAN with priority 6 and VID of 100 for traffic received from IP subnet 172.16.1.0/24 (voice services). You can also have a subnet based VLAN with priority 5 and VID of 200 for traffic received from IP subnet 192.168.1.0/24 (video services). Lastly, you can configure VLAN with priority 3 and VID of 300 for traffic received from IP subnet 10.1.1.0/24 (data services). All untagged incoming frames will be classified based on their source IP subnet and prioritized accordingly. That is, video services receive the highest priority and data the lowest.

Figure 55 Subnet Based VLAN Application Example



9.6.1 Configuring Subnet Based VLAN

Click **Subnet Based VLAN** in the **VLAN Port Setting** screen to display the configuration screen as shown.

Note: Subnet based VLAN applies to un-tagged packets and is applicable only when you use IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN.

Figure 56 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Subnet Based VLAN

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for Subnet Based VLAN. At the top, there are two tabs: 'Subnet Based VLAN' (selected) and 'VLAN Port Setting'. Below the tabs, there are two main panels. The first panel contains 'Active' and 'DHCP-Vlan Override' checkboxes, an 'Apply' button, and a form with fields for 'Active', 'Name', 'IP', 'Mask-Bits', 'VID', and 'Priority'. The second panel contains 'Add' and 'Cancel' buttons, a table with columns 'Index', 'Active', 'Name', 'IP', 'Mask-Bits', 'VID', 'Priority', and 'Delete', and 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons below the table.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 31 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Subnet Based VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to activate this subnet based VLANs on the Switch.
DHCP-Vlan Override	When DHCP snooping is enabled DHCP clients can renew their IP address through the DHCP VLAN or via another DHCP server on the subnet based VLAN. Select this check box to force the DHCP clients in this IP subnet to obtain their IP addresses through the DHCP VLAN.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Active	Check this box to activate the IP subnet VLAN you are creating or editing.
Name	Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters to identify this subnet based VLAN.
IP	Enter the IP address of the subnet for which you want to configure this subnet based VLAN.
Mask-Bits	Enter the bit number of the subnet mask. To find the bit number, convert the subnet mask to binary format and add all the 1's together. Take "255.255.255.0" for example. 255 converts to eight 1s in binary. There are three 255s, so add three eights together and you get the bit number (24).
VID	Enter the ID of a VLAN with which the untagged frames from the IP subnet specified in this subnet based VLAN are tagged. This must be an existing VLAN which you defined in the Advanced Applications > VLAN screens.
Priority	Select the priority level that the Switch assigns to frames belonging to this VLAN.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Table 31 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Subnet Based VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number identifying this subnet based VLAN. Click on any of these numbers to edit an existing subnet based VLAN.
Active	This field shows whether the subnet based VLAN is active or not.
Name	This field shows the name the subnet based VLAN.
IP	This field shows the IP address of the subnet for this subnet based VLAN.
Mask-Bits	This field shows the subnet mask in bit number format for this subnet based VLAN.
VID	This field shows the VLAN ID of the frames which belong to this subnet based VLAN.
Priority	This field shows the priority which is assigned to frames belonging to this subnet based VLAN.
Delete	Click this to delete the subnet based VLANs which you marked for deletion.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

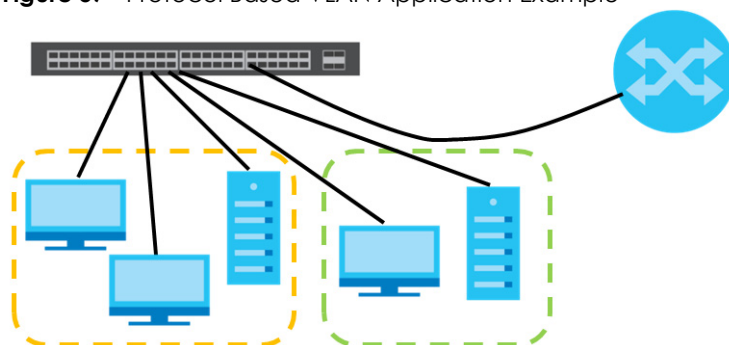
9.7 Protocol Based VLANs

Protocol based VLANs allow you to group traffic into logical VLANs based on the protocol you specify. When an upstream frame is received on a port (configured for a protocol based VLAN), the Switch checks if a tag is added already and its protocol. The untagged packets of the same protocol are then placed in the same protocol based VLAN. One advantage of using protocol based VLANs is that priority can be assigned to traffic of the same protocol.

Note: Protocol based VLAN applies to un-tagged packets and is applicable only when you use IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN.

For example, ports 1, 2, 3 and 4 belong to static VLAN 100, and ports 4, 5, 6, 7 belong to static VLAN 120. You can configure a protocol based VLAN A with priority 3 for ARP traffic received on port 1, 2 and 3. You can also have a protocol based VLAN B with priority 2 for Apple Talk traffic received on port 6 and 7. All upstream ARP traffic from port 1, 2 and 3 will be grouped together, and all upstream Apple Talk traffic from port 6 and 7 will be in another group and have higher priority than ARP traffic when they go through the uplink port to a backbone switch C.

Figure 57 Protocol Based VLAN Application Example



9.7.1 Configuring Protocol Based VLAN

Click **Protocol Based VLAN** in the **VLAN Port Setting** screen to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 58 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Protocol Based VLAN

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 32 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Protocol Based VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to activate this protocol based VLAN.
Port	Type a port number to be included in this protocol based VLAN. This port must belong to a static VLAN in order to participate in a protocol based VLAN. See Chapter 9 on page 105 for more details on setting up VLANs.
Name	Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters to identify this protocol based VLAN.
Ethernet-type	Use the drop down list box to select a predefined protocol to be included in this protocol based VLAN or select Others and type the protocol number in hexadecimal notation. For example, the IP protocol in hexadecimal notation is 0800, and Novell IPX protocol is 8137. Note: Protocols in the hexadecimal number range of 0x0000 to 0x05ff are not allowed to be used for protocol based VLANs.
VID	Enter the ID of a VLAN to which the port belongs. This must be an existing VLAN which you defined in the Advanced Applications > VLAN screens.
Priority	Select the priority level that the Switch will assign to frames belonging to this VLAN.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This is the index number identifying this protocol based VLAN. Click on any of these numbers to edit an existing protocol based VLAN.
Active	This field shows whether the protocol based VLAN is active or not.
Port	This field shows which port belongs to this protocol based VLAN.
Name	This field shows the name the protocol based VLAN.
Ethernet-type	This field shows which Ethernet protocol is part of this protocol based VLAN.

Table 32 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Protocol Based VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	This field shows the VLAN ID of the port.
Priority	This field shows the priority which is assigned to frames belonging to this protocol based VLAN.
Delete	Click this to delete the protocol based VLANs which you marked for deletion.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.7.2 Create an IP-based VLAN Example

This example shows you how to create an IP VLAN which includes ports 1, 4 and 8. Follow these steps using the screen below:

- 1 Activate this protocol based VLAN.
- 2 Type the port number you want to include in this protocol based VLAN. Type **1**.
- 3 Give this protocol-based VLAN a descriptive name. Type **IP-VLAN**.
- 4 Select the protocol. Leave the default value **IP**.
- 5 Type the VLAN ID of an existing VLAN. In our example we already created a static VLAN with an ID of 5. Type **5**.
- 6 Leave the priority set to **0** and click **Add**.

Figure 59 Protocol Based VLAN Configuration Example

The screenshot displays the 'Protocol Based VLAN' configuration window. It includes a form with the following fields: 'Active' (checked), 'Port' (1), 'Name' (IP-VLAN), 'Ethernet-type' (IP), 'VID' (5), and 'Priority' (0). Below the form are 'Add' and 'Cancel' buttons. A table below the form shows a single entry with index 1, active status, port 1, name IP-VLAN, ethernet-type IP, VID 5, and priority 0. Below the table are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons. A red 'EXAMPLE' stamp is in the bottom right corner.

To add more ports to this protocol based VLAN.

- 1 Click the index number of the protocol based VLAN entry. Click **1**
- 2 Change the value in the **Port** field to the next port you want to add.
- 3 Click **Add**.

9.8 MAC Based VLAN

The MAC-based VLAN feature assigns incoming untagged packets to a VLAN and classifies the traffic based on the source MAC address of the packet. When untagged packets arrive at the switch, the source MAC address of the packet is looked up in a MAC to VLAN mapping table. If an entry is found, the corresponding VLAN ID is assigned to the packet. The assigned VLAN ID is verified against the VLAN table. If the VLAN is valid, ingress processing on the packet continues; otherwise, the packet is dropped.

This feature allows users to change ports without having to reconfigure the VLAN. You can assign priority to the MAC-based VLAN and define a MAC to VLAN mapping table by entering a specified source MAC address in the MAC-based VLAN setup screen. You can also delete a MAC-based VLAN entry in the same screen.

Click **MAC Based VLAN** in the **VLAN Port Setting** screen to see the following screen.

Figure 60 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > MAC Based VLAN

The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 33 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > MAC Based VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to activate this MAC based VLAN.
Name	Type a name up to 32 alpha numeric characters for the MAC-based VLAN entry.
MAC Address	Type a MAC address that is bind to the MAC-based VLAN entry. This is the source MAC address of the data packet that is looked up when untagged packets arrive at the Switch.
Mask-Bits	Type the mask for the specified MAC address to determine which bits a packet's MAC address should match. Enter "f" for each bit of the specified source MAC address that the traffic's MAC address should match. Enter "0" for the bit(s) of the matched traffic's MAC address, which can be of any hexadecimal character(s). For example, if you set the MAC address to 00:13:49:00:00:00 and the mask to ff:ff:00:00:00, a packet with a MAC address of 00:13:49:12:34:56 matches this criteria.

Table 33 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > MAC Based VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Type an ID (from 1 to 4094) for the VLAN ID that is associated with the MAC-based VLAN entry.
Priority	Type a priority (0-7) for the MAC-based VLAN entry. The higher the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this MAC-based VLAN entry.
Add	Click Add to save the new MAC-based VLAN entry.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the fields in the MAC-based VLAN entry.
Index	This field displays the index number of the MAC-based VLAN entry.
Active	This field shows whether the MAC-based VLAN is active or not.
Name	This field displays the name of the MAC-based VLAN entry.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address that is bind to the MAC-based VLAN entry.
Mask-Bits	This field shows the MAC mask in bit number format for this MAC-based VLAN.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of the MAC-based VLAN entry.
Priority	This field displays the priority level of the MAC-based VLAN entry.
Delete	Click this to delete the MAC-based VLANs which you marked for deletion.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the check boxes.

9.9 VLAN MAC Learning

Use this screen to set the MAC address learning limit on per-port and per-VLAN basis. Click **VLAN MAC Learning** in the **VLAN Status** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 61 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN MAC Learning

VLAN MAC Learning [VLAN Setting](#)

Active

Action when MAC Limit Number reached

Forward packets with new source MAC

Drop packets with new source MAC

Apply

Active

VID

Port

Any

1 ▼

MAC Learning

MAC Limit Number

Add Cancel

Rule Usage: 0 / 32

Index	Active	VID	Port	MAC Learning	MAC Limit Number	Delete
-------	--------	-----	------	--------------	------------------	--------

Delete Cancel

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 34 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN MAC Learning

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable the MAC address learning limit on the Switch.
Action when MAC Limit Number reached	Specify the action the Switch takes when the the maximum number of MAC addresses which a port can learn in a VLAN is reached. Select Forward packets with new source MAC to allow the Switch to forward new packets even when the packet's MAC address is not learned. Select Drop packets with new source MAC to have the Switch discard any packet whose MAC address is not learned.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Active	Select this option to activate this rule.
VID	Enter the identification number of the VLAN to which the port belongs.
Port	Select Any to apply the rule to all ports in the specified VLAN. To specify a port, select the second choice and enter the number of the port to which this rule is applied.
MAC Learning	Select this option to enable the MAC address learning limit in this rule.

Table 34 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN MAC Learning (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC Limit Number	Use this field to limit the number of (dynamic) MAC addresses that may be learned on a port in a specified VLAN. For example, if you set this field to "5" on port 2, then only the devices with these five learned MAC addresses may access port 2 at any one time. A sixth device would have to wait until one of the five learned MAC addresses aged out. MAC address aging out time can be set in the Switch Setup screen. The valid range is from "0" to "16384". If you enter 0 here, the Switch automatically changes to use the maximum value (16384). Note: You also set the MAC address learning limit in the Port Security screen. If you configure two different limits, the Switch bases on the smaller one.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to change the settings.
Active	This field displays Yes when the rule is activated and No when is it deactivated.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN to which the port belongs.
Port	This field displays the number of the port to which this rule is applied.
MAC Learning	This field displays Y when the MAC address learning limit is enabled in this rule. Otherwise, it displays N .
MAC Limit Number	This is the maximum number of MAC addresses which a port can learn in a VLAN.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

9.10 Port-based VLAN Setup

Port-based VLANs are VLANs where the packet forwarding decision is based on the destination MAC address and its associated port.

Port-based VLANs require allowed outgoing ports to be defined for each port. Therefore, if you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, for example, between conference rooms in a hotel, you must define the egress (an egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves) for both ports.

Port-based VLANs are specific only to the Switch on which they were created.

Note: When you activate port-based VLAN, the Switch uses a default VLAN ID of 1. You cannot change it.

Note: In screens (such as **IP Setup** and **Filtering**) that require a VID, you must enter 1 as the VID.

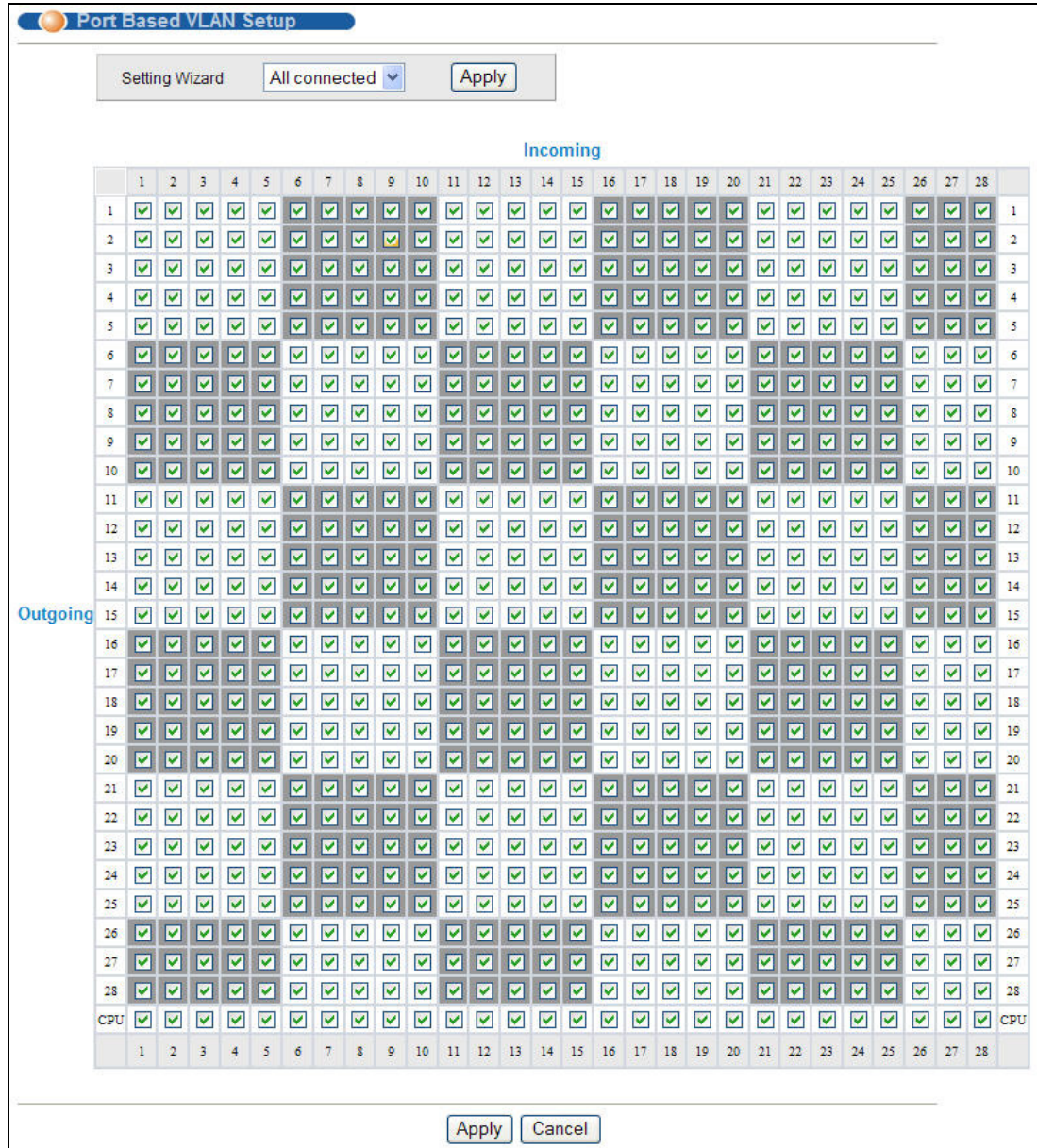
The port-based VLAN setup screen is shown next. The **CPU** management port forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports.

9.10.1 Configure a Port-based VLAN

Select **Port Based** as the **VLAN Type** in the **Switch Setup** screen and then click **VLAN** from the navigation panel to display the following screen. Select either **All Connected** or **Port Isolated** from the drop-down list depending on your VLAN and VLAN security requirements. If VLAN members need to communicate directly with each other, then select **All Connected**. Select **Port Isolated** if you want to restrict users from communicating directly. Click **Apply** to save your settings.

The following screen shows users on a port-based, all-connected VLAN configuration.

Figure 62 Advanced Application > VLAN > Port Based VLAN Setup (All Connected)



The following screen shows users on a port-based, port-isolated VLAN configuration.

Figure 63 Advanced Application > VLAN: Port Based VLAN Setup (Port Isolation)

Port Based VLAN Setup

Setting Wizard
Port isolation ▾
Apply

Incoming

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	
1	✓																												1
2		✓																											2
3			✓																										3
4				✓																									4
5					✓																								5
6						✓																							6
7							✓																						7
8								✓																					8
9									✓																				9
10										✓																			10
11											✓																		11
12												✓																	12
13													✓																13
14														✓															14
15															✓														15
16																✓													16
17																	✓												17
18																		✓											18
19																			✓										19
20																				✓									20
21																					✓								21
22																						✓							22
23																							✓						23
24																								✓					24
25																									✓				25
26																										✓			26
27																											✓		27
28																												✓	28
CPU	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	CPU

Outgoing

Apply
Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 35 Advanced Application > VLAN: Port Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Setting Wizard	<p>Choose All connected or Port isolation.</p> <p>All connected means all ports can communicate with each other, that is, there are no virtual LANs. All incoming and outgoing ports are selected. This option is the most flexible but also the least secure.</p> <p>Port isolation means that each port can only communicate with the CPU management port and cannot communicate with each other. All incoming ports are selected while only the CPU outgoing port is selected. This option is the most limiting but also the most secure.</p> <p>After you make your selection, click Apply (top right of screen) to display the screens as mentioned above. You can still customize these settings by adding/deleting incoming or outgoing ports, but you must also click Apply at the bottom of the screen.</p>
Incoming	<p>These are the ingress ports; an ingress port is an incoming port, that is, a port through which a data packet enters. If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the ingress port for both ports. The numbers in the top row denote the incoming port for the corresponding port listed on the left (its outgoing port). CPU refers to the Switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the Switch cannot be managed from that port.</p>
Outgoing	<p>These are the egress ports. An egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves. If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the egress port for both ports. CPU refers to the Switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the Switch cannot be managed from that port.</p>
Apply	<p>Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.</p>
Cancel	<p>Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.</p>

CHAPTER 10

Static MAC Forward Setup

Use these screens to configure static MAC address forwarding.

10.1 Overview

This chapter discusses how to configure forwarding rules based on MAC addresses of devices on your network.

10.2 Configuring Static MAC Forwarding

A static MAC address is an address that has been manually entered in the MAC address table. Static MAC addresses do not age out. When you set up static MAC address rules, you are setting static MAC addresses for a port. This may reduce the need for broadcasting.

Static MAC address forwarding together with port security allows only computers in the MAC address table on a port to access the Switch. See [Chapter 19 on page 176](#) for more information on port security.

Click **Advanced Applications > Static MAC Forwarding** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 64 Advanced Application > Static MAC Forwarding

Index	Active	Name	MAC Address	VID	Port	Delete
-------	--------	------	-------------	-----	------	--------

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 36 Advanced Application > Static MAC Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by clearing this check box.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes for this static MAC address forwarding rule.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address in valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs. Note: Static MAC addresses do not age out.
VID	Enter the VLAN identification number.
Port	Enter the port where the MAC address entered in the previous field will be automatically forwarded.
Add	Click Add to save your rule to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this rule if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	Click an index number to modify a static MAC address rule for a port.
Active	This field displays whether this static MAC address forwarding rule is active (Yes) or not (No). You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for identification purposes for this static MAC address-forwarding rule.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address that will be forwarded and the VLAN identification number to which the MAC address belongs.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.
Port	This field displays the port where the MAC address shown in the next field will be forwarded.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

CHAPTER 11

Static Multicast Forward Setup

Use these screens to configure static multicast address forwarding.

11.1 Static Multicast Forwarding Overview

A multicast MAC address is the MAC address of a member of a multicast group. A static multicast address is a multicast MAC address that has been manually entered in the multicast table. Static multicast addresses do not age out. Static multicast forwarding allows you (the administrator) to forward multicast frames to a member without the member having to join the group first.

If a multicast group has no members, then the switch will either flood the multicast frames to all ports or drop them. You can configure this in the **Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting** screen (see [Section 25.3.1 on page 208](#)). [Figure 65](#) shows such unknown multicast frames flooded to all ports. With static multicast forwarding, you can forward these multicasts to port(s) within a VLAN group. [Figure 66](#) shows frames being forwarded to devices connected to port 3. [Figure 67](#) shows frames being forwarded to ports 2 and 3 within VLAN group 4.

Figure 65 No Static Multicast Forwarding

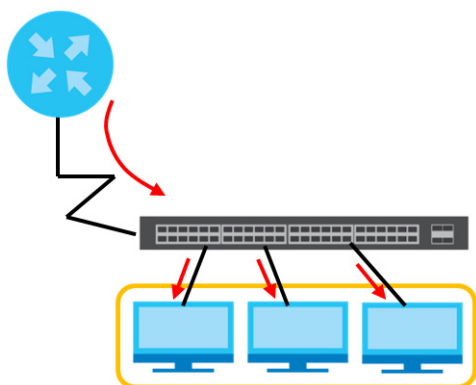
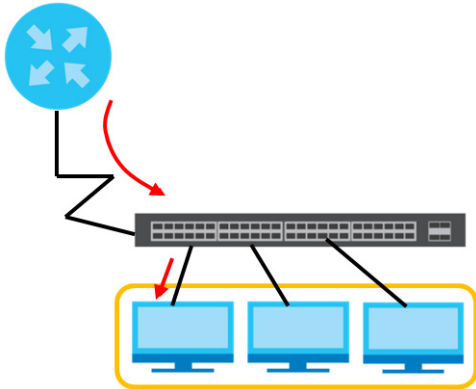
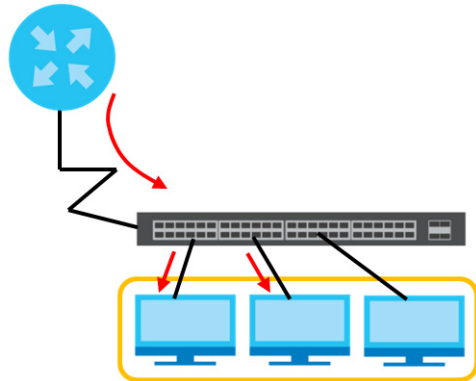


Figure 66 Static Multicast Forwarding to A Single Port**Figure 67** Static Multicast Forwarding to Multiple Ports

11.2 Configuring Static Multicast Forwarding

Use this screen to configure rules to forward specific multicast frames, such as streaming or control frames, to specific port(s).

Click **Advanced Application > Static Multicast Forwarding** to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 68 Advanced Application > Static Multicast Forwarding

● Static Multicast Forwarding

Active	<input type="checkbox"/>
Name	<input style="width: 80%;" type="text"/>
MAC Address	<input style="width: 80%;" type="text" value=": : : : : :"/>
VID	<input style="width: 80%;" type="text"/>
Port	<input style="width: 80%;" type="text"/>

Index	Active	Name	MAC Address	VID	Port	Delete
<input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>						

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 37 Advanced Application > Static Multicast Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by clearing this check box.
Name	Type a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for this static multicast MAC address forwarding rule. This is for identification only.
MAC Address	Enter a multicast MAC address which identifies the multicast group. The last binary bit of the first octet pair in a multicast MAC address must be 1. For example, the first octet pair 00000001 is 01 and 00000011 is 03 in hexadecimal, so 01:00:5e:00:00:0A and 03:00:5e:00:00:27 are valid multicast MAC addresses.
VID	You can forward frames with matching destination MAC address to port(s) within a VLAN group. Enter the ID that identifies the VLAN group here. If you don't have a specific target VLAN, enter 1.
Port	Enter the port(s) where frames with destination MAC address that matched the entry above are forwarded. You can enter multiple ports separated by (no space) comma (,) or hyphen (-). For example, enter "3-5" for ports 3, 4, and 5. Enter "3,5,7" for ports 3, 5, and 7.
Add	Click Add to save your rule to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this rule if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to their last saved values.
Clear	Click Clear to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	Click an index number to modify a static multicast MAC address rule for port(s).
Active	This field displays whether a static multicast MAC address forwarding rule is active (Yes) or not (No). You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for identification purposes for a static multicast MAC address-forwarding rule.
MAC Address	This field displays the multicast MAC address that identifies a multicast group.
VID	This field displays the ID number of a VLAN group to which frames containing the specified multicast MAC address will be forwarded.
Port	This field displays the port(s) within a identified VLAN group to which frames containing the specified multicast MAC address will be forwarded.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

CHAPTER 12

Filtering

This chapter discusses MAC address port filtering.

12.1 Configure a Filtering Rule

Configure the Switch to filter traffic based on the traffic's source, destination MAC addresses and/or VLAN group (ID).

Click **Advanced Application > Filtering** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 69 Advanced Application > Filtering

The screenshot shows the 'Filtering' configuration page. It includes a title bar, an 'Active' checkbox, a 'Name' text field, an 'Action' section with 'Discard source' and 'Discard destination' checkboxes, a 'MAC' field for entering a MAC address, and a 'VID' field. Below the form are 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear' buttons. At the bottom, there is a table with columns for 'Index', 'Active', 'Name', 'MAC Address', 'VID', 'Action', and 'Delete', and 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons below the table.

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 38 Advanced Application > Filtering

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Make sure to select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by deselecting this check box.
Name	Type a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for this rule. This is for identification only.
Action	Select Discard source to drop frames from the source MAC address (specified in the MAC field). The Switch can still send frames to the MAC address. Select Discard destination to drop frames to the destination MAC address (specified in the MAC address). The Switch can still receive frames originating from the MAC address. Select Discard source and Discard destination to block traffic to/from the MAC address specified in the MAC field.
MAC	Type a MAC address in a valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs.

Table 38 Advanced Application > Filtering (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Type the VLAN group identification number.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click Clear to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to change the settings.
Active	This field displays Yes when the rule is activated and No when is it deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule. This is for identification purposes only.
MAC Address	This field displays the source/destination MAC address with the VLAN identification number to which the MAC address belongs.
VID	This field displays the VLAN group identification number.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the selected checkbox(es) in the Delete column.

CHAPTER 13

Spanning Tree Protocol

The Switch supports Spanning Tree Protocol (STP), Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) and Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) as defined in the following standards.

- IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol
- IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol
- IEEE 802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

The Switch also allows you to set up multiple STP configurations (or trees). Ports can then be assigned to the trees.

13.1 STP/RSTP Overview

(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a Switch to interact with other (R)STP-compliant switches in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network.

The Switch uses IEEE 802.1w RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol) that allows faster convergence of the spanning tree than STP (while also being backwards compatible with STP-only aware bridges). In RSTP, topology change information is directly propagated throughout the network from the device that generates the topology change. In STP, a longer delay is required as the device that causes a topology change first notifies the root bridge and then the root bridge notifies the network. Both RSTP and STP flush unwanted learned addresses from the filtering database. In RSTP, the port states are Discarding, Learning, and Forwarding.

Note: In this user's guide, "STP" refers to both STP and RSTP.

13.1.1 STP Terminology

The root bridge is the base of the spanning tree.

Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame onto a LAN through that port. The Switch supports both the short and the long path cost methods. The original short path cost method uses a 16-bit value. The long path cost method allows the Switch to use longer path length (32-bit values) for high-speed links. The default cost is assigned according to the speed of the link to which a port is attached. The slower the media, the higher the cost.

Table 39 STP Path Costs

	LINK SPEED	DEFAULT VALUE (SHORT)	DEFAULT VALUE (LONG)	ALLOWED RANGE
Path Cost	10Mbps	100	2,000,000	1 to 200,000,000
Path Cost	100Mbps	19	200,000	1 to 200,000,000

Table 39 STP Path Costs

	LINK SPEED	DEFAULT VALUE (SHORT)	DEFAULT VALUE (LONG)	ALLOWED RANGE
Path Cost	1Gbps	4	20,000	1 to 200,000,000
Path Cost	10Gbps	2	2,000	1 to 200,000,000

On each bridge, the bridge communicates with the root through the root port. The root port is the port on this Switch with the lowest path cost to the root (the root path cost). If there is no root port, then this Switch has been accepted as the root bridge of the spanning tree network.

For each LAN segment, a designated bridge is selected. This bridge has the lowest cost to the root among the bridges connected to the LAN.

13.1.2 How STP Works

After a bridge determines the lowest cost-spanning tree with STP, it enables the root port and the ports that are the designated ports for connected LANs, and disables all other ports that participate in STP. Network packets are therefore only forwarded between enabled ports, eliminating any possible network loops.

STP-aware switches exchange Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) periodically. When the bridged LAN topology changes, a new spanning tree is constructed.

Once a stable network topology has been established, all bridges listen for Hello BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) transmitted from the root bridge. If a bridge does not get a Hello BPDU after a predefined interval (Max Age), the bridge assumes that the link to the root bridge is down. This bridge then initiates negotiations with other bridges to reconfigure the network to re-establish a valid network topology.

13.1.3 STP Port States

STP assigns five port states to eliminate packet looping. A bridge port is not allowed to go directly from blocking state to forwarding state so as to eliminate transient loops.

Table 40 STP Port States

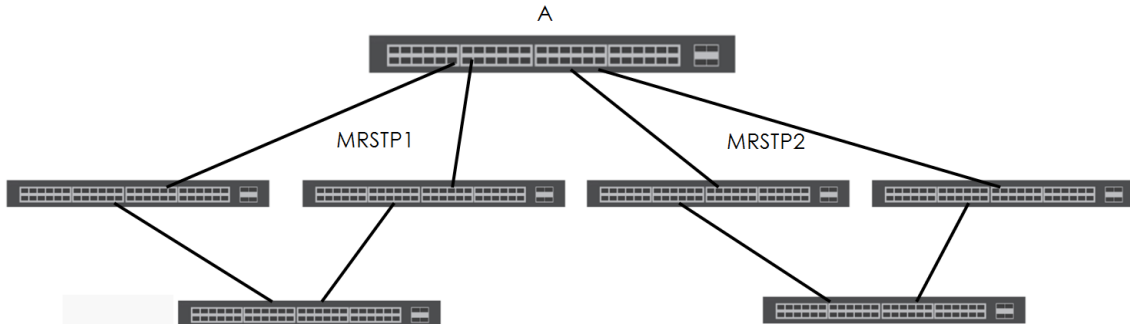
PORT STATE	DESCRIPTION
Disabled	STP is disabled (default).
Blocking	Only configuration and management BPDUs are received and processed.
Listening	All BPDUs are received and processed. Note: The listening state does not exist in RSTP.
Learning	All BPDUs are received and processed. Information frames are submitted to the learning process but not forwarded.
Forwarding	All BPDUs are received and processed. All information frames are received and forwarded.

13.1.4 Multiple RSTP

MRSTP (Multiple RSTP) is Zyxel's proprietary feature that is compatible with RSTP and STP. With MRSTP, you can have more than one spanning tree on your Switch and assign port(s) to each tree. Each spanning tree operates independently with its own bridge information.

In the following example, there are two RSTP instances (**MRSTP 1** and **MRSTP2**) on switch **A**.

Figure 70 MRSTP Network Example



To set up MRSTP, activate MRSTP on the Switch and specify which port(s) belong to which spanning tree.

Note: Each port can belong to one STP tree only.

13.1.5 Multiple STP

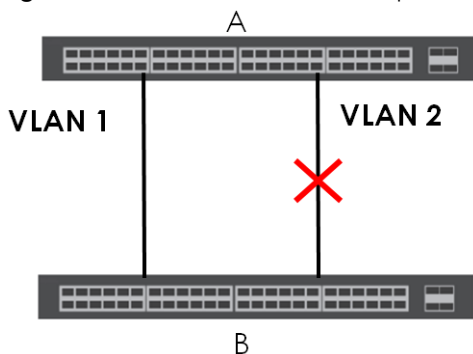
Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1s) is backwards compatible with STP/RSTP and addresses the limitations of existing spanning tree protocols (STP and RSTP) in networks to include the following features:

- One Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) that represents the entire network's connectivity.
- Grouping of multiple bridges (or switching devices) into regions that appear as one single bridge on the network.
- A VLAN can be mapped to a specific Multiple Spanning Tree Instance (MSTI). MSTI allows multiple VLANs to use the same spanning tree.
- Load-balancing is possible as traffic from different VLANs can use distinct paths in a region.

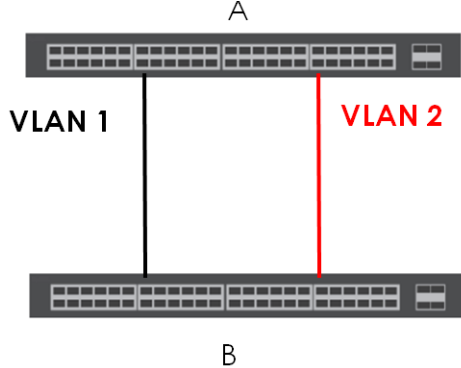
13.1.5.1 MSTP Network Example

The following figure shows a network example where two VLANs are configured on the two switches. If the switches are using STP or RSTP, the link for VLAN 2 will be blocked as STP and RSTP allow only one link in the network and block the redundant link.

Figure 71 STP/RSTP Network Example



With MSTP, VLANs 1 and 2 are mapped to different spanning trees in the network. Thus traffic from the two VLANs travel on different paths. The following figure shows the network example using MSTP.

Figure 72 MSTP Network Example

13.1.5.2 MST Region

An MST region is a logical grouping of multiple network devices that appears as a single device to the rest of the network. Each MSTP-enabled device can only belong to one MST region. When BPDUs enter an MST region, external path cost (of paths outside this region) is increased by one. Internal path cost (of paths within this region) is increased by one when BPDUs traverse the region.

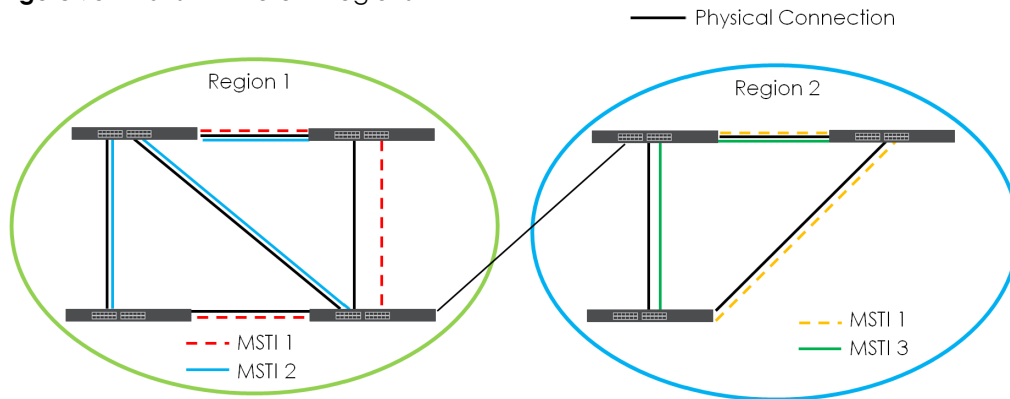
Devices that belong to the same MST region are configured to have the same MSTP configuration identification settings. These include the following parameters:

- Name of the MST region
- Revision level as the unique number for the MST region
- VLAN-to-MST Instance mapping

13.1.5.3 MST Instance

An MST Instance (MSTI) is a spanning tree instance. VLANs can be configured to run on a specific MSTI. Each created MSTI is identified by a unique number (known as an MST ID) known internally to a region. Thus an MSTI does not span across MST regions.

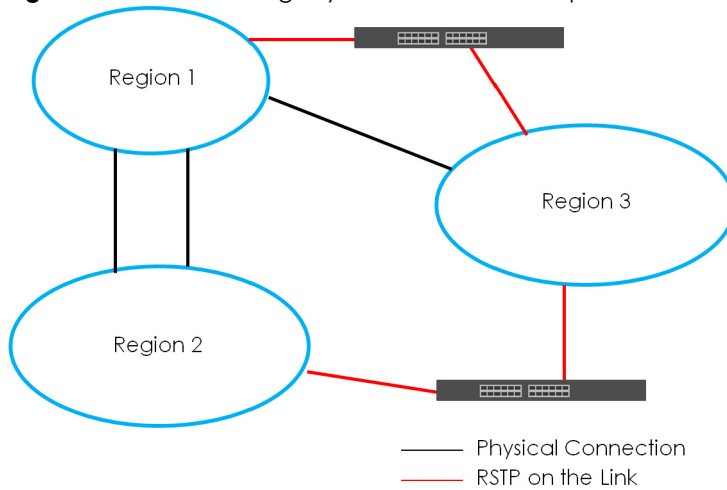
The following figure shows an example where there are two MST regions. Regions 1 and 2 have 2 spanning tree instances.

Figure 73 MSTIs in Different Regions

13.1.5.4 Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST)

A CIST represents the connectivity of the entire network and it is equivalent to a spanning tree in an STP/RSTP. The CIST is the default MST instance (MSTID 0). Any VLANs that are not members of an MST instance are members of the CIST. In an MSTP-enabled network, there is only one CIST that runs between MST regions and single spanning tree devices. A network may contain multiple MST regions and other network segments running RSTP.

Figure 74 MSTP and Legacy RSTP Network Example



13.2 Spanning Tree Protocol Status Screen

The Spanning Tree Protocol status screen changes depending on what standard you choose to implement on your network. Click **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol** to see the screen as shown.

Figure 75 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol

Spanning Tree Protocol Status		
	Configuration	RSTP
	MRSTP	MSTP
Spanning Tree Protocol: RSTP		
Bridge	Root	Our Bridge
Bridge ID	0000-000000000000	0000-000000000000
Hello Time (second)	0	0
Max Age (second)	0	0
Forwarding Delay (second)	0	0
Cost to Bridge	0	
Port ID	0x0000	
Topology Changed Times		0
Time Since Last Change		0:00:00

This screen differs depending on which STP mode (RSTP, MRSTP or MSTP) you configure on the Switch. This screen is described in detail in the section that follows the configuration section for each STP mode. Click **Configuration** to activate one of the STP standards on the Switch.

13.3 Spanning Tree Configuration

Use the **Spanning Tree Configuration** screen to activate one of the STP modes on the Switch. Click **Configuration** in the **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol**.

Figure 76 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 41 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Spanning Tree Mode	You can activate one of the STP modes on the Switch. Select Rapid Spanning Tree , Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree or Multiple Spanning Tree . See Section 13.1 on page 132 for background information on STP.
Type of Default Path Cost	Select the default path cost method (Short or Long) you want the Switch to use in each STP mode. Note: If you select Long , all the switches in your network also need to use the long path cost method. Otherwise, the spanning tree may not converge properly.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13.4 Configure Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol

Use this screen to configure RSTP settings, see [Section 13.1 on page 132](#) for more information on RSTP. Click **RSTP** in the **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol** screen.

Figure 77 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP

Port	Active	Edge	Root Guard	Priority	Path Cost
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 42 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	Click Status to display the RSTP Status screen (see Figure 78 on page 140).
Active	Select this check box to activate RSTP. Clear this check box to disable RSTP. Note: You must also activate Rapid Spanning Tree in the Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration screen to enable RSTP on the Switch.
Bridge Priority	Bridge priority is used in determining the root switch, root port and designated port. The switch with the highest priority (lowest numeric value) becomes the STP root switch. If all switches have the same priority, the switch with the lowest MAC address will then become the root switch. Select a value from the drop-down list box. The lower the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this bridge. Bridge Priority determines the root bridge, which in turn determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.

Table 42 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP (continued)

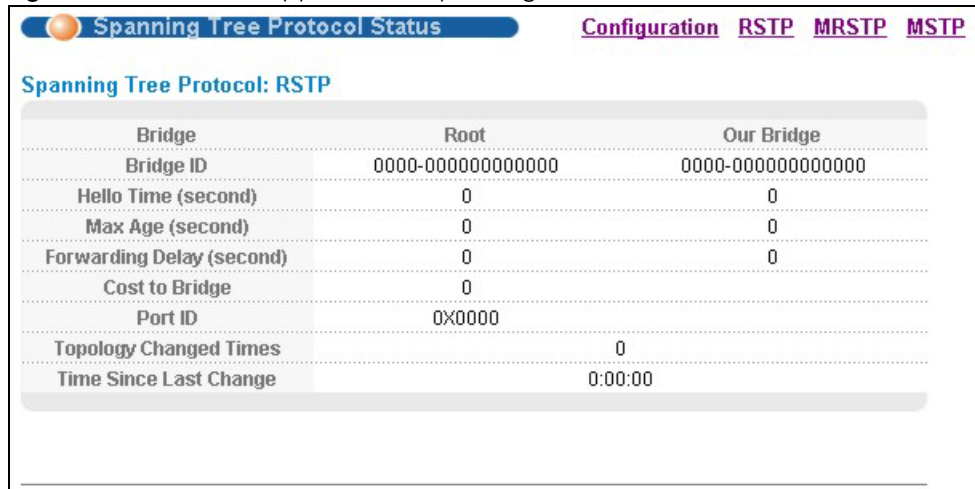
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Max Age	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds. As a general rule: Note: $2 * (\text{Forward Delay} - 1) \geq \text{Max Age} \geq 2 * (\text{Hello Time} + 1)$
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to activate RSTP on this port.
Edge	Select this check box to configure a port as an edge port when it is directly attached to a computer. An edge port changes its initial STP port state from blocking state to forwarding state immediately without going through listening and learning states right after the port is configured as an edge port or when its link status changes. Note: An edge port becomes a non-edge port as soon as it receives a Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU).
Root Guard	Select this check box to enable root guard on this port in order to prevent the switch(es) attached to the port from becoming the root bridge. With root guard enabled, a port is blocked when the Switch receives a superior BPDU on it. The Switch allows traffic to pass through this port again when the switch connected to the port stops to send superior BPDUs.
Priority	Configure the priority for each port here. Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in a switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost - see Table 39 on page 132 for more information. The default path cost value varies depending on the default path cost method you selected.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13.5 Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See [Section 13.1 on page 132](#) for more information on RSTP.

Note: This screen is only available after you activate RSTP on the Switch.

Figure 78 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: RSTP



Bridge	Root	Our Bridge
Bridge ID	0000-000000000000	0000-000000000000
Hello Time (second)	0	0
Max Age (second)	0	0
Forwarding Delay (second)	0	0
Cost to Bridge	0	
Port ID	0x0000	
Topology Changed Times		0
Time Since Last Change		0:00:00

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 43 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: RSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click Configuration to specify which STP mode you want to activate. Click RSTP to edit RSTP settings on the Switch.
Bridge	Root refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). Our Bridge is this Switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of the bridge priority plus the MAC address. This ID is the same for Root and Our Bridge if the Switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message. The root bridge determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding). See Section 13.1.3 on page 133 for information on port states. Note: The listening state does not exist in RSTP.
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this Switch to the root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.

13.6 Configure Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol

To configure MRSTP, click **MRSTP** in the **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol** screen. See [Section 13.1 on page 132](#) for more information on MRSTP.

Figure 79 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MRSTP

Tree	Active	Bridge Priority	Hello Time	MAX Age	Forwarding Delay
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	2 seconds	20 seconds	15
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	2 seconds	20 seconds	15

Port	Active	Edge	Root Guard	Priority	Path Cost	Tree
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>			1
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4	1
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4	1
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4	1
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4	1
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4	1
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4	1
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4	1
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4	1
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4	1

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 44 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MRSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	Click Status to display the MRSTP Status screen (see Figure 78 on page 140).
Tree	This is a read-only index number of the STP trees.
Active	Select this check box to activate an STP tree. Clear this check box to disable an STP tree. Note: You must also activate Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree in the Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration screen to enable MRSTP on the Switch.
Bridge Priority	Bridge priority is used in determining the root switch, root port and designated port. The switch with the highest priority (lowest numeric value) becomes the STP root switch. If all switches have the same priority, the switch with the lowest MAC address will then become the root switch. Select a value from the drop-down list box. The lower the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this bridge. Bridge Priority determines the root bridge, which in turn determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.

Table 44 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MRSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Max Age	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the Switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds. As a general rule: Note: $2 * (\text{Forward Delay} - 1) \geq \text{Max Age} \geq 2 * (\text{Hello Time} + 1)$
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to activate STP on this port.
Edge	Select this check box to configure a port as an edge port when it is directly attached to a computer. An edge port changes its initial STP port state from blocking state to forwarding state immediately without going through listening and learning states right after the port is configured as an edge port or when its link status changes. Note: An edge port becomes a non-edge port as soon as it receives a Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU).
Root Guard	Select this check box to enable root guard on this port in order to prevent the switch(es) attached to the port from becoming the root bridge. With root guard enabled, a port is blocked when the Switch receives a superior BPDU on it. The Switch allows traffic to pass through this port again when the switch connected to the port stops to send superior BPDUs.
Priority	Configure the priority for each port here. Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in the Switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended that you assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost - see Table 39 on page 132 for more information. The default path cost value varies depending on the default path cost method you selected.
Tree	Select which STP tree configuration this port should participate in.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13.7 Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See [Section 13.1 on page 132](#) for more information on MRSTP.

Note: This screen is only available after you activate MRSTP on the Switch.

Figure 80 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MRSTP

Bridge	Root	Our Bridge
Bridge ID	8000-001349000002	8000-001349000002
Hello Time (second)	2	2
Max Age (second)	20	20
Forwarding Delay (second)	15	15
Cost to Bridge	0	
Port ID	0X0000	
Topology Changed Times		0
Time Since Last Change		0:00:00

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 45 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MRSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click Configuration to specify which STP mode you want to activate. Click MRSTP to edit MRSTP settings on the Switch.
Tree	Select which STP tree configuration you want to view.
Bridge	Root refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). Our Bridge is this Switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for Root and Our Bridge if the Switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message. The root bridge determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding). Note: The listening state does not exist in RSTP.
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this Switch to the root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.

13.8 Configure Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

To configure MSTP, click **MSTP** in the **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol** screen. See [Section 13.1.5 on page 134](#) for more information on MSTP.

Figure 81 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP

Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol
[Port](#) [Status](#)

Bridge:

Active	<input type="checkbox"/>
Hello Time	<input type="text" value="2"/> seconds
MAX Age	<input type="text" value="20"/> seconds
Forwarding Delay	<input type="text" value="15"/> seconds
Maximum hops	<input type="text" value="20"/>
Configuration Name	<input type="text" value="0019cb004701"/>
Revision Number	<input type="text" value="0"/>

Instance:

Instance	<input type="text"/>
Bridge Priority	<input type="text" value="32768"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
VLAN Range	Start <input type="text"/> End <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Remove"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/>
Enabled VLAN(s)	<div style="border: 1px solid gray; height: 40px; width: 100%;"></div>

Port	Active	Priority	Path Cost
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="128"/>	<input type="text" value="19"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="128"/>	<input type="text" value="19"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="128"/>	<input type="text" value="19"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="128"/>	<input type="text" value="19"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="128"/>	<input type="text" value="19"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="128"/>	<input type="text" value="19"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="128"/>	<input type="text" value="19"/>

Instance	VLAN	Active Port	Delete
<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="1-4094"/>	<input type="text" value="-"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 46 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	Click Port to display the MSTP Port Configuration screen (see Figure 82 on page 147).
Status	Click Status to display the MSTP Status screen (see Figure 83 on page 148).
Active	Select this check box to activate MSTP on the Switch. Clear this check box to disable MSTP on the Switch. Note: You must also activate Multiple Spanning Tree in the Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration screen to enable MSTP on the Switch.
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.
MaxAge	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the Switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds. As a general rule: Note: $2 * (\text{Forward Delay} - 1) \geq \text{Max Age} \geq 2 * (\text{Hello Time} + 1)$
Maximum hops	Enter the number of hops (between 1 and 255) in an MSTP region before the BPDU is discarded and the port information is aged.
Configuration Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 characters) of an MST region.
Revision Number	Enter a number to identify a region's configuration. Devices must have the same revision number to belong to the same region.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Instance	Use this section to configure MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance) settings.
Instance	Enter the number you want to use to identify this MST instance on the Switch. The Switch supports instance numbers 0-64 for the MGS3520 Series.
Bridge Priority	Set the priority of the Switch for the specific spanning tree instance. The lower the number, the more likely the Switch will be chosen as the root bridge within the spanning tree instance. Enter priority values between 0 and 61440 in increments of 4096 (thus valid values are 4096, 8192, 12288, 16384, 20480, 24576, 28672, 32768, 36864, 40960, 45056, 49152, 53248, 57344 and 61440).
VLAN Range	Enter the start of the VLAN ID range that you want to add or remove from the VLAN range edit area in the Start field. Enter the end of the VLAN ID range that you want to add or remove from the VLAN range edit area in the End field. Next click: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add - to add this range of VLAN(s) to be mapped to the MST instance. • Remove - to remove this range of VLAN(s) from being mapped to the MST instance. • Clear - to remove all VLAN(s) from being mapped to this MST instance.
Enabled VLAN(s)	This field displays which VLAN(s) are mapped to this MST instance.

Table 46 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to add this port to the MST instance.
Priority	Configure the priority for each port here. Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in the Switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost - see Table 39 on page 132 for more information. The default path cost value varies depending on the default path cost method you selected.
Add	Click Add to save this MST instance to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this change if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Instance	This field displays the ID of an MST instance.
VLAN	This field displays the VID (or VID ranges) to which the MST instance is mapped.
Active Port	This field display the ports configured to participate in the MST instance.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13.8.1 Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Port Configuration

To configure MSTP ports, click **Port** in the **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP** screen.

Figure 82 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP > Port

Port	Edge	Root Guard
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 47 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Edge	<p>Select this check box to configure a port as an edge port when it is directly attached to a computer. An edge port changes its initial STP port state from blocking state to forwarding state immediately without going through listening and learning states right after the port is configured as an edge port or when its link status changes.</p> <p>Note: An edge port becomes a non-edge port as soon as it receives a Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU).</p>
Root Guard	<p>Select this check box to enable root guard on this port in order to prevent the switch(es) attached to the port from becoming the root bridge.</p> <p>With root guard enabled, a port is blocked when the Switch receives a superior BPDU on it. The Switch allows traffic to pass through this port again when the switch connected to the port stops to send superior BPDUs.</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13.9 Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See [Section 13.1.5 on page 134](#) for more information on MSTP.

Note: This screen is only available after you activate MSTP on the Switch.

Figure 83 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP

The screenshot shows the 'Spanning Tree Protocol Status' page with tabs for Configuration, RSTP, MRSTP, and MSTP. The 'MSTP' tab is selected. The page title is 'Spanning Tree Protocol: MSTP'. Under the 'CST' section, there is a table comparing 'Root' and 'Our Bridge' settings. Below this is an 'Instance' table for Instance 0, showing VLAN 1-4093. At the bottom, there is a dropdown for 'MSTI' set to 1, followed by another table comparing 'Regional Root' and 'Our Bridge' settings.

Bridge	Root	Our Bridge
Bridge ID	0000-000000000000	8000-000000000000
Hello Time (second)	0	2
Max Age (second)	0	20
Forwarding Delay (second)	0	15
Cost to Bridge	0	0
Port ID	0x0000	0x0000
Configuration Name	001349000002	
Revision Number	0	
Configuration Digest	A317523DB32DA2D62	
Topology Changed Times	0	
Time Since Last Change	0	

Instance	VLAN
0	1-4093

MSTI 1

Bridge	Regional Root	Our Bridge
Bridge ID	0000-000000000000	8001-000000000000
Internal Cost	0	0
Port ID	0x0000	0x0000

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 48 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click Configuration to specify which STP mode you want to activate. Click MSTP to edit MSTP settings on the Switch.
CST	This section describes the Common Spanning Tree settings.
Bridge	Root refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). Our Bridge is this Switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for Root and Our Bridge if the Switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message.
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding).
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this Switch to the root switch.

Table 48 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Configuration Name	This field displays the configuration name for this MST region.
Revision Number	This field displays the revision number for this MST region.
Configuration Digest	A configuration digest is generated from the VLAN-MSTI mapping information. This field displays the 16-octet signature that is included in an MSTP BPDU. This field displays the digest when MSTP is activated on the system.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.
Instance:	These fields display the MSTI to VLAN mapping. In other words, which VLANs run on each spanning tree instance.
Instance	This field displays the MSTI ID.
VLAN	This field displays which VLANs are mapped to an MSTI.
MSTI	Select the MST instance settings you want to view.
Bridge	Root refers to the base of the MST instance. Our Bridge is this Switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for Root and Our Bridge if the Switch is the root switch.
Internal Cost	This is the path cost from the root port in this MST instance to the regional root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the MST instance.

CHAPTER 14

Bandwidth Control

This chapter shows you how you can cap the maximum bandwidth using the **Bandwidth Control** screen.

14.1 Bandwidth Control Overview

Bandwidth control means defining a maximum allowable bandwidth for incoming and/or out-going traffic flows on a port.

14.2 Bandwidth Control Setup

Click **Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control** in the navigation panel to bring up the screen as shown next.

Figure 84 Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control

Port	Active	Ingress Rate	Active	Egress Rate
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps
15	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	64 Kbps

The bandwidth granularity is 16 Kbps. The specified rate will be rounded up internally.

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 49 Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable bandwidth control on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to activate ingress rate limits on this port.
Ingress Rate	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the incoming traffic flow on a port.
Active	Select this check box to activate egress rate limits on this port.
Egress Rate	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the out-going traffic flow on a port.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

14.2.1 The Egress Queue Rate Screen

Click **Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control > Egress Queue Rate** in the navigation panel to bring up the screen as shown next.

You can specify each queue's maximum allowable bandwidth in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the outgoing traffic flow on a port.

Note: The sum of the egress queue rates for a port's active queues must be smaller than or equal to the maximum bandwidth allowed for the outgoing traffic flow on a port (**Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control**).

Figure 85 Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control > Egress Queue Rate

Port	Active	Q0	Active	Q1	Active	Q2	Active	Q3	Active	Q4	Active	Q5	Active	Q6	Active	Q7
*	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16
6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16
7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16
8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16
26	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16
27	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16
28	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16

The bandwidth granularity is 16 Kbps. The specified rate will be rounded up internally.

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 50 Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control > Egress Queue Rate

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Egress Queue Rate(Kbps)	
Port	This field displays the port number.
Active	Select this check box to activate egress rate limits on this queue.
Q0 ~ Q7	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the out-going traffic flow on a queue.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 15

Broadcast Storm Control

This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the broadcast storm control feature.

15.1 Broadcast Storm Control Setup

Broadcast storm control limits the number of broadcast, multicast and destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the Switch receives per second on the ports. When the maximum number of allowable broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets is reached per second, the subsequent packets are discarded. Enable this feature to reduce broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets in your network. You can specify limits for each packet type on each port.

Click **Advanced Application > Broadcast Storm Control** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 86 Advanced Application > Broadcast Storm Control

Port	Broadcast (pkt/s)	Multicast (pkt/s)	DLF (pkt/s)	Shutdown
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 51 Advanced Application > Broadcast Storm Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable traffic storm control on the Switch. Clear this check box to disable this feature.
Errdisable	<p>Select this option to turn on error disable for traffic storm control on the Switch. The Switch shuts down a port when the maximum number of allowable broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets is reached on the port.</p> <p>Click the Errdisable link to go to the Errdisable Recovery screen where you can set the port to become active automatically after a specified time interval.</p>
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Broadcast (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many broadcast packets the port receives per second.
Multicast (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many multicast packets the port receives per second.
DLF (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the port receives per second.
Shutdown	Select this option to allow the Switch to shut down the port when the specified number of allowable broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets is reached.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 16

Mirroring

This chapter discusses port mirroring setup screens.

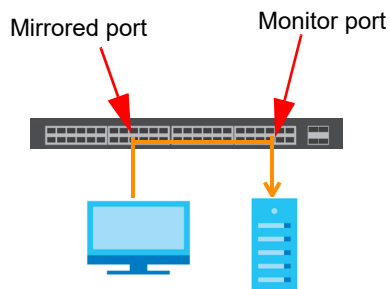
16.1 Port Mirroring Overview

Port mirroring allows you to copy a traffic flow to a monitor port (the port you copy the traffic to) in order that you can examine the traffic from the monitor port without interference.

The Switch supports both local port mirroring and remote port mirroring.

Local Port Mirroring

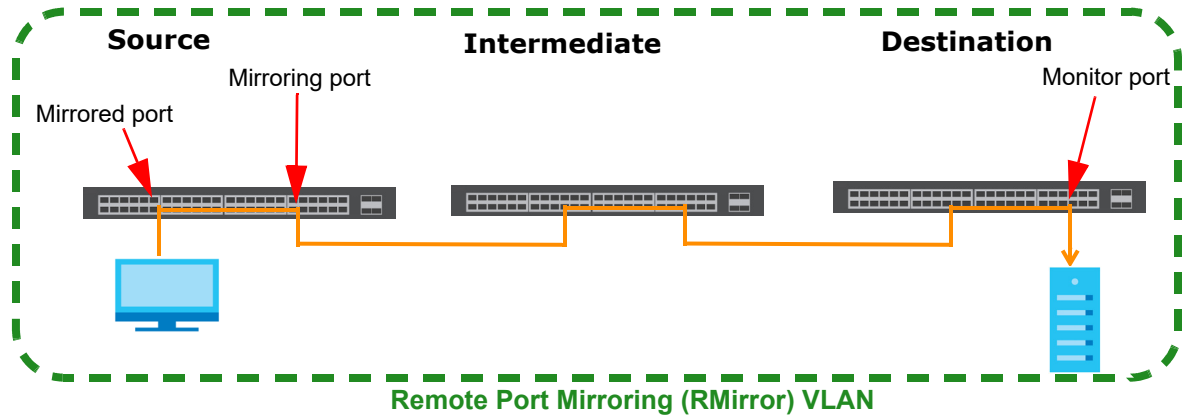
In local port mirroring, the mirrored ports (through which traffic you copy passes) and the monitor port are on the same device.



Remote Port Mirroring

In remote port mirroring (RMirror), the mirroring ports and monitor port can be on different devices in a network. You can use it to monitor multiple switches across your network. Traffic from the source device's mirrored port(s) is sent to a mirroring port for VLAN tagging and forwarded to other switch(es) in the same remote port mirroring (RMirror) VLAN. Traffic are then carried over the specified RMirror VLAN and sent to the destination device's monitor port.

Note: If the Switch is not acting as a source or destination device in remote port mirroring, you need to enable port VLAN trunking to allow traffic belonging to the specific RMirror VLAN to pass through it. Alternatively, you can configure a VLAN group for the mirrored traffic.



Port Rules in Port Mirroring

The following table shows the rule for a port in remote port mirroring. For example, a port on the source device can be a mirrored port in both RMirror VLAN 1 and RMirror VLAN 2. But when the port is the source device's mirrored port in RMirror VLAN 1, it cannot be the mirroring port or monitor port in another RMirror VLAN.

Table 52 Port Rules between Different Remote Port Mirroring VLANs

		RMirror VLAN 1		
		Source Mirrored Port	Source Mirroring Port	Destination Monitor Port
RMirror VLAN 2	Source Mirrored Port	Y	N	N
	Source Mirroring Port	N	N	N
	Destination Monitor Port	N	N	N

The following table shows the rule for a port used in both local port mirroring and remote port mirroring. For example, the RMirror mirroring port on the source device can also be used as the mirroring port in local port mirroring. But it cannot be the monitor port in local port mirroring.

Table 53 Port Rules between Remote and Local Port Mirroring

		RMirror		
		Source Mirrored Port	Source Mirroring Port	Destination Monitor Port
Local Port Mirroring	Mirrored Port	Y	N	N
	Monitor Port	N	N	N

16.2 Local Port Mirroring Screen

Click **Advanced Application > Mirroring** in the navigation panel to display the **Mirroring** screen. Use this screen to select a monitor port and specify the traffic flow to be copied to the monitor port.

Figure 87 Advanced Application > Mirroring

Port	Mirrored	Direction
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress ▼

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 54 Advanced Application > Mirroring

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate port mirroring on the Switch. Clear this check box to disable the feature.
Monitor Port	The monitor port is the port you copy the traffic to in order to examine it in more detail without interfering with the traffic flow on the original port(s). Type the port number of the monitor port.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Mirrored	Select this option to mirror the traffic on a port.
Direction	Specify the direction of the traffic to mirror by selecting from the drop-down list box. Choices are Egress (outgoing), Ingress (incoming) and Both .

Table 54 Advanced Application > Mirroring (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

16.3 RMirror-Source Screen

Use this screen to set the RMirror VLAN ID, configure the mirroring port and specify the traffic flow to be copied when the Switch is the source device in remote port mirroring.

Click the **RMirror-Source** link in the **Mirroring** screen. The following screen opens.

Figure 88 Advanced Application > Mirroring > RMirror-Source

RMirror-Source [Mirroring](#) [RMirror-Destination](#)

Active

RMirror VLAN ID

Mirroring Port

802.1 Priority

Port	Mirrored	Direction
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both

Rule Usage: 1 / 2

VLAN	Active	802.1 Priority	Mirrored Port			Mirroring Port	Delete
			Ingress	Egress	Both		
1122	Yes	2	3	4	2	1	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 55 Advanced Application > Mirroring > RMirror-Source

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable the rule. Clear this check box to disable it.
RMirror VLAN ID	Enter the ID number of the RMirror VLAN over which the mirrored traffic is forwarded.
Mirroring Port	Select the number of the port that adds the RMirror VLAN tag to all mirrored traffic and forwards traffic to other switch(es) in the same RMirror VLAN.
802.1 Priority	Specify the priority of the mirrored traffic.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Mirrored	Select this option to mirror the traffic on a port.
Direction	Specify the direction of the traffic to mirror by selecting from the drop-down list box. Choices are Egress (outgoing), Ingress (incoming) and Both .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
VLAN	This field displays the ID number of RMirror VLAN over which the mirrored traffic is forwarded.
Active	This field shows whether the rule is active or not.
802.1 Priority	This field displays the priority of the mirrored traffic.
Mirrored Port	
Ingress	This field displays the number of port(s) on which the incoming traffic is mirrored.
Egress	This field displays the number of port(s) on which the outgoing traffic is mirrored.
Both	This field displays the number of port(s) on which the incoming and outgoing traffic is mirrored.
Mirroring Port	This field displays the number of the mirroring port in this RMirror VLAN.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

16.4 RMirror-Destination Screen

Use this screen to specify the RMirror VLAN ID and configure the monitor port when the Switch is the destination device in remote port mirroring.

Click the **RMirror-Destination** link in the **Mirroring** screen. The following screen opens.

Figure 89 Advanced Application > Mirroring > RMirror-Destination

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 56 Advanced Application > Mirroring > RMirror-Destination

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable the rule. Clear this check box to disable it.
RMirror VLAN ID	Enter the ID number of the RMirror VLAN over which the mirrored traffic is forwarded.
Monitor Port	Specify the port to which you copy the traffic in order to examine it in more detail without interfering with the traffic flow on the original port(s).
Tagging	Select whether to add the RMirror VLAN tag to mirrored traffic on the monitor port.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 17

Link Aggregation

This chapter shows you how to logically aggregate physical links to form one logical, higher-bandwidth link.

17.1 Link Aggregation Overview

Link aggregation (trunking) is the grouping of physical ports into one logical higher-capacity link. You may want to trunk ports if for example, it is cheaper to use multiple lower-speed links than to under-utilize a high-speed, but more costly, single-port link.

However, the more ports you aggregate then the fewer available ports you have. A trunk group is one logical link containing multiple ports.

The beginning port of each trunk group must be physically connected to form a trunk group.

The Switch supports both static and dynamic link aggregation.

Note: In a properly planned network, it is recommended to implement static link aggregation only. This ensures increased network stability and control over the trunk groups on your Switch.

See [Section 17.6 on page 166](#) for a static port trunking example.

17.2 Dynamic Link Aggregation

The Switch adheres to the IEEE 802.3ad standard for static and dynamic (LACP) port trunking.

The Switch supports the link aggregation IEEE802.3ad standard. This standard describes the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP), which is a protocol that dynamically creates and manages trunk groups.

When you enable LACP link aggregation on a port, the port can automatically negotiate with the ports at the remote end of a link to establish trunk groups. LACP also allows port redundancy, that is, if an operational port fails, then one of the “standby” ports become operational without user intervention. Please note that:

- You must connect all ports point-to-point to the same Ethernet switch and configure the ports for LACP trunking.
- LACP only works on full-duplex links.
- All ports in the same trunk group must have the same media type, speed, duplex mode and flow control settings.

Configure trunk groups or LACP before you connect the Ethernet switch to avoid causing network topology loops.

17.2.1 Link Aggregation ID

LACP aggregation ID consists of the following information¹:

Table 57 Link Aggregation ID: Local Switch

SYSTEM PRIORITY	MAC ADDRESS	KEY	PORT PRIORITY	PORT NUMBER
0000	00-00-00-00-00-00	0000	00	0000

Table 58 Link Aggregation ID: Peer Switch

SYSTEM PRIORITY	MAC ADDRESS	KEY	PORT PRIORITY	PORT NUMBER
0000	00-00-00-00-00-00	0000	00	0000

17.3 Link Aggregation Status

Click **Advanced Application > Link Aggregation** in the navigation panel. The **Link Aggregation Status** screen displays by default. See [Section 17.1 on page 161](#) for more information.

Figure 90 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation Status

Group ID	Enabled Ports	Synchronized Ports	Aggregator ID	Criteria	Status
T1	1,2,3	-	-	src-dst-mac	Static
T2	4,5	-	[[0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000]] [[0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000]]	src-dst-mac	LACP
T3	-	-	-	src-dst-mac	-
T4	-	-	-	src-dst-mac	-
T5	-	-	-	src-dst-mac	-
T6	-	-	-	src-dst-mac	-
T7	-	-	-	src-dst-mac	-
T8	-	-	-	src-dst-mac	-

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 59 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Group ID	This field displays the group ID to identify a trunk group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
Enabled Port	These are the ports you have configured in the Link Aggregation screen to be in the trunk group. The port number(s) displays only when this trunk group is activated and there is a port belonging to this group.
Synchronized Ports	These are the ports that are currently transmitting data as one logical link in this trunk group.

1. Port Priority and Port Number are 0 as it is the aggregator ID for the trunk group, not the individual port.

Table 59 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Aggregator ID	<p>Link Aggregator ID consists of the following: system priority, MAC address, key, port priority and port number. Refer to Section 17.2.1 on page 162 for more information on this field.</p> <p>The ID displays only when there is a port belonging to this trunk group and LACP is also enabled for this group.</p>
Criteria	<p>This shows the outgoing traffic distribution algorithm used in this trunk group. Packets from the same source and/or to the same destination are sent over the same link within the trunk.</p> <p>src-mac means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's source MAC address.</p> <p>dst-mac means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's destination MAC address.</p> <p>src-dst-mac means the Switch distributes traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination MAC addresses.</p> <p>src-ip means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's source IP address.</p> <p>dst-ip means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's destination IP address.</p> <p>src-dst-ip means the Switch distributes traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination IP addresses.</p>
Status	<p>This field displays how these ports were added to the trunk group. It displays:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Static - if the ports are configured as static members of a trunk group. • LACP - if the ports are configured to join a trunk group via LACP.

17.4 Link Aggregation Setting

Click **Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting** to display the screen shown next. See [Section 17.1 on page 161](#) for more information on link aggregation.

Figure 91 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting

Group ID	Active	Criteria
T1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac ▼
T2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	src-ip ▼
T3	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac ▼
T4	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac ▼
T5	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac ▼
T6	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac ▼
T7	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac ▼
T8	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac ▼

Port	Group
1	T1 ▼
2	T1 ▼
3	T1 ▼
4	T2 ▼
5	T2 ▼
6	None ▼
7	None ▼
8	None ▼

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 60 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link Aggregation Setting	This is the only screen you need to configure to enable static link aggregation.
Group ID	The field identifies the link aggregation group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
Active	Select this option to activate a trunk group.
Criteria	<p>Select the outgoing traffic distribution type. Packets from the same source and/or to the same destination are sent over the same link within the trunk. By default, the Switch uses the src-dst-mac distribution type. If the Switch is behind a router, the packet's destination or source MAC address will be changed. In this case, set the Switch to distribute traffic based on its IP address to make sure port trunking can work properly.</p> <p>Select src-mac to distribute traffic based on the packet's source MAC address.</p> <p>Select dst-mac to distribute traffic based on the packet's destination MAC address.</p> <p>Select src-dst-mac to distribute traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination MAC addresses.</p> <p>Select src-ip to distribute traffic based on the packet's source IP address.</p> <p>Select dst-ip to distribute traffic based on the packet's destination IP address.</p> <p>Select src-dst-ip to distribute traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination IP addresses.</p>

Table 60 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number.
Group	Select the trunk group to which a port belongs. Note: When you enable the port security feature on the Switch and configure port security settings for a port, you cannot include the port in an active trunk group.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

17.5 Link Aggregation Control Protocol

Click in the **Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP** to display the screen shown next. See [Section 17.2 on page 161](#) for more information on dynamic link aggregation.

Figure 92 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP

Link Aggregation Control Protocol [Link Aggregation Setting](#)

Active

System Priority

Group ID	LACP Active
T1	<input type="checkbox"/>
T2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
T3	<input type="checkbox"/>
T4	<input type="checkbox"/>
T5	<input type="checkbox"/>
T6	<input type="checkbox"/>
T7	<input type="checkbox"/>
T8	<input type="checkbox"/>

Port	LACP Timeout
*	30 seconds
1	30 seconds
2	30 seconds
3	30 seconds
4	30 seconds
5	30 seconds
6	30 seconds
7	30 seconds
8	30 seconds

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 61 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link Aggregation Control Protocol	Note: Do not configure this screen unless you want to enable dynamic link aggregation.
Active	Select this check box to enable Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP).
System Priority	LACP system priority is a number between 1 and 65,535. The switch with the lowest system priority (and lowest port number if system priority is the same) becomes the LACP "server". The LACP "server" controls the operation of LACP setup. Enter a number to set the priority of an active port using Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP). The smaller the number, the higher the priority level.
Group ID	The field identifies the link aggregation group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
LACP Active	Select this option to enable LACP for a trunk.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
LACP Timeout	Timeout is the time interval between the individual port exchanges of LACP packets in order to check that the peer port in the trunk group is still up. If a port does not respond after three tries, then it is deemed to be "down" and is removed from the trunk. Set a short timeout (one second) for busy trunked links to ensure that disabled ports are removed from the trunk group as soon as possible. Select either 1 second or 30 seconds.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

17.6 Static Trunking Example

This example shows you how to create a static port trunk group for ports 2-5.

- 1 **Make your physical connections** - make sure that the ports that you want to belong to the trunk group are connected to the same destination. The following figure shows ports 2-5 on switch **A** connected to switch **B**.

Figure 93 Trunking Example - Physical Connections



- 2 **Configure static trunking** - Click **Advanced Application** > **Link Aggregation** > **Link Aggregation Setting**. In this screen activate trunk group **T1**, select the traffic distribution algorithm used by this group and select the ports that should belong to this group as shown in the figure below. Click **Apply** when you are done.

Figure 94 Trunking Example - Configuration Screen

Link Aggregation Setting Status [LACP](#)

Group ID	Active	Criteria
T1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T2	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T3	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T4	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T5	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T6	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T7	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T8	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac

Port	Group
1	None
2	T1
3	T1
4	T1
5	T1
6	None
7	None
8	None
9	None
10	None

EXAMPLE

Your trunk group 1 (**T1**) configuration is now complete.

CHAPTER 18

Port Authentication

This chapter describes the IEEE 802.1x and MAC authentication methods.

18.1 Port Authentication Overview

Port authentication is a way to validate access to ports on the Switch to clients based on an external server (authentication server). The Switch supports the following methods for port authentication:

- **IEEE 802.1x²** - An authentication server validates access to a port based on a username and password provided by the user.
- **MAC Authentication** - An authentication server validates access to a port based on the MAC address and password of the client.

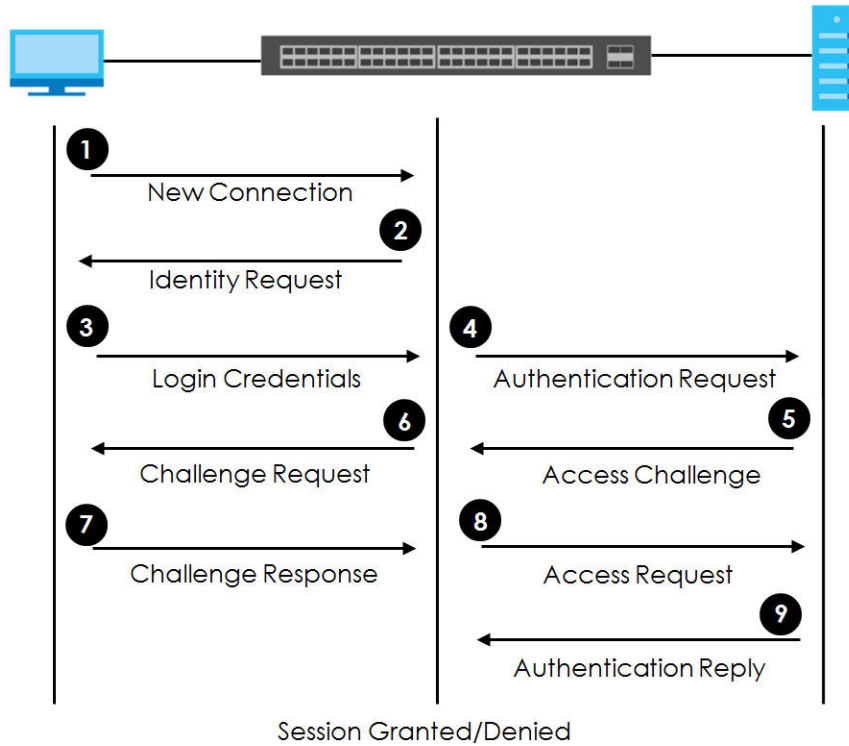
Both types of authentication use the RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service, RFC 2138, 2139) protocol to validate users. See [Section 26.1.2 on page 228](#) for more information on configuring your RADIUS server settings.

Note: If you enable IEEE 802.1x authentication and MAC authentication on the same port, the Switch performs IEEE 802.1x authentication first. If a user fails to authenticate via the IEEE 802.1x method, then access to the port is denied.

18.1.1 IEEE 802.1x Authentication

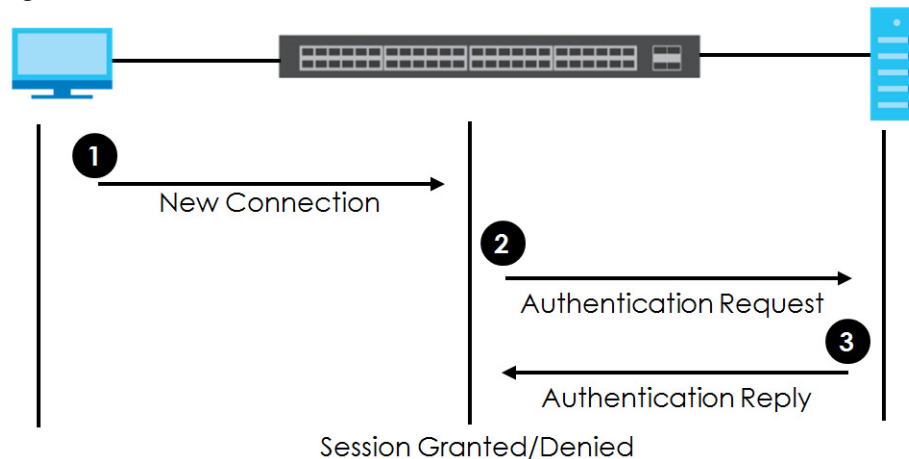
The following figure illustrates how a client connecting to an IEEE 802.1x authentication enabled port goes through a validation process. The Switch prompts the client for login information in the form of a user name and password after the client responds to its identity request. When the client provides the login credentials, the Switch sends an authentication request to a RADIUS server. The RADIUS server validates whether this client is allowed access to the port.

2. At the time of writing, IEEE 802.1x is not supported by all operating systems. See your operating system documentation. If your operating system does not support 802.1x, then you may need to install 802.1x client software.

Figure 95 IEEE 802.1x Authentication Process

18.1.2 MAC Authentication

MAC authentication works in a very similar way to IEEE 802.1x authentication. The main difference is that the Switch does not prompt the client for login credentials. The login credentials are based on the source MAC address of the client connecting to a port on the Switch along with a password configured specifically for MAC authentication on the Switch.

Figure 96 MAC Authentication Process

18.2 Port Authentication Configuration

To enable port authentication, first activate the port authentication method(s) you want to use (both on the Switch and the port(s)), then configure the RADIUS server settings in the **AAA > Radius Server Setup** screen.

To activate a port authentication method, click **Advanced Application > Port Authentication** in the navigation panel. Select a port authentication method in the screen that appears.

Figure 97 Advanced Application > Port Authentication



18.2.1 Activate IEEE 802.1x Security

Use this screen to activate IEEE 802.1x security. In the **Port Authentication** screen click **802.1x** to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 98 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x

Port	Active	Max-Req	Reauth	Reauth-period secs	Quiet-period secs	Tx-period secs	Supp-Timeout secs
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		On				
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On	3600	60	30	30
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On	3600	60	30	30
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On	3600	60	30	30
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On	3600	60	30	30
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On	3600	60	30	30
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On	3600	60	30	30
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On	3600	60	30	30
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On	3600	60	30	30
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On	3600	60	30	30
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On	3600	60	30	30
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On	3600	60	30	30

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

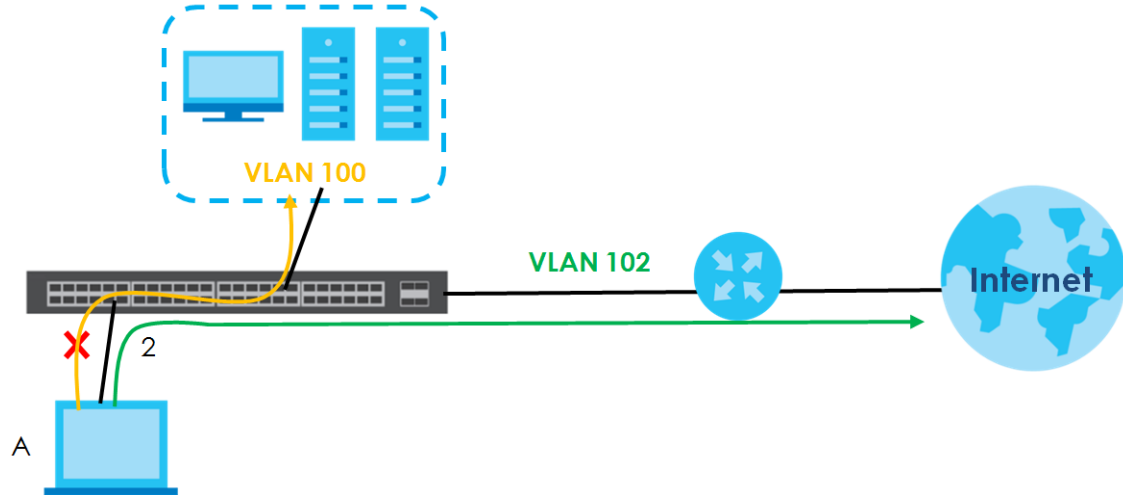
Table 62 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to permit 802.1x authentication on the Switch. Note: You must first enable 802.1x authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to permit 802.1x authentication on this port. You must first allow 802.1x authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.
Max-Req	Specify the number of times the Switch tries to authenticate client(s) before sending unresponsive ports to the Guest VLAN. This is set to 2 by default. That is, the Switch attempts to authenticate a client twice. If the client does not respond to the first authentication request, the Switch tries again. If the client still does not respond to the second request, the Switch sends the client to the Guest VLAN. The client needs to send a new request to be authenticated by the Switch again.
Reauth	Specify if a subscriber has to periodically re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port.
Reauth-period	Specify the length of time required to pass before a client has to re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port.
Quiet-period	Specify the number of seconds the port remains in the HELD state and rejects further authentication requests from the connected client after a failed authentication exchange.
Tx-period	Specify the number of seconds the Switch waits for client's response before re-sending an identity request to the client.
Supp-Timeout	Specify the number of seconds the Switch waits for client's response to a challenge request before sending another request.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

18.2.2 Guest VLAN

When 802.1x port authentication is enabled on the Switch and its ports, clients that do not have the correct credentials are blocked from using the port(s). You can configure your Switch to have one VLAN that acts as a guest VLAN. If you enable the guest VLAN (**102** in the example) on a port (**2** in the example), the user (**A** in the example) that is not IEEE 802.1x capable or fails to enter the correct username and password can still access the port, but traffic from the user is forwarded to the guest VLAN. That is, unauthenticated users can have access to limited network resources in the same guest VLAN, such as the Internet. The rights granted to the Guest VLAN depends on how the network administrator configures switches or routers with the guest network feature.

Figure 99 Guest VLAN Example



Use this screen to enable and assign a guest VLAN to a port. In the **Port Authentication > 802.1x** screen click **Guest Vlan** to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 100 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x > Guest VLAN

The screenshot shows the 'Guest Vlan' configuration interface. At the top, there is a title bar with a gear icon, the text 'Guest Vlan', and a link '802.1x'. Below the title bar is a table with the following columns: 'Port', 'Active', 'Guest Vlan', 'Host-mode', and 'Multi-Secure Num'. The table contains rows for ports 1 through 28. Each row has an 'Active' checkbox (all are unchecked), a 'Guest Vlan' input field containing the number '1', a 'Host-mode' dropdown menu set to 'Multi-Host', and a 'Multi-Secure Num' input field containing the number '1'. At the bottom of the table, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Cancel'.

Port	Active	Guest Vlan	Host-mode	Multi-Secure Num
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		Multi-Host	
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
...				
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 63 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x > Guest VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Active	<p>Select this check box to enable the guest VLAN feature on this port.</p> <p>Clients that fail authentication are placed in the guest VLAN and can receive limited services.</p>
Guest Vlan	<p>A guest VLAN is a pre-configured VLAN on the Switch that allows non-authenticated users to access limited network resources through the Switch. You must also enable IEEE 802.1x authentication on the Switch and the associated ports. Enter the number that identifies the guest VLAN.</p> <p>Make sure this is a VLAN recognized in your network.</p>
Host-mode	<p>Specify how the Switch authenticates users when more than one user connect to the port (using a hub).</p> <p>Select Multi-Host to authenticate only the first user that connects to this port. If the first user enters the correct credential, any other users are allowed to access the port without authentication. If the first user fails to enter the correct credential, they are all put in the guest VLAN. Once the first user who did authentication logs out or disconnects from the port, rest of the users are blocked until a user does the authentication process again.</p> <p>Select Multi-Secure to authenticate each user that connects to this port.</p>
Multi-Secure Num	If you set Host-mode to Multi-Secure , specify the maximum number of users (between 1 and 5) that the Switch will authenticate on this port.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

18.2.3 Activate MAC Authentication

Use this screen to activate MAC authentication. In the **Port Authentication** screen click **MAC Authentication** to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 101 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > MAC Authentication

Port	Active
*	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 64 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > MAC Authentication

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to permit MAC authentication on the Switch. Note: You must first enable MAC authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.
Name Prefix	Type the prefix that is appended to all MAC addresses sent to the RADIUS server for authentication. You can enter up to 32 printable ASCII characters. If you leave this field blank, then only the MAC address of the client is forwarded to the RADIUS server.
Password	Type the password the Switch sends along with the MAC address of a client for authentication with the RADIUS server. You can enter up to 32 printable ASCII characters.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time before the Switch allows a client MAC address that fails authentication to try and authenticate again. Maximum time is 3000 seconds. When a client fails MAC authentication, its MAC address is learned by the MAC address table with a status of denied. The timeout period you specify here is the time the MAC address entry stays in the MAC address table until it is cleared. If you specify 0 for the timeout value, then this entry will not be deleted from the MAC address table. Note: If the Agging Time in the Switch Setup screen is set to a lower value, then it supersedes this setting. See Section 8.4 on page 87 .
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to permit MAC authentication on this port. You must first allow MAC authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.

Table 64 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > MAC Authentication (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 19

Port Security

This chapter shows you how to set up port security.

19.1 About Port Security

Port security allows only packets with dynamically learned MAC addresses and/or configured static MAC addresses to pass through a port on the Switch. The Switch can learn up to 16K MAC addresses in total with no limit on individual ports other than the sum cannot exceed 16K.

For maximum port security, enable this feature, disable MAC address learning and configure static MAC address(es) for a port. It is not recommended you disable port security together with MAC address learning as this will result in many broadcasts. By default, MAC address learning is still enabled even though the port security is not activated.

19.2 Port Security Setup

Click **Advanced Application > Port Security** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 102 Advanced Application > Port Security

Port Security
MAC Freeze :

Port List MAC freeze

Port Security :

Active

[Errdisable](#) Shutdown the port when the learned MAC is out of limit

Port	Active	Address Learning	Limited Number of Learned MAC Address	Shutdown
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 65 Advanced Application > Port Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port List	Enter the number of the port(s) (separated by a comma) on which you want to enable port security and disable MAC address learning. After you click MAC freeze , all previously learned MAC addresses on the specified port(s) will become static MAC addresses and display in the Static MAC Forwarding screen.
MAC freeze	Click MAC freeze to have the Switch automatically select the Active check boxes and clear the Address Learning check boxes only for the ports specified in the Port list .
Active	Select this option to enable port security on the Switch.
Errdisable	Select this option to turn on error disable for port security on the Switch. The Switch shuts down a port when the maximum number of MAC addresses that may be learned on a port is reached. Click the Errdisable link to go to the Errdisable Recovery screen where you can set the port to become active automatically after a specified time interval.
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some of the settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

Table 65 Advanced Application > Port Security (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	<p>Select this check box to enable the port security feature on this port. The Switch forwards packets whose MAC address(es) is in the MAC address table on this port. Packets with no matching MAC address(es) are dropped.</p> <p>Clear this check box to disable the port security feature. The Switch forwards all packets on this port.</p>
Address Learning	MAC address learning reduces outgoing broadcast traffic. For MAC address learning to occur on a port, the port itself must be active with address learning enabled.
Limited Number of Learned MAC Address	Use this field to limit the number of (dynamic) MAC addresses that may be learned on a port. For example, if you set this field to "5" on port 2, then only the devices with these five learned MAC addresses may access port 2 at any one time. A sixth device must wait until one of the five learned MAC addresses ages out. MAC address aging out time can be set in the Switch Setup screen. The valid range is from "0" to "16384". "0" means this feature is disabled.
Shutdown	Select this option to allow the Switch to shut down the port when the specified number of MAC addresses that may be learned on a port is reached.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 20

Range Profile

This chapter shows you how to create range profiles.

20.1 Range Profile Overview

A profile represents a group of saved settings that you can use across any number of screens. A range profile allows you to define a specific range of ports, IP addresses, VLANs or socket ports.

20.2 Range Profile Screen

The **Range Profile** screens allow you to access and configure profiles for a range of VLANs, IP addresses, ports and socket ports. Click **Advanced Application > Range Profile** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 103 Advanced Application > Range Profile



20.3 VLAN Range Profile

Use this screen to view, manage and create VLAN range profiles. In the **Range Profile** screen, click **VLAN Range** to display the screen as shown.

Figure 104 Advanced Application > Range Profile > VLAN Range

The screenshot shows the 'VLAN Range' configuration interface. At the top, there's a breadcrumb 'Advanced Application > Range Profile > VLAN Range'. The main area has a header 'VLAN Range' and 'Range Profile'. Below this, there are two input fields: 'Name' and 'VLAN-ID'. The 'VLAN-ID' field is split into two parts by a hyphen, representing a range. Below the input fields are 'Add' and 'Cancel' buttons. A 'Rule Usage: 0 / 16' indicator is shown. At the bottom, there is a table with columns: Index, Name, VLAN-ID, Referenced, and Delete. Below the table are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 66 Advanced Application > Range Profile > VLAN Range

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this profile for identifying purposes.
VLAN-ID	Enter the first and last VLAN ID number to specify a range of VLANs.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this change if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This field displays the index number of the profile. Click an index number to change the settings.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this profile.
VLAN-ID	This field displays the ID number of the VLANs in this profile.
Referenced	This field displays whether this profile is in use by a feature, such as classifier.
Delete	Check the profile(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

20.4 Port Range Profile

Use this screen to view, manage and create port range profiles. In the **Range Profile** screen, click **Port Range** to display the screen as shown.

Figure 105 Advanced Application > Range Profile > Port Range

Port Range Range Profile

Name

Port Number

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Rule Usage: 1 / 10

Index	Name	Port Number	Referenced	Delete
1	portrange1	25-28	No	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 67 Advanced Application > Range Profile > Port Range

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this profile for identifying purposes.
Port Number	Select the number of ports you want to include in this profile.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this change if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This field displays the index number of the profile. Click an index number to change the settings.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this profile.
Port Number	This field displays the number of ports in this profile.
Referenced	This field displays whether this profile is in use by a feature, such as classifier.
Delete	Check the profile(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

20.5 IP Address Range Profile

Use this screen to view, manage and create IP address range profiles. In the **Range Profile** screen, click **IP Address Range** to display the screen as shown.

Figure 106 Advanced Application > Range Profile > IP Address Range

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 68 Advanced Application > Range Profile > IP Address Range

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this profile for identifying purposes.
Type	Select to specify the source or destination IP addresses.
IP Address	Enter the first and last IP address to specify a range of IP addresses.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this change if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This field displays the index number of the profile. Click an index number to change the settings.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this profile.
Type	This field displays the type of the IP address(es) in this profile.
IP Address	This field displays the range of IP addresses defined in this profile.
Referenced	This field displays whether this profile is in use by a feature, such as classifier.
Delete	Check the profile(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

20.6 Socket-Port Range Profile

Use this screen to view, manage and create socket port range profiles. In the **Range Profile** screen, click **Socket-port Range** to display the screen as shown.

Figure 107 Advanced Application > Range Profile > Socket-port Range

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 69 Advanced Application > Range Profile > Socket-port Range

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this profile for identifying purposes.
Type	Select to specify the source or destination socket port numbers.
IP Address	Enter the first and last socket port numbers to specify a range of socket port numbers.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this change if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This field displays the index number of the profile. Click an index number to change the settings.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this profile.
Type	This field displays the type of the socket ports in this profile.
Socket-Port	This field displays the range of socket ports defined in this profile.
Referenced	This field displays whether this profile is in use by a feature, such as classifier.
Delete	Check the profile(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 21

Classifier

This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the packet classifier on the Switch.

21.1 About the Classifier and QoS

Quality of Service (QoS) refers to both a network's ability to deliver data with minimum delay, and the networking methods used to control the use of bandwidth. Without QoS, all traffic data is equally likely to be dropped when the network is congested. This can cause a reduction in network performance and make the network inadequate for time-critical application such as video-on-demand.

A classifier groups traffic into data flows according to specific criteria such as the source address, destination address, source port number, destination port number or incoming port number. For example, you can configure a classifier to select traffic from the same protocol port (such as Telnet) to form a flow.

Configure QoS on the Switch to group and prioritize application traffic and fine-tune network performance. Setting up QoS involves two separate steps:

- 1 Configure classifiers to sort traffic into different flows.
- 2 Configure policy rules to define actions to be performed for a classified traffic flow (refer to [Chapter 22 on page 190](#) to configure policy rules).

21.2 Configuring the Classifier

Use the **Classifier** screen to define the classifiers. After you define the classifier, you can specify actions (or policy) to act upon the traffic that matches the rules. To configure policy rules, refer to [Chapter 22 on page 190](#).

Click **Advanced Application > Classifier** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 108 Advanced Application > Classifier

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 70 Advanced Application > Classifier

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable this rule.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this rule for identifying purposes.

Table 70 Advanced Application > Classifier (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Layer 2	
Specify the fields below to configure a layer-2 classifier.	
VLAN	<p>Select Any to classify traffic from any VLAN.</p> <p>Select Single and specify a source VLAN ID in the field provided.</p> <p>Select Range and choose a pre-defined VLAN range profile.</p>
Priority	Select Any to classify traffic from any priority level or select the second option and specify a priority level in the field provided.
Ethernet Type	Select an Ethernet type or select Others and enter the Ethernet type number in hexadecimal value. Refer to Table 72 on page 188 for information.
Source	
MAC Address	<p>Select Any to apply the rule to all MAC addresses.</p> <p>To specify a source, select MAC/Mask to enter the source MAC address of the packet in valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs) and type the mask for the specified MAC address to determine which bits a packet's MAC address should match.</p> <p>Enter "f" for each bit of the specified MAC address that the traffic's MAC address should match. Enter "0" for the bit(s) of the matched traffic's MAC address, which can be of any hexadecimal character(s). For example, if you set the MAC address to 00:13:49:00:00:00 and the mask to ff:ff:ff:00:00:00, a packet with a MAC address of 00:13:49:12:34:56 matches this criteria. If you leave the Mask field blank, the Switch automatically sets the mask to ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff.</p>
Port	<p>Select Any to apply the rule to all ports.</p> <p>Select Single and specify a port number to which the rule should be applied.</p> <p>Select Range and select a configured port range profile to apply the rule to that range of ports. Click Port Range to go to the port range profile configuration screen.</p>
Destination	
MAC Address	<p>Select Any to apply the rule to all MAC addresses.</p> <p>To specify a destination, select MAC/Mask to enter the destination MAC address of the packet in valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs) and type the mask for the specified MAC address to determine which bits a packet's MAC address should match.</p> <p>Enter "f" for each bit of the specified MAC address that the traffic's MAC address should match. Enter "0" for the bit(s) of the matched traffic's MAC address, which can be of any hexadecimal character(s). For example, if you set the MAC address to 00:13:49:00:00:00 and the mask to ff:ff:ff:00:00:00, a packet with a MAC address of 00:13:49:12:34:56 matches this criteria. If you leave the Mask field blank, the Switch automatically sets the mask to ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff.</p>
Layer 3	
Specify the fields below to configure a layer-3 classifier.	
DSCP/ToS	<p>Select DSCP and Any to classify traffic from any DSCP or select a DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number between 0 and 63 in the field provided.</p> <p>Select ToS and Any to classify traffic from any ToS or select an IP Precedence (the first 3 bits of the 8-bit ToS field) value in the first field next to the ToS option and a Type of Service (the last 5 bits of the 8-bit ToS field) value in the second field.</p>
IP Protocol	<p>Select an IP protocol type or select Others and enter the protocol number in decimal value. Refer to Table 73 on page 188 for more information.</p> <p>You may select Establish Only for TCP protocol type. This means that the Switch will pick out the packets that are sent to establish TCP connections.</p>

Table 70 Advanced Application > Classifier (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv6 Next Header	Select an IPv6 protocol type or select Others and enter an 8-bit next header in the IPv6 packet. The Next Header field is similar to the IPv4 Protocol field. The IPv6 protocol number ranges from 1 to 255. You may select Establish Only for TCP protocol type. This means that the Switch will identify packets that initiate or acknowledge (establish) TCP connections.
Source	
IP Address	Select Prefix to enter a source IP address and specify the address prefix by entering the number of ones in the subnet mask. Otherwise, select Range and choose a predefined source IP address range profile.
Socket Number	Note: You must select either UDP or TCP in the IP Protocol field before you configure the socket numbers. Select Any to apply the rule to all TCP/UDP protocol port numbers. Select Single and enter a TCP/UDP protocol port number. Select Range and choose a pre-defined socket port range profile.
Destination	
IP Address	Select Prefix to enter a destination IP address and specify the address prefix by entering the number of ones in the subnet mask. Otherwise, select Range and choose a predefined destination IP address range profile.
Socket Number	Note: You must select either UDP or TCP in the IP Protocol field before you configure the socket numbers. Select Any to apply the rule to all TCP/UDP protocol port numbers. Select Single and enter a TCP/UDP protocol port number. Select Range and choose a pre-defined socket port range profile.
Add	Click Add to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's runtime memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click Clear to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

21.3 Viewing and Editing Classifier Configuration

To view a summary of the classifier configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Classifier** screen. To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

Note: When two rules conflict with each other, a higher layer rule has priority over a lower layer rule.

Figure 109 Advanced Application > Classifier: Summary Table

Rule Usage: 0 / 192			
Index	Active	Name	Rule
Delete Cancel			

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 71 Classifier: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rule Usage	This field displays how many rules have been configured on the Switch.
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to edit the rule.
Active	This field displays Yes when the rule is activated and No when it is deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule. This is for identification purposes only.
Rule	This field displays a summary of the classifier rule's settings.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

The following table shows some other common Ethernet types and the corresponding protocol number.

Table 72 Common Ethernet Types and Protocol Number

ETHERNET TYPE	PROTOCOL NUMBER
IP ETHII	0800
X.75 Internet	0801
NBS Internet	0802
ECMA Internet	0803
Chaosnet	0804
X.25 Level 3	0805
XNS Compat	0807
Banyan Systems	0BAD
BBN Simnet	5208
IBM SNA	80D5
AppleTalk AARP	80F3

Some of the most common IP ports are:

Table 73 Common IP Ports

PORT NUMBER	PORT NAME
21	FTP
23	Telnet
25	SMTP
53	DNS
80	HTTP
110	POP3

21.4 Classifier Example

The following screen shows an example of configuring a classifier that identifies all traffic from MAC address 00:50:ba:ad:4f:81 on port 2.

Figure 110 Classifier: Example

The screenshot shows the 'Classifier' configuration window. The 'Active' checkbox is checked. The name is 'Example'. The configuration is divided into Layer 2 and Layer 3 sections.

Layer 2:

- VLAN: Any, Single
- Priority: Any, 0
- Ethernet Type: All, Others
- Source MAC Address: MAC 00 : 50 : ba : ad : 4f : 81, Any
- Source /Mask: ff : ff : ff : 00 : 00 : 00
- Port: Single 2, Any
- Destination MAC Address: Any, MAC
- Destination /Mask: : : : : :
- DSCP/ToS: DSCP Any, ToS Any (Precedence, ToS)
- IP Protocol: All, Others (Dec)
- IPv6 Next Header: All, Others (Dec)

Layer 3:

- Source IP Address: Prefix
- Source Socket Number: Any, Single
- Destination IP Address: Prefix
- Destination Socket Number: Any, Single

Buttons: Add, Cancel, Clear

After you have configured a classifier, you can configure a policy to define action(s) on the classified traffic flow. See [Chapter 22 on page 190](#) for information on configuring a policy rule.

CHAPTER 22

Policy Rule

This chapter shows you how to configure policy rules.

22.1 Policy Rules Overview

A classifier distinguishes traffic into flows based on the configured criteria (refer to [Chapter 21 on page 184](#) for more information). A policy rule ensures that a traffic flow gets the requested treatment in the network.

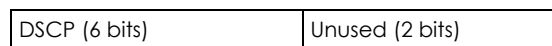
22.1.1 DiffServ

DiffServ (Differentiated Services) is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

22.1.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (TOS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 2-bit unused field and a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels. The following figure illustrates the DS field.

DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.



The DSCP value determines the forwarding behavior, the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different kinds of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

22.2 Configuring Policy Rules

You must first configure a classifier in the **Classifier** screen. Refer to [Section 21.2 on page 184](#) for more information.

Click **Advanced Applications > Policy Rule** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 111 Advanced Application > Policy Rule

The screenshot shows the 'Policy Rule' configuration interface. At the top, there is a 'Policy' header with a blue bar. Below it, the 'Active' checkbox is unchecked. The 'Name' field is empty. The 'Classifier(s)' field is empty. The 'Parameters' section includes 'Egress Port' (1), 'Priority' (0), 'DSCP' (empty), and 'TOS' (0). The 'Action' section has radio buttons for 'Forwarding' (No change selected), 'Priority' (No change selected), and 'Diffserv' (No change selected). There are also checkboxes for 'Outgoing' (Send the packet to the egress port) and 'Rate Limit' (Enable). At the bottom, there are 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 74 Advanced Application > Policy Rule

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable the policy.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes.
Classifier(s)	This field displays the active classifier(s) you configure in the Classifier screen. Select the classifier(s) to which this policy rule applies. To select more than one classifier, press [SHIFT] and select the choices at the same time.
Parameters	Set the fields below for this policy. You only have to set the field(s) that is related to the action(s) you configure in the Action field.
General	

Table 74 Advanced Application > Policy Rule (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Egress Port	Type the number of an outgoing port.
Priority	Specify a priority level.
DSCP	Specify a DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number between 0 and 63.
TOS	Specify the type of service (TOS) priority level.
Rate Limit	You can configure the desired bandwidth available to a traffic flow.
Bandwidth	Specify the bandwidth in kilobit per second (Kbps). Enter a number between 1 and 1000000.
Action	
Specify the action(s) the Switch takes on the associated classified traffic flow.	
Forwarding	Select No change to forward the packets. Select Discard the packet to drop the packets. Select Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping to retain the frames that were marked to be dropped before.
Priority	Select No change to keep the priority setting of the frames. Select Set the packet's 802.1p priority and send the packet to priority queue to replace the packet's 802.1p priority field with the value you set in the Priority field. Then put the packets in the designated queue.
Diffserv	Select No change to keep the TOS and/or DSCP fields in the packets. Select Set the packet's TOS field to set the TOS field with the value you configure in the TOS field. Select Set the Diffserv Codepoint field in the frame to set the DSCP field with the value you configure in the DSCP field.
Outgoing	Select Send the packet to the egress port to send the packet to the egress port.
Rate Limit	Select Enable to activate bandwidth limitation on the traffic flow(s).
Add	Click Add to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click Clear to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

22.3 Viewing and Editing Policy Configuration

To view a summary of the classifier configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Policy** screen. To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

Figure 112 Advanced Application > Policy Rule: Summary Table

Rule Usage: 0 / 192			
Index	Active	Name	Classifier(s)
Delete			
Cancel			

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 75 Policy: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rule Usage	This field displays how many rules have been configured on the Switch.
Index	This field displays the policy index number. Click an index number to edit the policy.
Active	This field displays Yes when policy is activated and No when is it deactivated.
Name	This field displays the name you have assigned to this policy.
Classifier(s)	This field displays the name(s) of the classifier to which this policy applies.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

22.4 Policy Example

The figure below shows an example **Policy** screen where you configure a policy to limit bandwidth on a traffic flow classified using the **Example** classifier (refer to [Section 21.4 on page 188](#)).

Figure 113 Policy Example

Policy		
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Name	Test	
Classifier(s)	Example	
Parameters	General	
	Rate Limit	
	Bandwidth	10000 Kbps
	Egress Port	1
	Priority	0
DSCP		
TOS	0	
Action	Forwarding	
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No change	
	<input type="radio"/> Discard the packet	
	<input type="radio"/> Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping	
	Priority	
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No change	
	<input type="radio"/> Set the packet's 802.1p priority and send the packet to priority queue	
	Diffserv	
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No change	
	<input type="radio"/> Set the packet's TOS field	
<input type="radio"/> Set the Diffserv Codepoint field in the frame		
Outgoing		
<input type="checkbox"/> Send the packet to the egress port		
Rate Limit		
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable		
EXAMPLE		
<input checked="" type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/>		

CHAPTER 23

Queuing Method

This chapter introduces the queuing methods supported.

23.1 Queuing Method Overview

Queuing is used to help solve performance degradation when there is network congestion. Use the **Queuing Method** screen to configure queuing algorithms for outgoing traffic. See also **Priority Queue Assignment** in **Switch Setup** and **802.1p Priority** in **Port Setup** for related information.

Queuing algorithms allow switches to maintain separate queues for packets from each individual source or flow and prevent a source from monopolizing the bandwidth.

23.1.1 Strictly Priority Queuing

Strictly Priority Queuing (SPQ) services queues based on priority only. As traffic comes into the Switch, traffic on the highest priority queue, Q7 is transmitted first. When that queue empties, traffic on the next highest-priority queue, Q6 is transmitted until Q6 empties, and then traffic is transmitted on Q5 and so on. If higher priority queues never empty, then traffic on lower priority queues never gets sent. SP does not automatically adapt to changing network requirements.

23.1.2 Weighted Fair Queuing

Weighted Fair Queuing is used to guarantee each queue's minimum bandwidth based on its bandwidth weight (the number you configure in the **Weight** field) when there is traffic congestion. WFQ is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. Queues with larger weights get more guaranteed bandwidth than queues with smaller weights. By default, the weight for Q0 is 1, for Q1 is 2, for Q2 is 3, and so on.

The weights range from 1 to 15 and the actual guaranteed bandwidth is calculated as follows:

$$2^{(\text{Weight} - 1)} \times 10 \text{ KB}$$

If the weight setting is 5, the actual quantum guaranteed to the associated queue would be as follows:

$$2^4 \times 10 \text{ KB} = 160 \text{ KB}$$

23.1.3 Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR)

Round Robin Scheduling services queues on a rotating basis and is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. A queue is given an amount of bandwidth irrespective of the incoming traffic on that port. This queue then moves to the back of the list. The next queue is given an equal amount of bandwidth, and then moves to the end of the list; and so on, depending on the number of queues being used. This works in a looping fashion until a queue is empty.

Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) uses the same algorithm as round robin scheduling, but services queues based on their priority and queue weight (the number you configure in the queue **Weight** field) rather than a fixed amount of bandwidth. WRR is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights. This queuing mechanism is highly efficient in that it divides any available bandwidth across the different traffic queues and returns to queues that have not yet emptied.

23.2 Configuring Queuing

Click **Advanced Application > Queuing Method** in the navigation panel.

Figure 114 Advanced Application > Queuing Method

Port	Method	Weight								Hybrid-SPQ Lowest-Queue
		Q0	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q5	Q6	Q7	
*	SPQ									None
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None
2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None
3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None
4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None
5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None
6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None
8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 76 Advanced Application > Queuing Method

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This label shows the port you are configuring.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Method	<p>Select SPQ (Strictly Priority Queuing), WFQ (Weighted Fair Queuing) or WRR (Weighted Round Robin).</p> <p>Strictly Priority services queues based on priority only. When the highest priority queue empties, traffic on the next highest-priority queue begins. Q7 has the highest priority and Q0 the lowest.</p> <p>Weighted Fair Queuing is used to guarantee each queue's minimum bandwidth based on their bandwidth weight (the number you configure in the Weight field). Queues with larger weights get more guaranteed bandwidth than queues with smaller weights.</p> <p>Weighted Round Robin Scheduling services queues on a rotating basis based on their queue weight (the number you configure in the queue Weight field). Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights.</p>
Weight Q0-Q7	When you select WFQ or WRR enter the queue weight here. Bandwidth is divided across the different traffic queues according to their weights.
Hybrid- SPQ Lowest- Queue	<p>This field is applicable only when you select WFQ or WRR.</p> <p>Select a queue (Q0 to Q7) to have the Switch use SPQ to service the subsequent queue(s) after and including the specified queue. For example, if you select Q5, the Switch services traffic on Q5, Q6 and Q7 using SPQ.</p> <p>Select None to always use WFQ or WRR.</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 24

VLAN Stacking

This chapter shows you how to configure VLAN stacking on your Switch. See the chapter on VLANs for more background information on Virtual LAN.

24.1 VLAN Stacking Overview

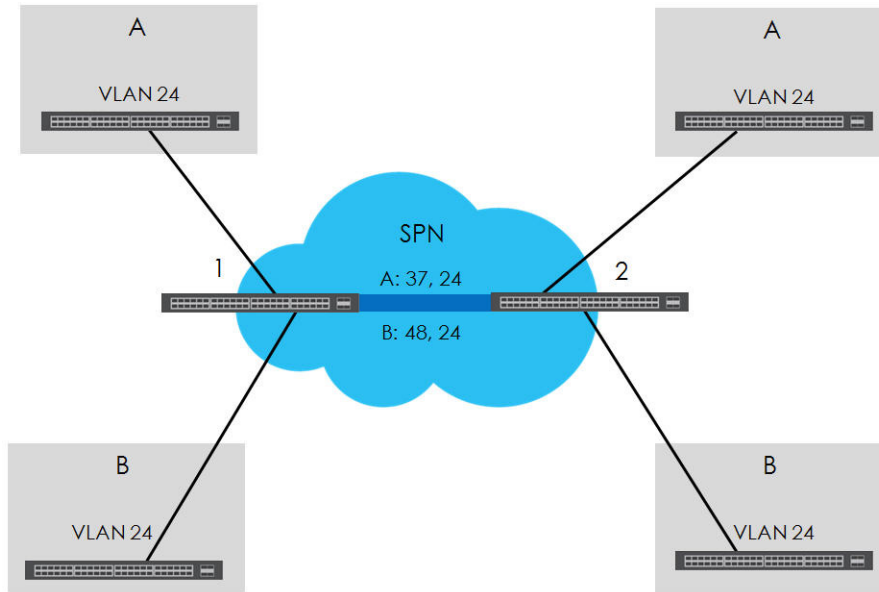
A service provider can use VLAN stacking to allow it to distinguish multiple customers VLANs, even those with the same (customer-assigned) VLAN ID, within its network.

Use VLAN stacking to add an outer VLAN tag to the inner IEEE 802.1Q tagged frames that enter the network. By tagging the tagged frames ("double-tagged" frames), the service provider can manage up to 4,094 VLAN groups with each group containing up to 4,094 customer VLANs. This allows a service provider to provide different service, based on specific VLANs, for many different customers.

A service provider's customers may require a range of VLANs to handle multiple applications. A service provider's customers can assign their own inner VLAN tags on ports for these applications. The service provider can assign an outer VLAN tag for each customer. Therefore, there is no VLAN tag overlap among customers, so traffic from different customers is kept separate.

24.1.1 VLAN Stacking Example

In the following example figure, both **A** and **B** are Service Provider's Network (SPN) customers with VPN tunnels between their head offices and branch offices respectively. Both have an identical VLAN tag for their VLAN group. The service provider can separate these two VLANs within its network by adding tag 37 to distinguish customer **A** and tag 48 to distinguish customer **B** at edge device **1** and then stripping those tags at edge device **2** as the data frames leave the network.

Figure 115 VLAN Stacking Example

24.2 VLAN Stacking Port Roles

Each port can have three VLAN stacking “roles”, **Normal**, **Access Port** and **Tunnel Port** (the latter is for Gigabit ports only).

- Select **Normal** for “regular” (non-VLAN stacking) IEEE 802.1Q frame switching.
- Select **Access Port** for ingress ports on the service provider’s edge devices (**1** and **2** in the VLAN stacking example figure). The incoming frame is treated as “untagged”, so a second VLAN tag (outer VLAN tag) can be added.

Note: Static VLAN **Tx Tagging** MUST be disabled on a port where you choose **Normal** or **Access Port**.

- Select **Tunnel Port** (available for Gigabit ports only) for egress ports at the edge of the service provider’s network. All VLANs belonging to a customer can be aggregated into a single service provider’s VLAN (using the outer VLAN tag defined by the Service Provider’s (SP) VLAN ID (VID)).

Note: Static VLAN **Tx Tagging** MUST be enabled on a port where you choose **Tunnel Port**.

24.3 VLAN Tag Format

A VLAN tag (service provider VLAN stacking or customer IEEE 802.1Q) consists of the following three fields.

Table 77 VLAN Tag Format

Type	Priority	VID
------	----------	-----

Type is a standard Ethernet type code identifying the frame and indicates that whether the frame carries IEEE 802.1Q tag information. **SP TPID** (Service Provider Tag Protocol Identifier) is the service provider VLAN stacking tag type. Many vendors use 0x8100 or 0x9100.

TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier) is the customer IEEE 802.1Q tag.

- If the VLAN stacking port role is **Access Port**, then the Switch adds the **SP TPID** tag to all incoming frames on the service provider's edge devices (1 and 2 in the VLAN stacking example figure).
- If the VLAN stacking port role is **Tunnel Port**, then the Switch only adds the **SP TPID** tag to all incoming frames on the service provider's edge devices (1 and 2 in the VLAN stacking example figure) that have an **SP TPID** different to the one configured on the Switch. (If an incoming frame's **SP TPID** is the same as the one configured on the Switch, then the Switch will not add the tag.)

Priority refers to the IEEE 802.1p standard that allows the service provider to prioritize traffic based on the class of service (CoS) the customer has paid for.

- On the Switch, configure priority level of the inner IEEE 802.1Q tag in the **Port Setup** screen.
- "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.

VID is the VLAN ID. **SP VID** is the VID for the second (service provider's) VLAN tag.

24.3.1 Frame Format

The frame format for an untagged Ethernet frame, a single-tagged 802.1Q frame (customer) and a "double-tagged" 802.1Q frame (service provider) is shown next.

Configure the fields as highlighted in the Switch **VLAN Stacking** screen.

Table 78 Single and Double Tagged 802.1Q Frame Format

						DA	SA	Len/Etype	Data	FCS	Untagged Ethernet frame
			DA	SA	TPID	Priority	VID	Len/Etype	Data	FCS	IEEE 802.1Q customer tagged frame
DA	SA	SPTPID	Priority	VID	TPID	Priority	VID	Len/Etype	Data	FCS	Double-tagged frame

Table 79 802.1Q Frame

DA	Destination Address	Priority	802.1p Priority
SA	Source Address	Len/Etype	Length and type of Ethernet frame
(SP)TPID	(Service Provider) Tag Protocol Identifier	Data	Frame data
VID	VLAN ID	FCS	Frame Check Sequence

24.4 Configuring VLAN Stacking

Click **Advanced Applications > VLAN Stacking** to display the screen as shown.

Figure 116 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking

Port	Role	Tunnel TPID
*	Normal	
1	Normal	8100
2	Normal	8100
3	Normal	8100
4	Normal	8100

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 80 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable VLAN stacking on the Switch.
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Role	Select Normal to have the Switch ignore frames received (or transmitted) on this port with VLAN stacking tags. Anything you configure in SPVID and Priority of the Port-based QinQ or the Selective QinQ screen are ignored. Select Access Port to have the Switch add the SP TPID tag to all incoming frames received on this port. Select Access Port for ingress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. Select Tunnel Port (available for Gigabit ports only) for egress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. Select Tunnel Port to have the Switch add the Tunnel TPID tag to all outgoing frames sent on this port. In order to support VLAN stacking on a port, the port must be able to allow frames of 1526 Bytes (1522 Bytes + 4 Bytes for the second tag) to pass through it.
Tunnel TPID	TPID is a standard Ethernet type code identifying the frame and indicates whether the frame carries IEEE 802.1Q tag information. Enter a four-digit hexadecimal number from 0000 to FFFF that the Switch adds in the outer VLAN tag of the frames sent on the tunnel port(s). The Switch also uses this to check if the received frames are double-tagged. The value of this field is 0x8100 as defined in IEEE 802.1Q. If the Switch needs to communicate with other vendors' devices, they should use the same TPID. Note: You can define up to four different tunnel TPIDs (including 8100) in this screen at a time.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

24.4.1 Port-based Q-in-Q

Port-based Q-in-Q lets the Switch treat all frames received on the same port as the same VLAN flows and add the same outer VLAN tag to them, even they have different customer VLAN IDs.

Click **Port-based QinQ** in the **Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 117 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking > Port-based QinQ

Port	SPVID	Priority
*		0
1	1	0
2	1	0
3	1	0
4	1	0
5	1	0
6	1	0
7	1	0
8	1	0
9	1	0
10	1	0
11	1	0
12	1	0
13	1	0
14	1	0
15	1	0
16	1	0
17	1	0

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 81 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking > Port-based QinQ

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.
SPVID	SPVID is the service provider's VLAN ID (the outer VLAN tag). Enter the service provider ID (from 1 to 4094) for frames received on this port. See Chapter 9 on page 105 for more background information on VLAN ID.
Priority	Select a priority level (from 0 to 7). This is the service provider's priority level that adds to the frames received on this port. You can also select copy-from-inner to use the existing customer priority level carried in the frames. "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

24.4.2 Selective Q-in-Q

Selective Q-in-Q is VLAN-based. It allows the Switch to add different outer VLAN tags to the incoming frames received on one port according to their inner VLAN tags.

Note: Selective Q-in-Q rules are only applied to single-tagged frames received on the access ports. If the incoming frames are untagged or single-tagged but received on a tunnel port or cannot match any selective Q-in-Q rules, the Switch applies the port-based Q-in-Q rules to them.

Click **Selective QinQ** in the **Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 118 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking > Selective QinQ

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 82 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking > Selective QinQ

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to activate this rule.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.
CVID	Enter a customer VLAN ID (the inner VLAN tag) from 1 to 4094. This is the VLAN tag carried in the packets from the subscribers.
SPVID	SPVID is the service provider's VLAN ID (the outer VLAN tag). Enter the service provider ID (from 1 to 4094) for frames received on this port. See Chapter 9 on page 105 for more background information on VLAN ID.
Priority	Select a priority level (from 0 to 7). This is the service provider's priority level that adds to the frames received on this port. You can also select copy-from-inner to use the existing customer priority level carried in the frames. "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Table 82 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking > Selective QinQ (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the number of the selective VLAN stacking rule.
Active	This shows whether this rule is activated or not.
Name	This is the descriptive name for this rule.
Port	This is the port number to which this rule is applied.
CVID	This is the customer VLAN ID in the incoming packets.
SPVID	This is the service provider's VLAN ID that adds to the packets from the subscribers.
Priority	This is the service provider's priority level in the packets.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

CHAPTER 25

Multicast

This chapter shows you how to configure various multicast features.

25.1 Multicast Overview

Traditionally, IP packets are transmitted in one of either two ways - Unicast (1 sender to 1 recipient) or Broadcast (1 sender to everybody on the network). Multicast delivers IP packets to just a group of hosts on the network.

IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. Refer to RFC 1112, RFC 2236 and RFC 3376 for information on IGMP versions 1, 2 and 3 respectively.

25.1.1 IP Multicast Addresses

In IPv4, a multicast address allows a device to send packets to a specific group of hosts (multicast group) in a different subnetwork. A multicast IP address represents a traffic receiving group, not individual receiving devices. IP addresses in the Class D range (224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255) are used for IP multicasting. Certain IP multicast numbers are reserved by IANA for special purposes (see the IANA website for more information).

25.1.2 IGMP Filtering

With the IGMP filtering feature, you can control which IGMP groups a subscriber on a port can join. This allows you to control the distribution of multicast services (such as content information distribution) based on service plans and types of subscription.

You can set the Switch to filter the multicast group join reports on a per-port basis by configuring an IGMP filtering profile and associating the profile to a port.

25.1.3 IGMP Snooping

The Switch can passively snoop on IGMP packets transferred between IP multicast routers/switches and IP multicast hosts to learn the IP multicast group membership. It checks IGMP packets passing through it, picks out the group registration information, and configures multicasting accordingly. IGMP snooping allows the Switch to learn multicast groups without you having to manually configure them.

The Switch forwards multicast traffic destined for multicast groups (that it has learned from IGMP snooping or that you have manually configured) to ports that are members of that group. IGMP snooping generates no additional network traffic, allowing you to significantly reduce multicast traffic passing through your Switch.

25.1.4 IGMP Snooping and VLANs

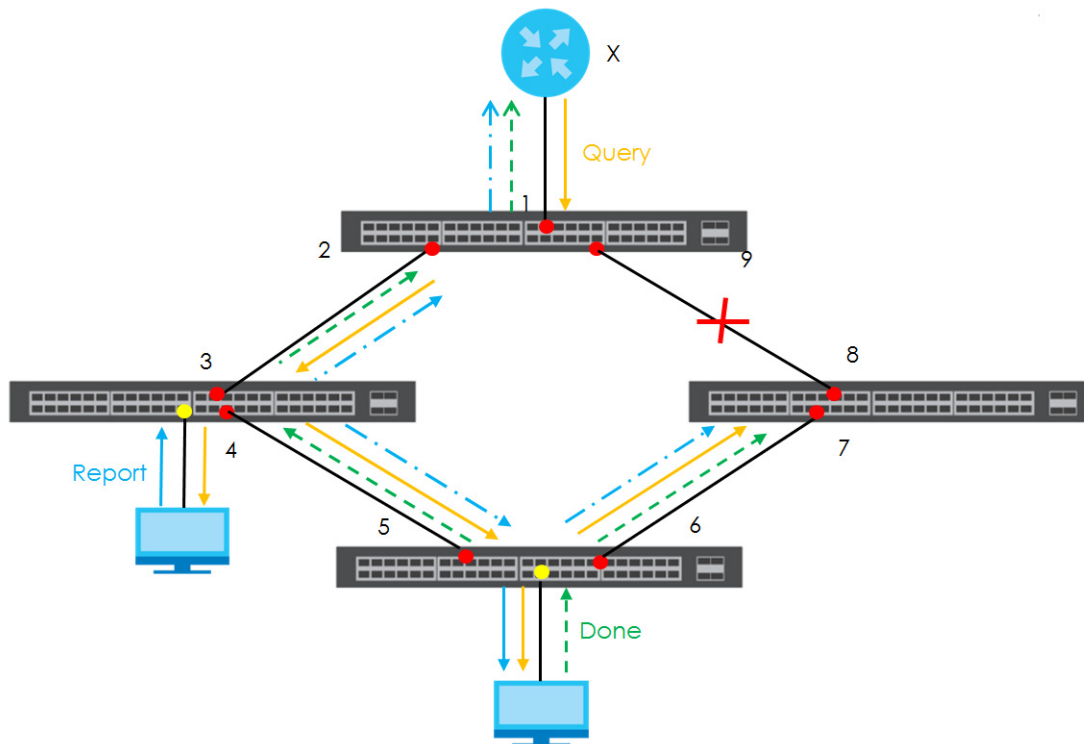
The Switch can perform IGMP snooping on up to 16 VLANs. You can configure the Switch to automatically learn multicast group membership of any VLANs. The Switch then performs IGMP snooping on the first 16 VLANs that send IGMP packets. This is referred to as auto mode. Alternatively, you can specify the VLANs that IGMP snooping should be performed on. This is referred to as fixed mode. In fixed mode the Switch does not learn multicast group membership of any VLANs other than those explicitly added as an IGMP snooping VLAN.

25.1.5 MLD Snooping-proxy

MLD snooping-proxy is a Zyxel-proprietary feature. IPv6 MLD proxy allows only one upstream interface on a switch, while MLD snooping-proxy supports more than one upstream port on a switch. The upstream port in MLD snooping-proxy can report group changes to a connected multicast router and forward MLD messages to other upstream ports. This helps especially when you want to have a network that uses STP to provide backup links between switches and also performs MLD snooping and proxy functions. MLD snooping-proxy, like MLD proxy, can minimize MLD control messages and allow better network performance.

In MLD snooping-proxy, if one upstream port is learned via snooping, all other upstream ports on the same device will be added to the same group. If one upstream port requests to leave a group, all other upstream ports on the same device will also be removed from the group.

In the following MLD snooping-proxy example, all connected upstream ports (1 ~7) are treated as one interface. The connection between ports 8 and 9 is blocked by STP to break the loop. If there is one query from a router (X) or MLD Done or Report message from any upstream port, it will be broadcast to all connected upstream ports.



25.1.6 MLD Messages

A multicast router or switch periodically sends general queries to MLD hosts to update the multicast forwarding table. When an MLD host wants to join a multicast group, it sends an MLD Report message for that address.

An MLD Done message is similar to an IGMP Leave message. When an MLD host wants to leave a multicast group, it can send a Done message to the router or switch. If the leave mode is not set to **Immediate**, the router or switch sends a group-specific query to the port on which the Done message is received to determine if other devices connected to this port should remain in the group.

25.2 Multicast Setup

Use this screen to configure IGMP for IPv4 or MLD for IPv6 and set up multicast VLANs. Click **Advanced Application > Multicast** in the navigation panel.

Figure 119 Advanced Application > Multicast



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

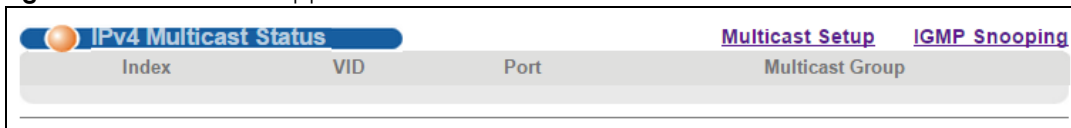
Table 83 Advanced Application > Multicast

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv4 Multicast	Click the link to open screens where you can configure IGMP snooping and IGMP filtering for IPv4.
IPv6 Multicast	Click the link to open screens where you can configure MLD snooping-proxy and MLD filtering for IPv6.
MVR	Click the link to open screens where you can create multicast VLANs.

25.3 IPv4 Multicast Status

Click **Advanced Applications > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast** to display the screen as shown. This screen shows the IPv4 multicast group information. See [Section 25.1 on page 205](#) for more information on multicasting.

Figure 120 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 84 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the entry.
VID	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Port	This field displays the port number that belongs to the multicast group.
Multicast Group	This field displays IP multicast group addresses.

25.3.1 IGMP Snooping

Click the **IGMP Snooping** link in the **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast** screen to display the screen as shown. See [Section 25.1 on page 205](#) for more information on multicasting.

Figure 121 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping

IGMP Snooping [IPv4 Multicast Status](#) [IGMP Snooping VLAN](#) [IGMP Filtering Profile](#)

IGMP Snooping

Mode:
 Querier:
 Host Timeout:
 802.1p Priority:

IGMP Filtering

Active:
 Unknown Multicast Frame: Flooding Drop
 Reserved Multicast Group: Flooding Drop

Port	Immed. Leave	Normal Leave	Fast Leave	Group Limited	Max Group Num.	Throttling	IGMP Filtering Profile	IGMP Querier Mode
*	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="text" value="Deny"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Default"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Auto"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
1	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 4000	<input type="radio"/> 200	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="Deny"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Default"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Auto"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
2	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 4000	<input type="radio"/> 200	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="Deny"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Default"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Auto"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
3	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 4000	<input type="radio"/> 200	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="Deny"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Default"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Auto"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
4	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 4000	<input type="radio"/> 200	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="Deny"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Default"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Auto"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
5	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 4000	<input type="radio"/> 200	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="Deny"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Default"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Auto"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
6	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 4000	<input type="radio"/> 200	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="Deny"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Default"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Auto"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
7	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 4000	<input type="radio"/> 200	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="Deny"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Default"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Auto"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
8	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 4000	<input type="radio"/> 200	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="Deny"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Default"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="Auto"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 85 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IGMP Snooping	Use these settings to configure IGMP Snooping.
Mode	<p>The Switch supports IGMP version 1, IGMP version 2 and IGMP version 3.</p> <p>Select the version of the IGMP packets that the Switch should use (Version2 or Version3) to enable IGMP Snooping to forward group multicast traffic only to ports that are members of that group. Otherwise, select Disable.</p>
Querier	Select this option to allow the Switch to send IGMP General Query messages to the VLANs with the multicast hosts attached.
Host Timeout	Specify the time (from 1 to 16 711 450) in seconds that elapses before the Switch removes an IGMP group membership entry if it does not receive report messages from the port.
802.1p Priority	Select a priority level (0-7) to which the Switch changes the priority in outgoing IGMP control packets. Otherwise, select No-Change to not replace the priority.
IGMP Filtering	<p>Select Active to enable IGMP filtering to control which IGMP groups a subscriber on a port can join.</p> <p>Note: If you enable IGMP filtering, you must create and assign IGMP filtering profiles for the ports that you want to allow to join multicast groups.</p>
Unknown Multicast Frame	Specify the action to perform when the Switch receives an unknown multicast frame. Select Drop to discard the frame(s). Select Flooding to send the frame(s) to all ports.
Reserved Multicast Group	<p>The IP address range of 224.0.0.0 to 224.0.0.255 are reserved for multicasting on the local network only. For example, 224.0.0.1 is for all hosts on a local network segment and 224.0.0.9 is used to send RIP routing information to all RIP v2 routers on the same network segment. A multicast router will not forward a packet with the destination IP address within this range to other networks. See the IANA web site for more information.</p> <p>The layer-2 multicast MAC addresses used by Cisco layer-2 protocols, 01:00:0C:CC:CC:CC and 01:00:0C:CC:CC:CD, are also included in this group.</p> <p>Specify the action to perform when the Switch receives a frame with a reserved multicast address. Select Drop to discard the frame(s). Select Flooding to send the frame(s) to all ports.</p>
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Immed. Leave	<p>Select this option to set the Switch to remove this port from the multicast tree when an IGMP version 2 leave message is received on this port.</p> <p>Select this option if there is only one host connected to this port.</p>

Table 85 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Normal Leave	<p>Enter an IGMP normal leave timeout value (from 200 to 6,348,800) in milliseconds. Select this option to have the Switch use this timeout to update the forwarding table for the port.</p> <p>In normal leave mode, when the Switch receives an IGMP leave message from a host on a port, the Switch waits for IGMP reports after the multicast router sends out an IGMP Group-Specific Query (GSQ) message to determine whether other hosts connected to the port should remain in the specific multicast group.</p> <p>This defines how many seconds the Switch waits for an IGMP report before removing an IGMP snooping membership entry when an IGMP leave message is received on this port from a host.</p> <p>Note: The timeout value for each IGMP report will be halved automatically by the Switch because the robustness variable value (the number of query messages) is set to two by default to cover the possibility of an IGMP GSQ being missed by IGMP host(s) or an IGMP report being missed by the multicast router(s) due to network congestion.</p>
Fast Leave	<p>Enter an IGMP fast leave timeout value (from 200 to 6,348,800) in milliseconds. Select this option to have the Switch use this timeout to update the forwarding table for the port.</p> <p>In fast leave mode, right after receiving an IGMP leave message from a host on a port, the Switch sends out an IGMP Group-Specific Query (GSQ) message to determine whether other hosts connected to the port should remain in the specific multicast group. This helps speed up the leave process.</p> <p>This defines how many seconds the Switch waits for an IGMP report before removing an IGMP snooping membership entry when an IGMP leave message is received on this port from a host.</p>
Group Limited	Select this option to limit the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join.
Max Group Num.	Enter the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join. Once a port is registered in the specified number of multicast groups, any new IGMP join report frame(s) is dropped on this port.
Throttling	<p>IGMP throttling controls how the Switch deals with the IGMP reports when the maximum number of the IGMP groups a port can join is reached.</p> <p>Select Deny to drop any new IGMP join report received on this port until an existing multicast forwarding table entry is aged out.</p> <p>Select Replace to replace an existing entry in the multicast forwarding table with the new IGMP report(s) received on this port.</p>
IGMP Filtering Profile	<p>Select the name of the IGMP filtering profile to use for this port. Otherwise, select Default to prohibit the port from joining any multicast group.</p> <p>You can create IGMP filtering profiles in the Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Filtering Profile screen.</p>
IGMP Querier Mode	<p>The Switch treats an IGMP query port as being connected to an IGMP multicast router (or server). The Switch forwards IGMP join or leave packets to an IGMP query port.</p> <p>Select Auto to have the Switch use the port as an IGMP query port if the port receives IGMP query packets.</p> <p>Select Fixed to have the Switch always use the port as an IGMP query port. Select this when you connect an IGMP multicast server to the port.</p> <p>Select Edge to stop the Switch from using the port as an IGMP query port. The Switch will not keep any record of an IGMP router being connected to this port. The Switch does not forward IGMP join or leave packets to this port.</p>

Table 85 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

25.3.2 IGMP Snooping VLAN

Click **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast** in the navigation panel. Click the **IGMP Snooping** link and then the **IGMP Snooping VLAN** link to display the screen as shown. See [Section 25.1.4 on page 206](#) for more information on IGMP Snooping VLAN.

Figure 122 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Snooping VLAN

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 86 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Snooping VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mode	<p>Select auto to have the Switch learn multicast group membership information of any VLANs automatically.</p> <p>Select fixed to have the Switch only learn multicast group membership information of the VLAN(s) that you specify below.</p> <p>In either auto or fixed mode, the Switch can learn up to 16 VLANs (including up to five VLANs you configured in the MVR screen). For example, if you have configured one multicast VLAN in the MVR screen, you can only specify up to 15 VLANs in this screen.</p> <p>The Switch drops any IGMP control messages which do not belong to these 16 VLANs.</p> <p>Note: You must also enable IGMP snooping in the IGMP Snooping screen first.</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Table 86 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Snooping VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN	Use this section of the screen to add VLANs upon which the Switch is to perform IGMP snooping.
Name	Enter the descriptive name of the VLAN for identification purposes.
VID	Enter the ID of a static VLAN; the valid range is between 1 and 4094. Note: You cannot configure the same VLAN ID as in the MVR screen.
Add	Click Add to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click this to clear the fields.
Index	This is the number of the IGMP snooping VLAN entry in the table.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this VLAN group.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column, then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

25.3.3 IGMP Filtering Profile

An IGMP filtering profile specifies a range of multicast groups that clients connected to the Switch are able to join. A profile contains a range of multicast IP addresses which you want clients to be able to join. Profiles are assigned to ports (in the **IGMP Snooping** screen). Clients connected to those ports are then able to join the multicast groups specified in the profile. Each port can be assigned a single profile. A profile can be assigned to multiple ports.

Click **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast** in the navigation panel. Click the **IGMP Snooping** link and then the **IGMP Filtering Profile** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 123 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Filtering Profile

The screenshot shows the 'IGMP Filtering Profile' configuration interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'IGMP Filtering Profile' and 'IGMP Snooping'. Below that, the 'Profile Setup' section contains a table with three columns: 'Profile Name', 'Start Address', and 'End Address'. The 'Start Address' field is populated with '224.0.0.0' and the 'End Address' field is populated with '224.0.0.0'. Below this table are 'Add' and 'Clear' buttons. A second table below shows a summary of profiles with columns: 'Profile Name', 'Start Address', 'End Address', 'Delete Profile', and 'Delete Rule'. The 'Default' profile is listed with 'Start Address' '0.0.0.0' and 'End Address' '0.0.0.0'. There are checkboxes in the 'Delete Profile' and 'Delete Rule' columns. At the bottom of the screen are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 87 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Filtering Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile for identification purposes. To configure additional rule(s) for a profile that you have already added, enter the profile name and specify a different IP multicast address range.
Start Address	Type the starting multicast IP address for a range of multicast IP addresses that you want to belong to the IGMP filter profile.
End Address	Type the ending multicast IP address for a range of IP addresses that you want to belong to the IGMP filter profile. If you want to add a single multicast IP address, enter it in both the Start Address and End Address fields.
Add	Click Add to save the profile to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Clear	Click Clear to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Profile Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the profile.
Start Address	This field displays the start of the multicast address range.
End Address	This field displays the end of the multicast address range.
Delete	To delete the profile(s) and all the accompanying rules, select the profile(s) that you want to remove in the Delete Profile column, then click the Delete button. To delete a rule(s) from a profile, select the rule(s) that you want to remove in the Delete Rule column, then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete Profile/Delete Rule check boxes.

25.4 IPv6 Multicast Status

Click **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast** to display the screen as shown. This screen shows the IPv6 multicast group information. See [Section 25.1 on page 205](#) for more information on multicasting.

Figure 124 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast

Index	VID	Port	Multicast Group	Group Timeout

The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 88 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the entry.
VID	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Port	This field displays the port number that belongs to the multicast group.
Multicast Group	This field displays IP multicast group addresses.
Group Timeout	This field displays the time (in seconds) that elapses before the Switch removes a MLD group membership entry if it does not receive report messages from the port.

25.4.1 MLD Snooping-proxy

Click the **MLD Snooping-proxy** link in the **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast** screen to display the screen as shown. See [Section 25.1 on page 205](#) for more information on multicasting.

Figure 125 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy

The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 89 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MLD Snooping-proxy	Use these settings to configure MLD snooping-proxy.
Active	Select Active to enable MLD snooping-proxy on the Switch to minimize MLD control messages and allow better network performance.
802.1p Priority	Select a priority level (0-7) to which the Switch changes the priority in outgoing MLD messages.
Unknown Multicast Frame	Specify the action to perform when the Switch receives an unknown multicast frame. Select Flooding to send the frame(s) to all ports. Select Drop to discard the frame(s).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

25.4.2 MLD Snooping-proxy VLAN

Click the **VLAN** link in the **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy** screen to display the screen as shown. See [Section 25.1 on page 205](#) for more information on multicasting.

Figure 126 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > VLAN

VLAN		MLD Snooping-proxy		Port Role Setting						
VID	<input type="text"/>									
Upstream	Query Interval	125000	milliseconds							
	Maximum Response Delay	10000	milliseconds							
	Robustness Variable	2								
	Last Member Query Interval	1000	milliseconds							
Downstream	Query Interval	125000	milliseconds							
	Maximum Response Delay	10000	milliseconds							
<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/>										
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 33%;">Index</th> <th style="width: 33%;">VID</th> <th style="width: 33%;">Delete</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td> </td> <td> </td> <td> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>					Index	VID	Delete			
Index	VID	Delete								
<input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>										

The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 90 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN on which you want to enable MLD snooping-proxy and configure related settings.
Upstream	
Query Interval	<p>Enter the amount of time (in milliseconds) between general query messages sent by the router connected to the upstream port. This value should be exactly the same as what's configured in the connected multicast router.</p> <p>This value is used to calculate the amount of time an MLD snooping membership entry (learned only on the upstream port) can remain in the forwarding table.</p> <p>When an MLD Report message is received, the Switch sets the timeout period of the entry to be $T = (QI * RV) + MRD$, where T = Timeout, QI = Query Interval, RV = Robustness Variable, and MRD = Maximum Response Delay.</p>
Maximum Response Delay	<p>Enter the amount of time (in milliseconds) the router connected to the upstream port waits for a response to an MLD general query message. This value should be exactly the same as what's configured in the connected multicast router.</p> <p>This value is used to calculate the amount of time an MLD snooping membership entry (learned only on the upstream port) can remain in the forwarding table.</p> <p>When an MLD Report message is received, the Switch sets the timeout period of the entry to be $T = (QI * RV) + MRD$, where T = Timeout, QI = Query Interval, RV = Robustness Variable, and MRD = Maximum Response Delay.</p> <p>When an MLD Done message is received, the Switch sets the entry's lifetime to be the product of Last Member Query Interval and Robustness Variable.</p>
Robustness Variable	<p>Enter the number of queries. A multicast address entry (learned only on an upstream port by snooping) is removed from the forwarding table when there is no response to the configured number of queries sent by the router connected to the upstream port. This value should be exactly the same as what's configured in the connected multicast router.</p> <p>This value is used to calculate the amount of time an MLD snooping membership entry (learned only on the upstream port) can remain in the forwarding table.</p>

Table 90 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Last Member Query Interval	<p>Enter the amount of time (in milliseconds) between the MLD group-specific queries sent by an upstream port when an MLD Done message is received. This value should be exactly the same as what's configured in the connected multicast router.</p> <p>This value is used to calculate the amount of time an MLD snooping membership entry (learned only on the upstream port) can remain in the forwarding table after a Done message is received.</p> <p>When an MLD Done message is received, the Switch sets the entry's lifetime to be the product of Last Member Query Interval and Robustness Variable.</p>
Downstream	
Query Interval	Enter the amount of time (in milliseconds) between general query messages sent by the downstream port.
Maximum Response Delay	Enter the maximum time (in milliseconds) that the Switch waits for a response to a general query message sent by the downstream port.
Add	<p>Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one.</p> <p>This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.</p>
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the index number of the MLD snooping-proxy VLAN entry in the table. Click on an index number to view more details or change the settings.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.
Delete	Check the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the Delete column, then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the check boxes.

25.4.3 MLD Snooping-proxy VLAN Port Role Setting

Click the **Port Role Setting** link in the **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > VLAN** screen to display the screen as shown. See [Section 25.1 on page 205](#) for more information on multicasting.

Figure 127 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Port Role Setting

Port	Port Role	Leave Mode	Leave Timeout	Fast Leave Timeout
*	None	Normal		
1	None	Immediate	4000	4000
2	None	Immediate	4000	4000
3	None	Immediate	4000	4000
4	None	Immediate	4000	4000
5	None	Immediate	4000	4000
6	None	Immediate	4000	4000
7	None	Immediate	4000	4000
8	None	Immediate	4000	4000
9	None	Immediate	4000	4000
10	None	Immediate	4000	4000
11	None	Immediate	4000	4000
12	None	Immediate	4000	4000
13	None	Immediate	4000	4000
14	None	Immediate	4000	4000
15	None	Immediate	4000	4000
16	None	Immediate	4000	4000

The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 91 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Port Role Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MLD Snooping-proxy VLAN ID	Select the VLAN ID for which you want to configure a port's MLD snooping-proxy settings.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Port Role	A port on the Switch can be either a Downstream port or Upstream port in MLD. A downstream port connects to MLD hosts and acts as a multicast router to send MLD queries and listen to the MLD host's Report and Done messages. An upstream port connects to a multicast router and works as a host to send Report or Done messages when receiving queries from a multicast router. Otherwise, select None if the port is not joining a multicast group or does not belong to this VLAN.

Table 91 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Port Role Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Leave Mode	<p>Select the leave mode for the specified downstream port(s) in this VLAN.</p> <p>This specifies whether the Switch removes an MLD snooping membership entry (learned on a downstream port) immediately (Immediate) or wait for an MLD report before the leave timeout (Normal) or fast leave timeout (Fast) when an MLD leave message is received on this port from a host.</p>
Leave Timeout	<p>Enter the MLD snooping normal leave timeout (in milliseconds) the Switch uses to update the forwarding table for the specified downstream port(s).</p> <p>This defines how many seconds the Switch waits for an MLD report before removing an MLD snooping membership entry (learned on a downstream port) when an MLD Done message is received on this port from a host.</p>
Fast Leave Timeout	<p>Enter the fast leave timeout (in milliseconds) for the specified downstream port(s).</p> <p>This defines how many seconds the Switch waits for an MLD report before removing an MLD snooping membership entry (learned on a downstream port) when an MLD Done message is received on this port from a host.</p>
Apply	<p>Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.</p>
Cancel	<p>Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.</p>

25.4.4 MLD Snooping-proxy Filtering

Use this screen to configure the Switch's MLD filtering settings. Click the **Filtering** link in the **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 128 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Filtering

The screenshot shows the 'Filtering' configuration page. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'Filtering' selected, and links for 'MLD Snooping-proxy' and 'Filtering Profile'. Below the navigation bar is an 'Active' checkbox. The main content is a table with the following columns: Port, Group Limit, Max Group Num., and Filtering Profile. The table has 15 rows, with the first row marked with an asterisk (*) and the others numbered 1 through 14. The 'Group Limit' column contains checkboxes, and the 'Max Group Num.' column contains text input fields with the value '0'. The 'Filtering Profile' column contains dropdown menus with 'Default' selected. At the bottom of the page are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Port	Group Limit	Max Group Num.	Filtering Profile
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		Default ▾
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default ▾
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default ▾
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default ▾
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default ▾
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default ▾
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default ▾
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default ▾
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default ▾
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default ▾
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default ▾
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default ▾
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default ▾
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default ▾
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default ▾

The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 92 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Filtering

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable MLD filtering on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Group Limit	Select this option to limit the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join.
Max Group Num.	Enter the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join. Once a port is registered in the specified number of multicast groups, any new MLD Report message is dropped on this port.
Filtering Profile	Select the name of the MLD filtering profile to use for this port. Otherwise, select Default to prohibit the port from joining any multicast group. You can create MLD filtering profiles in the Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Filtering > Filtering Profile screen.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.

25.4.5 MLD Snooping-proxy Filtering Profile

Use this screen to create an MLD filtering profile and set the range of the multicast address(es). Click the **Filtering Profile** link in the **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Filtering** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 129 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Filtering > Filtering Profile

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring a filtering profile. At the top, there's a header 'Filtering Profile' and a sub-header 'Profile Setup'. Below this, there are three input fields: 'Profile Name', 'Start Address', and 'End Address'. Underneath these fields are two buttons: 'Add' and 'Clear'. Below the buttons is a table with the following structure:

Profile Name	Start Address	End Address	Delete
Default	0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0	0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0	<input type="checkbox"/>

At the bottom of the table, there are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Cancel'.

The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 93 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Filtering Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile for identification purposes. To configure additional rule(s) for a profile that you have already added, enter the profile name and specify a different IP multicast address range.
Start Address	Type the starting multicast IPv6 address for a range of multicast IPv6 addresses that you want to belong to the MLD filtering profile.
End Address	Type the ending multicast IPv6 address for a range of IPv6 addresses that you want to belong to the MLD filtering profile. If you want to add a single multicast IPv6 address, enter it in both the Start Address and End Address fields.
Add	Click this to create a new entry. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Profile Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the profile.
Start Address	This field displays the start of the multicast IPv6 address range.
End Address	This field displays the end of the multicast IPv6 address range.
Delete	Check the profile(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column, then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the check boxes.

25.5 MVR Overview

Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR) is designed for applications (such as Media-on-Demand (MoD)) that use multicast traffic across an Ethernet ring-based service provider network.

MVR allows one single multicast VLAN to be shared among different subscriber VLANs on the network. While isolated in different subscriber VLANs, connected devices can subscribe to and unsubscribe from the multicast stream in the multicast VLAN. This improves bandwidth utilization with reduced multicast traffic in the subscriber VLANs and simplifies multicast group management.

MVR only responds to IGMP join and leave control messages from multicast groups that are configured under MVR. Join and leave reports from other multicast groups are managed by IGMP snooping.

The following figure shows a network example. The subscriber VLAN (**1**, **2** and **3**) information is hidden from the streaming media server, **S**. In addition, the multicast VLAN information is only visible to the Switch and **S**.

Figure 130 MVR Network Example



25.5.1 Types of MVR Ports

In MVR, a source port is a port on the Switch that can send and receive multicast traffic in a multicast VLAN while a receiver port can only receive multicast traffic. Once configured, the Switch maintains a forwarding table that matches the multicast stream to the associated multicast group.

25.5.2 MVR Modes

You can set your Switch to operate in either dynamic or compatible mode.

In dynamic mode, the Switch sends IGMP leave and join reports to the other multicast devices (such as multicast routers or servers) in the multicast VLAN. This allows the multicast devices to update the multicast forwarding table to forward or not forward multicast traffic to the receiver ports.

In compatible mode, the Switch does not send any IGMP reports. In this case, you must manually configure the forwarding settings on the multicast devices in the multicast VLAN.

25.5.3 How MVR Works

The following figure shows a multicast television example where a subscriber device (such as a computer) in VLAN 1 receives multicast traffic from the streaming media server, **S**, via the Switch. Multiple subscriber devices can connect through a port configured as the receiver on the Switch.

When the subscriber selects a television channel, computer **A** sends an IGMP report to the Switch to join the appropriate multicast group. If the IGMP report matches one of the configured MVR multicast group addresses on the Switch, an entry is created in the forwarding table on the Switch. This maps the subscriber VLAN to the list of forwarding destinations for the specified multicast traffic.

When the subscriber changes the channel or turns off the computer, an IGMP leave message is sent to the Switch to leave the multicast group. The Switch sends a query to VLAN 1 on the receiver port (in this case, an uplink port on the Switch). If there is another subscriber device connected to this port in the same subscriber VLAN, the receiving port will still be on the list of forwarding destination for the multicast traffic. Otherwise, the Switch removes the receiver port from the forwarding table.

Figure 131 MVR Multicast Television Example



25.6 General MVR Configuration

Use the **MVR** screen to create multicast VLANs and select the receiver port(s) and a source port for each multicast VLAN. Click **Advanced Application > Multicast > MVR** to display the screen as shown next.

Note: You can create up to five multicast VLANs and up to 256 multicast rules on the Switch.

Note: Your Switch automatically creates a static VLAN (with the same VID) when you create a multicast VLAN in this screen.

Figure 132 Advanced Application > Multicast > MVR

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 94 Advanced Application > Multicast > MVR

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable MVR to allow one single multicast VLAN to be shared among different subscriber VLANs on the network.
Group Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Multicast VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID (1 to 4094) of the multicast VLAN.
802.1p Priority	Select a priority level (0-7) with which the Switch replaces the priority in outgoing IGMP control packets (belonging to this multicast VLAN).
Mode	Specify the MVR mode on the Switch. Choices are Dynamic and Compatible . Select Dynamic to send IGMP reports to all MVR source ports in the multicast VLAN. Select Compatible to set the Switch not to send IGMP reports.
Port	This field displays the port number on the Switch.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

Table 94 Advanced Application > Multicast > MVR (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Source Port	Select this option to set this port as the MVR source port that sends and receives multicast traffic. All source ports must belong to a single multicast VLAN.
Receiver Port	Select this option to set this port as a receiver port that only receives multicast traffic.
None	Select this option to set the port not to participate in MVR. No MVR multicast traffic is sent or received on this port.
Tagging	Select this check box if you want the port to tag the VLAN ID in all outgoing frames transmitted.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
VLAN	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Active	This field displays whether the multicast group is enabled or not.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this setting.
Mode	This field displays the MVR mode.
Source Port	This field displays the source port number(s).
Receiver Port	This field displays the receiver port number(s).
802.1p	This field displays the priority level.
Delete	To delete a multicast VLAN(s), select the rule(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column, then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

25.6.1 MVR Group Configuration

All source ports and receiver ports belonging to a multicast group can receive multicast data sent to this multicast group.

Configure MVR IP multicast group address(es) in the **Group Configuration** screen. Click **Group Configuration** in the **MVR** screen.

Note: A port can belong to more than one multicast VLAN. However, IP multicast group addresses in different multicast VLANs cannot overlap.

Figure 133 Advanced Application > Multicast > MVR: Group Configuration

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

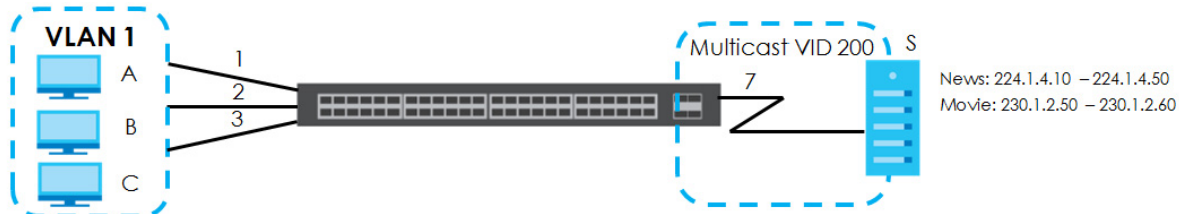
Table 95 Advanced Application > Multicast > MVR: Group Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Multicast VLAN ID	Select a multicast VLAN ID (that you configured in the MVR screen) from the drop-down list box.
Group Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes.
Start Address	Enter the starting IP multicast address of the multicast group in dotted decimal notation. Refer to Section 25.1.1 on page 205 for more information on IP multicast addresses.
End Address	Enter the ending IP multicast address of the multicast group in dotted decimal notation. Enter the same IP address as the Start Address field if you want to configure only one IP address for a multicast group. Refer to Section 25.1.1 on page 205 for more information on IP multicast addresses.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
MVLAN	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Group Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this setting.
Start Address	This field displays the starting IP address of the multicast group.
End Address	This field displays the ending IP address of the multicast group.
Delete	Select the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the Delete column, then click the Delete button to remove the selected entry(ies) from the table. If you delete a multicast VLAN, all multicast groups in this VLAN will also be removed.
Cancel	Select Cancel to clear the checkbox(es) in the table.

25.6.2 MVR Configuration Example

The following figure shows a network example where ports 1, 2 and 3 on the Switch belong to VLAN 1. In addition, port 7 belongs to the multicast group with VID 200 to receive multicast traffic (the **News** and **Movie** channels) from the remote streaming media server, **S**. Computers A, B and C in VLAN 1 are able to receive the traffic.

Figure 134 MVR Configuration Example



To configure the MVR settings on the Switch, create a multicast group in the **MVR** screen and set the receiver and source ports.

Figure 135 MVR Configuration Example

The screenshot shows the 'MVR' configuration page. At the top, there are tabs for 'MVR', 'Multicast Setup', and 'Group Configuration'. The 'Group Configuration' tab is active. The configuration fields are as follows:

- Active:
- Group Name: Premium
- Multicast VLAN ID: 200
- 802.1p Priority: 0
- Mode: Dynamic Compatible

Below the configuration fields is a table with the following columns: Port, Source Port, Receiver Port, None, and Tagging. The 'Receiver Port' column has a dropdown menu set to 'None'. The table rows are numbered 1 through 13. Red circles highlight the configuration for ports 1, 2, 3, and 7. In the 'None' column, there is a red box with the word 'EXAMPLE' next to port 9.

Port	Source Port	Receiver Port	None	Tagging
*		None		<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

To set the Switch to forward the multicast group traffic to the subscribers, configure multicast group settings in the **Group Configuration** screen. The following figure shows an example where two multicast groups (**News** and **Movie**) are configured for the multicast VLAN 200.

Figure 136 MVR Group Configuration Example-1

Group Configuration MVR

Multicast VLAN ID: 200

Group Name:
 Start Address:
 End Address:

MVLAN			
Group Name	Start Address	End Address	Delete
200			<input type="checkbox"/>
News	224.1.4.10	224.1.4.50	<input type="checkbox"/>

Figure 137 MVR Group Configuration Example-2

Group Configuration MVR

Multicast VLAN ID: 200

Group Name:
 Start Address:
 End Address:

MVLAN			
Group Name	Start Address	End Address	Delete
200			<input type="checkbox"/>
Movie	230.1.2.50	230.1.2.60	<input type="checkbox"/>
News	224.1.4.10	224.1.4.50	<input type="checkbox"/>

CHAPTER 26

AAA

This chapter describes how to configure authentication, authorization and accounting settings on the Switch.

26.1 Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA)

Authentication is the process of determining who a user is and validating access to the Switch. The Switch can authenticate users who try to log in based on user accounts configured on the Switch itself. The Switch can also use an external authentication server to authenticate a large number of users.

Authorization is the process of determining what a user is allowed to do. Different user accounts may have higher or lower privilege levels associated with them. For example, user A may have the right to create new login accounts on the Switch but user B cannot. The Switch can authorize users based on user accounts configured on the Switch itself or it can use an external server to authorize a large number of users.

Accounting is the process of recording what a user is doing. The Switch can use an external server to track when users log in, log out, execute commands and so on. Accounting can also record system related actions such as boot up and shut down times of the Switch.

The external servers that perform authentication, authorization and accounting functions are known as AAA servers. The Switch supports RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service, see [Section 26.1.2 on page 228](#)) and TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus, see [Section 26.1.2 on page 228](#)) as external authentication, authorization and accounting servers.

Figure 138 AAA Server



26.1.1 Local User Accounts

By storing user profiles locally on the Switch, your Switch is able to authenticate and authorize users without interacting with a network AAA server. However, there is a limit on the number of users you may authenticate in this way (See [Chapter 44 on page 365](#)).

26.1.2 RADIUS and TACACS+

RADIUS and TACACS+ are security protocols used to authenticate users by means of an external server instead of (or in addition to) an internal device user database that is limited to the memory capacity of

the device. In essence, RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication both allow you to validate an unlimited number of users from a central location.

The following table describes some key differences between RADIUS and TACACS+.

Table 96 RADIUS vs TACACS+

	RADIUS	TACACS+
Transport Protocol	UDP (User Datagram Protocol)	TCP (Transmission Control Protocol)
Encryption	Encrypts the password sent for authentication.	All communication between the client (the Switch) and the TACACS server is encrypted.

26.2 AAA Screens

The **AAA** screens allow you to enable authentication, authorization, accounting or all of them on the Switch. First, configure your authentication and accounting server settings (RADIUS, TACACS+ or both) and then set up the authentication priority, activate authorization and configure accounting settings.

Click **Advanced Application > AAA** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 139 Advanced Application > AAA



26.2.1 RADIUS Server Setup

Use this screen to configure your RADIUS server settings. See [Section 26.1.2 on page 228](#) for more information on RADIUS servers and [Section 26.3 on page 237](#) for RADIUS attributes utilized by the authentication and accounting features on the Switch. Click on the **RADIUS Server Setup** link in the **AAA** screen to view the screen as shown.

Figure 140 Advanced Application > AAA > RADIUS Server Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 97 Advanced Application > AAA > RADIUS Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication Server	Use this section to configure your RADIUS authentication settings.
Mode	This field only applies if you configure multiple RADIUS servers. Select index-priority and the Switch tries to authenticate with the first configured RADIUS server, if the RADIUS server does not respond then the Switch tries to authenticate with the second RADIUS server. Select round-robin to alternate between the RADIUS servers that it sends authentication requests to.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an authentication request response from the RADIUS server. If you are using index-priority for your authentication and you are using two RADIUS servers then the timeout value is divided between the two RADIUS servers. For example, if you set the timeout value to 30 seconds, then the Switch waits for a response from the first RADIUS server for 15 seconds and then tries the second RADIUS server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a RADIUS server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external RADIUS server in dotted decimal notation.
UDP Port	The default port of a RADIUS server for authentication is 1812 . You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external RADIUS server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external RADIUS server and the Switch. Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.

Table 97 Advanced Application > AAA > RADIUS Server Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing RADIUS server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click Apply .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Accounting Server	Use this section to configure your RADIUS accounting server settings.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an accounting request response from the RADIUS accounting server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a RADIUS accounting server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external RADIUS accounting server in dotted decimal notation.
UDP Port	The default port of a RADIUS accounting server for accounting is 1813 . You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external RADIUS accounting server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external RADIUS accounting server and the Switch. Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing RADIUS accounting server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click Apply .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

26.2.2 TACACS+ Server Setup

Use this screen to configure your TACACS+ server settings. See [Section 26.1.2 on page 228](#) for more information on TACACS+ servers. Click on the **TACACS+ Server Setup** link in the **Authentication and Accounting** screen to view the screen as shown.

Figure 141 Advanced Application > AAA > TACACS+ Server Setup

TACACS+ Server Setup Auth and Acct

Authentication Server

Mode:

Timeout: seconds

Index	IP Address	TCP Port	Shared Secret	Delete
1	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="49"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="49"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

Accounting Server

Timeout: seconds

Index	IP Address	TCP Port	Shared Secret	Delete
1	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="49"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="49"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 98 Advanced Application > AAA > TACACS+ Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication Server	Use this section to configure your TACACS+ authentication settings.
Mode	This field is only valid if you configure multiple TACACS+ servers. Select index-priority and the Switch tries to authenticate with the first configured TACACS+ server, if the TACACS+ server does not respond then the Switch tries to authenticate with the second TACACS+ server. Select round-robin to alternate between the TACACS+ servers that it sends authentication requests to.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an authentication request response from the TACACS+ server. If you are using index-priority for your authentication and you are using two TACACS+ servers then the timeout value is divided between the two TACACS+ servers. For example, if you set the timeout value to 30 seconds, then the Switch waits for a response from the first TACACS+ server for 15 seconds and then tries the second TACACS+ server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a TACACS+ server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external TACACS+ server in dotted decimal notation.
TCP Port	The default port of a TACACS+ server for authentication is 49 . You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external TACACS+ server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external TACACS+ server and the Switch. Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.

Table 98 Advanced Application > AAA > TACACS+ Server Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing TACACS+ server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click Apply .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Accounting Server	Use this section to configure your TACACS+ accounting settings.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an accounting request response from the TACACS+ server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a TACACS+ accounting server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external TACACS+ accounting server in dotted decimal notation.
TCP Port	The default port of a TACACS+ accounting server is 49 . You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external TACACS+ accounting server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external TACACS+ accounting server and the Switch. Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing TACACS+ accounting server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click Apply .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

26.2.3 AAA Setup

Use this screen to configure authentication, authorization and accounting settings on the Switch. Click on the **AAA Setup** link in the **AAA** screen to view the screen as shown.

Figure 142 Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup

AAA Setup AAA

Authentication

Type	Method 1	Method 2	Method 3
Privilege Enable	local ▼	- ▼	- ▼
Login	local ▼	- ▼	- ▼

Authorization

Type	Active	Console	Method
Exec	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	radius ▼
Dot1x	<input type="checkbox"/>	-	radius

Accounting

Update Period: minutes

Type	Active	Broadcast	Mode	Method	Privilege
System	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	-	radius ▼	-
Exec	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	start-stop ▼	radius ▼	-
Dot1x	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	start-stop ▼	radius ▼	-
Commands	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	stop-only	tacacs+	0 ▼

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 99 Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication	Use this section to specify the methods used to authenticate users accessing the Switch.
Privilege Enable	<p>These fields specify which database the Switch should use (first, second and third) to authenticate access privilege level for administrator accounts (users for Switch management).</p> <p>Configure the access privilege of accounts via commands (see the Ethernet Switch CLI Reference Guide) for local authentication. The TACACS+ and RADIUS are external servers. Before you specify the priority, make sure you have set up the corresponding database correctly first.</p> <p>You can specify up to three methods for the Switch to authenticate the access privilege level of administrators. The Switch checks the methods in the order you configure them (first Method 1, then Method 2 and finally Method 3). You must configure the settings in the Method 1 field. If you want the Switch to check other sources for access privilege level specify them in Method 2 and Method 3 fields.</p> <p>Select local to have the Switch check the access privilege configured for local authentication.</p> <p>Select radius or tacacs+ to have the Switch check the access privilege via the external servers.</p>

Table 99 Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Login	<p>These fields specify which database the Switch should use (first, second and third) to authenticate administrator accounts (users for Switch management).</p> <p>Configure the local user accounts in the Access Control > Logins screen. The TACACS+ and RADIUS are external servers. Before you specify the priority, make sure you have set up the corresponding database correctly first.</p> <p>You can specify up to three methods for the Switch to authenticate administrator accounts. The Switch checks the methods in the order you configure them (first Method 1, then Method 2 and finally Method 3). You must configure the settings in the Method 1 field. If you want the Switch to check other sources for administrator accounts, specify them in Method 2 and Method 3 fields.</p> <p>Select local to have the Switch check the administrator accounts configured in the Access Control > Logins screen.</p> <p>Select radius to have the Switch check the administrator accounts configured via the RADIUS Server.</p> <p>Select tacacs+ to have the Switch check the administrator accounts configured via the TACACS+ Server.</p>
Authorization	Use this section to configure authorization settings on the Switch.
Type	<p>Set whether the Switch provides the following services to a user.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Exec: Allow an administrator which logs in the Switch through Telnet or SSH to have different access privilege level assigned via the external server. • Dot1x: Allow an IEEE 802.1x client to have different bandwidth limit or VLAN ID assigned via the external server.
Active	Select this to activate authorization for a specified event types.
Console	Select this to allow an administrator which logs in the Switch through the console port to have different access privilege level assigned via the external server.
Method	<p>Select whether you want to use RADIUS or TACACS+ for authorization of specific types of events.</p> <p>RADIUS is the only method for IEEE 802.1x authorization.</p>
Accounting	Use this section to configure accounting settings on the Switch.
Update Period	This is the amount of time in minutes before the Switch sends an update to the accounting server. This is only valid if you select the start-stop option for the Exec or Dot1x entries.
Type	<p>The Switch supports the following types of events to be sent to the accounting server(s):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • System - Configure the Switch to send information when the following system events occur: system boots up, system shuts down, system accounting is enabled, system accounting is disabled • Exec - Configure the Switch to send information when an administrator logs in and logs out via the console port, telnet or SSH. • Dot1x - Configure the Switch to send information when an IEEE 802.1x client begins a session (authenticates via the Switch), ends a session as well as interim updates of a session. • Commands - Configure the Switch to send information when commands of specified privilege level and higher are executed on the Switch.
Active	Select this to activate accounting for a specified event types.
Broadcast	<p>Select this to have the Switch send accounting information to all configured accounting servers at the same time.</p> <p>If you don't select this and you have two accounting servers set up, then the Switch sends information to the first accounting server and if it doesn't get a response from the accounting server then it tries the second accounting server.</p>

Table 99 Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mode	<p>The Switch supports two modes of recording login events. Select:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • start-stop - to have the Switch send information to the accounting server when a user begins a session, during a user's session (if it lasts past the Update Period), and when a user ends a session. • stop-only - to have the Switch send information to the accounting server only when a user ends a session.
Method	<p>Select whether you want to use RADIUS or TACACS+ for accounting of specific types of events.</p> <p>TACACS+ is the only method for recording Commands type of event.</p>
Privilege	<p>This field is only configurable for Commands type of event. Select the threshold command privilege level for which the Switch should send accounting information. The Switch will send accounting information when commands at the level you specify and higher are executed on the Switch.</p>
Apply	<p>Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.</p>
Cancel	<p>Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.</p>

26.2.4 Vendor Specific Attribute

RFC 2865 standard specifies a method for sending vendor-specific information between a RADIUS server and a network access device (for example, the Switch). A company can create Vendor Specific Attributes (VSAs) to expand the functionality of a RADIUS server.

The Switch supports VSAs that allow you to perform the following actions based on user authentication:

- Limit bandwidth on incoming or outgoing traffic for the port the user connects to.
- Assign account privilege levels (see the CLI Reference Guide for more information on account privilege levels) for the authenticated user.

The VSAs are composed of the following:

- **Vendor-ID:** An identification number assigned to the company by the IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority). Zyxel's vendor ID is 890.
- **Vendor-Type:** A vendor specified attribute, identifying the setting you want to modify.
- **Vendor-data:** A value you want to assign to the setting.

Note: Refer to the documentation that comes with your RADIUS server on how to configure VSAs for users authenticating via the RADIUS server.

The following table describes the VSAs supported on the Switch. Note that these attributes only work when you enable authorization (see [Section 26.2.3 on page 233](#)).

Table 100 Supported VSAs

FUNCTION	ATTRIBUTE
Ingress Bandwidth Assignment	Vendor-Id = 890 Vendor-Type = 1 Vendor-data = ingress rate (Kbps in decimal format)
Egress Bandwidth Assignment	Vendor-Id = 890 Vendor-Type = 2 Vendor-data = egress rate (Kbps in decimal format)
Privilege Assignment	Vendor-ID = 890 Vendor-Type = 3 Vendor-Data = " shell:priv-lvl=N " or Vendor-ID = 9 (CISCO) Vendor-Type = 1 (CISCO-AVPAIR) Vendor-Data = " shell:priv-lvl=N " where N is a privilege level (from 0 to 14). Note: If you set the privilege level of a login account differently on the RADIUS server(s) and the Switch, the user is assigned a privilege level from the database (RADIUS or local) the Switch uses first for user authentication.

26.2.5 Tunnel Protocol Attribute

You can configure tunnel protocol attributes on the RADIUS server (refer to your RADIUS server documentation) to assign a port on the Switch to a VLAN based on IEEE 802.1x authentication. The port VLAN settings are fixed and untagged. This will also set the port's VID. The following table describes the values you need to configure. Note that these attributes only work when you enable authorization (see [Section 26.2.3 on page 233](#)).

Table 101 Supported Tunnel Protocol Attribute

FUNCTION	ATTRIBUTE
VLAN Assignment	Tunnel-Type = VLAN (13) Tunnel-Medium-Type = 802 (6) Tunnel-Private-Group-ID = VLAN ID Note: You must also create a VLAN with the specified VID on the Switch. Note: The bolded values in this table are fixed values as defined in RFC 3580.

26.3 Supported RADIUS Attributes

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) attributes are data used to define specific authentication, and accounting elements in a user profile, which is stored on the RADIUS server. This section lists the RADIUS attributes supported by the Switch.

Refer to RFC 2865 for more information about RADIUS attributes used for authentication. Refer to RFC 2866 and RFC 2869 for RADIUS attributes used for accounting.

This section lists the attributes used by authentication and accounting functions on the Switch. In cases where the attribute has a specific format associated with it, the format is specified.

26.3.1 Attributes Used for Authentication

The following sections list the attributes sent from the Switch to the RADIUS server when performing authentication.

26.3.1.1 Attributes Used for Authenticating Privilege Access

User-Name

- the format of the User-Name attribute is **\$enab#\$**, where # is the privilege level (1-14)

User-Password

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

26.3.1.2 Attributes Used to Login Users

User-Name

User-Password

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

26.3.1.3 Attributes Used by the IEEE 802.1x Authentication

User-Name

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

NAS-Port

NAS-Port-Type

- This value is set to **Ethernet(15)** on the Switch.

Calling-Station-Id

Frame-MTU

EAP-Message

State

Message-Authenticator

26.3.2 Attributes Used for Accounting

The following sections list the attributes sent from the Switch to the RADIUS server when performing authentication.

26.3.2.1 Attributes Used for Accounting System Events

NAS-IP-Address

NAS-Identifier

Acct-Status-Type

Acct-Session-ID

- The format of Acct-Session-Id is **date+time+8-digit sequential number**, for example, 2007041917210300000001. (date: 2007/04/19, time: 17:21:03, serial number: 00000001)

Acct-Delay-Time

26.3.2.2 Attributes Used for Accounting Exec Events

The attributes are listed in the following table along with the time that they are sent (the difference between Console and Telnet/SSH Exec events is that the Telnet/SSH events utilize the Calling-Station-Id attribute):

Table 102 RADIUS Attributes - Exec Events via Console

ATTRIBUTE	START	INTERIM-UPDATE	STOP
User-Name	✓	✓	✓
NAS-Identifier	✓	✓	✓
NAS-IP-Address	✓	✓	✓
Service-Type	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Status-Type	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Delay-Time	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Session-Id	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Authentic	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Session-Time		✓	✓
Acct-Terminate-Cause			✓

Table 103 RADIUS Attributes - Exec Events via Telnet/SSH

ATTRIBUTE	START	INTERIM-UPDATE	STOP
User-Name	✓	✓	✓
NAS-Identifier	✓	✓	✓
NAS-IP-Address	✓	✓	✓
Service-Type	✓	✓	✓
Calling-Station-Id	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Status-Type	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Delay-Time	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Session-Id	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Authentic	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Session-Time		✓	✓
Acct-Terminate-Cause			✓

26.3.2.3 Attributes Used for Accounting IEEE 802.1x Events

The attributes are listed in the following table along with the time of the session they are sent:

Table 104 RADIUS Attributes - Exec Events via Console

ATTRIBUTE	START	INTERIM-UPDATE	STOP
User-Name	✓	✓	✓
NAS-IP-Address	✓	✓	✓
NAS-Port	✓	✓	✓
Class	✓	✓	✓
Called-Station-Id	✓	✓	✓
Calling-Station-Id	✓	✓	✓
NAS-Identifier	✓	✓	✓
NAS-Port-Type	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Status-Type	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Delay-Time	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Session-Id	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Authentic	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Input-Octets		✓	✓
Acct-Output-Octets		✓	✓
Acct-Session-Time		✓	✓
Acct-Input-Packets		✓	✓
Acct-Output-Packets		✓	✓
Acct-Terminate-Cause			✓
Acct-Input-Gigawords		✓	✓
Acct-Output-Gigawords		✓	✓

CHAPTER 27

IP Source Guard

Use IP source guard to filter unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network.

27.1 IP Source Guard Overview

IP source guard uses a binding table to distinguish between authorized and unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network. A binding contains these key attributes:

- MAC address
- VLAN ID
- IP address
- Port number

When the Switch receives a DHCP or ARP packet, it looks up the appropriate MAC address, VLAN ID, IP address, and port number in the binding table. If there is a binding, the Switch forwards the packet. If there is not a binding, the Switch discards the packet.

The Switch builds the binding table by snooping DHCP packets (dynamic bindings) and from information provided manually by administrators (static bindings).

IP source guard consists of the following features:

- Static bindings. Use this to create static bindings in the binding table.
- DHCP snooping. Use this to filter unauthorized DHCP packets on the network and to build the binding table dynamically.
- ARP inspection. Use this to filter unauthorized ARP packets on the network.

If you want to use dynamic bindings to filter unauthorized ARP packets (typical implementation), you have to enable DHCP snooping before you enable ARP inspection.

27.1.1 DHCP Snooping Overview

Use DHCP snooping to filter unauthorized DHCP packets on the network and to build the binding table dynamically. This can prevent clients from getting IP addresses from unauthorized DHCP servers.

27.1.1.1 Trusted vs. Untrusted Ports

Every port is either a trusted port or an untrusted port for DHCP snooping. This setting is independent of the trusted/untrusted setting for ARP inspection. You can also specify the maximum number for DHCP packets that each port (trusted or untrusted) can receive each second.

Trusted ports are connected to DHCP servers or other switches. The Switch discards DHCP packets from trusted ports only if the rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high. The Switch learns dynamic bindings from trusted ports.

Note: The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports.

Untrusted ports are connected to subscribers. The Switch discards DHCP packets from untrusted ports in the following situations:

- The packet is a DHCP server packet (for example, OFFER, ACK, or NACK).
- The source MAC address and source IP address in the packet do not match any of the current bindings.
- The packet is a RELEASE or DECLINE packet, and the source MAC address and source port do not match any of the current bindings.
- The rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high.

27.1.1.2 DHCP Snooping Database

The Switch stores the binding table in volatile memory. If the Switch restarts, it loads static bindings from permanent memory but loses the dynamic bindings, in which case the devices in the network have to send DHCP requests again. As a result, it is recommended you configure the DHCP snooping database.

The DHCP snooping database maintains the dynamic bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection in a file on an external TFTP server. If you set up the DHCP snooping database, the Switch can reload the dynamic bindings from the DHCP snooping database after the Switch restarts.

You can configure the name and location of the file on the external TFTP server. The file has the following format:

Figure 143 DHCP Snooping Database File Format

```
<initial-checksum>
TYPE DHCP-SNOOPING
VERSION 1
BEGIN
<binding-1> <checksum-1>
<binding-2> <checksum-1-2>
...
...
<binding-n> <checksum-1-2-..-n>
END
```

The <initial-checksum> helps distinguish between the bindings in the latest update and the bindings from previous updates. Each binding consists of 72 bytes, a space, and another checksum that is used to validate the binding when it is read. If the calculated checksum is not equal to the checksum in the file, that binding and all others after it are ignored.

27.1.1.3 DHCP Relay Option 82 Information

The Switch can add information to DHCP requests that it does not discard. This provides the DHCP server more information about the source of the requests. The Switch can add the following information:

- Slot ID (1 byte), port ID (1 byte), and source VLAN ID (2 bytes)

- System name (up to 32 bytes)

This information is stored in an Agent Information field in the option 82 field of the DHCP headers of client DHCP request frames. See [Chapter 41 on page 338](#) for more information about DHCP relay option 82.

When the DHCP server responds, the Switch removes the information in the Agent Information field before forwarding the response to the original source.

You can configure this setting for each source VLAN. This setting is independent of the DHCP relay settings ([Chapter 41 on page 338](#)).

27.1.1.4 Configuring DHCP Snooping

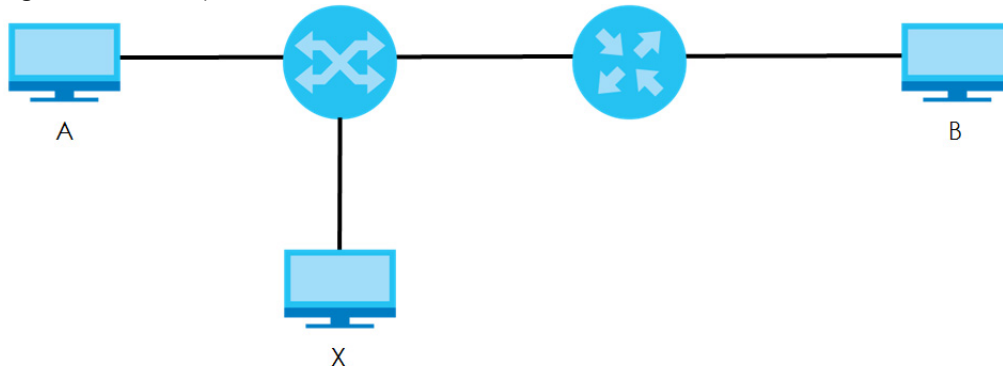
Follow these steps to configure DHCP snooping on the Switch.

- 1 Enable DHCP snooping on the Switch.
- 2 Enable DHCP snooping on each VLAN, and configure DHCP relay option 82.
- 3 Configure trusted and untrusted ports, and specify the maximum number of DHCP packets that each port can receive per second.
- 4 Configure static bindings.

27.1.2 ARP Inspection Overview

Use ARP inspection to filter unauthorized ARP packets on the network. This can prevent many kinds of man-in-the-middle attacks, such as the one in the following example.

Figure 144 Example: Man-in-the-middle Attack



In this example, computer **B** tries to establish a connection with computer **A**. Computer **X** is in the same broadcast domain as computer **A** and intercepts the ARP request for computer **A**. Then, computer **X** does the following things:

- It pretends to be computer **A** and responds to computer **B**.
- It pretends to be computer **B** and sends a message to computer **A**.

As a result, all the communication between computer **A** and computer **B** passes through computer **X**. Computer **X** can read and alter the information passed between them.

27.1.2.1 ARP Inspection and MAC Address Filters

When the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet, it automatically creates a MAC address filter to block traffic from the source MAC address and source VLAN ID of the unauthorized ARP packet. You can configure how long the MAC address filter remains in the Switch.

These MAC address filters are different than regular MAC address filters ([Chapter 12 on page 130](#)).

- They are stored only in volatile memory.
- They do not use the same space in memory that regular MAC address filters use.
- They appear only in the **ARP Inspection** screens and commands, not in the **MAC Address Filter** screens and commands.

27.1.2.2 Trusted vs. Untrusted Ports

Every port is either a trusted port or an untrusted port for ARP inspection. This setting is independent of the trusted/untrusted setting for DHCP snooping. You can also specify the maximum rate at which the Switch receives ARP packets on untrusted ports.

The Switch does not discard ARP packets on trusted ports for any reason.

The Switch discards ARP packets on untrusted ports in the following situations:

- The sender's information in the ARP packet does not match any of the current bindings.
- The rate at which ARP packets arrive is too high.

27.1.2.3 Syslog

The Switch can send syslog messages to the specified syslog server ([Chapter 46 on page 390](#)) when it forwards or discards ARP packets. The Switch can consolidate log messages and send log messages in batches to make this mechanism more efficient.

27.1.2.4 Configuring ARP Inspection

Follow these steps to configure ARP inspection on the Switch.

- 1 Configure DHCP snooping. See [Section 27.1.1.4 on page 243](#).

Note: It is recommended you enable DHCP snooping at least one day before you enable ARP inspection so that the Switch has enough time to build the binding table.

- 2 Enable ARP inspection on each VLAN.
- 3 Configure trusted and untrusted ports, and specify the maximum number of ARP packets that each port can receive per second.

27.2 IP Source Guard

Use this screen to look at the current bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection. Bindings are used by DHCP snooping and ARP inspection to distinguish between authorized and unauthorized packets in the network. The Switch learns the bindings by snooping DHCP packets (dynamic bindings) and from

information provided manually by administrators (static bindings). To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard**.

Figure 145 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard

IP Source Guard						
Index	MAC Address	IP Address	Lease	Type	VID	Port
1	00:a0:c5:01:23:45	192.168.1.99	infinity	static	1	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 105 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each binding.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
Lease	This field displays how many days, hours, minutes, and seconds the binding is valid; for example, 2d3h4m5s means the binding is still valid for 2 days, 3 hours, 4 minutes and 5 seconds. This field displays infinity if the binding is always valid (for example, a static binding).
Type	This field displays how the Switch learned the binding. static: This binding was learned from information provided manually by an administrator. dhcp-snooping: This binding was learned by snooping DHCP packets.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the binding.
Port	This field displays the port number in the binding. If this field is blank, the binding applies to all ports.

27.3 IP Source Guard Static Binding

Use this screen to manage static bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection. Static bindings are uniquely identified by the MAC address and VLAN ID. Each MAC address and VLAN ID can only be in one static binding. If you try to create a static binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID as an existing static binding, the new static binding replaces the original one. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > Static Binding**.

Figure 146 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > Static Binding

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 106 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > Static Binding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ARP Freeze	ARP Freeze allows you to automatically create static bindings from the current ARP entries (either dynamically learned or static ARP entries) until the Switch's binding table is full. Note: The ARP learning mode should be set to ARP-Request in the IP Application > ARP Setup > ARP Learning screen before you use the ARP Freeze feature.
Condition	All - Select this and click ARP Freeze to have the Switch automatically add all the current ARP entries to the static bindings table. Port List - Select this and enter the number of the port(s) (separated by a comma). ARP entries learned on the specified port(s) are added to the static bindings table after you click ARP Freeze . VLAN List - Select this and enter the ID number of the VLAN(s) (separated by a comma). ARP entries for the specified VLAN(s) are added to the static bindings table after you click ARP Freeze .
Static Binding	
MAC Address	Enter the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	Enter the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
VLAN	Enter the source VLAN ID in the binding.
Port	Specify the port(s) in the binding. If this binding has one port, select the first radio button and enter the port number in the field to the right. If this binding applies to all ports, select Any .
Add	Click this to create the specified static binding or to update an existing one.

Table 106 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > Static Binding (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Cancel	Click this to reset the values above based on the last selected static binding or, if not applicable, to clear the fields above.
Clear	Click this to clear the fields above.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each binding.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
Lease	This field displays how long the binding is valid.
Type	This field displays how the Switch learned the binding. static: This binding was learned from information provided manually by an administrator.
VLAN	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the binding.
Port	This field displays the port number in the binding. If this field is blank, the binding applies to all ports.
Delete	Check the entry(ies) that you want to remove and then click Delete to remove the selected entry(ies) from the summary table.
Cancel	Click this to clear the Delete check boxes above.

27.4 DHCP Snooping

Use this screen to look at various statistics about the DHCP snooping database. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping**.

Figure 147 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping

DHCP Snooping		Configure	IPSG
Database Status			
Description	Status		
Agent URL			
Write delay timer	300	seconds	
Abort timer	300	seconds	
Agent running	None		
Delay timer expiry	Not Running		
Abort timer expiry	Not Running		
Last succeeded time	None		
Last failed time	None		
Last failed reason	No failure recorded		
	Times		
Total attempts	0		
Startup failures	0		
Successful transfers	0		
Failed transfers	0		
Successful reads	0		
Failed reads	0		
Successful writes	0		
Failed writes	0		
Database detail			
Description	Status		
First successful access	None		
Last ignored bindings counters			
Binding collisions	0		
Invalid interfaces	0		
Parse failures	0		
Expired leases	0		
Unsupported vlans	0		
Last ignored time	None		
Total ignored bindings counters			
Binding collisions	0		
Invalid interfaces	0		
Parse failures	0		
Expired leases	0		
Unsupported vlans	0		

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 107 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Database Status	
	This section displays the current settings for the DHCP snooping database. You can configure them in the DHCP Snooping Configure screen. See Section 27.5 on page 250 .
Agent URL	This field displays the location of the DHCP snooping database.
Write delay timer	This field displays how long (in seconds) the Switch tries to complete a specific update in the DHCP snooping database before it gives up.
Abort timer	This field displays how long (in seconds) the Switch waits to update the DHCP snooping database after the current bindings change.
	This section displays information about the current update and the next update of the DHCP snooping database.

Table 107 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Agent running	<p>This field displays the status of the current update or access of the DHCP snooping database.</p> <p>none: The Switch is not accessing the DHCP snooping database.</p> <p>read: The Switch is loading dynamic bindings from the DHCP snooping database.</p> <p>write: The Switch is updating the DHCP snooping database.</p>
Delay timer expiry	<p>This field displays how much longer (in seconds) the Switch tries to complete the current update before it gives up. It displays Not Running if the Switch is not updating the DHCP snooping database right now.</p>
Abort timer expiry	<p>This field displays when (in seconds) the Switch is going to update the DHCP snooping database again. It displays Not Running if the current bindings have not changed since the last update.</p>
	<p>This section displays information about the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database.</p>
Last succeeded time	<p>This field displays the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database successfully.</p>
Last failed time	<p>This field displays the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database unsuccessfully.</p>
Last failed reason	<p>This field displays the reason the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database unsuccessfully.</p>
	<p>This section displays historical information about the number of times the Switch successfully or unsuccessfully read or updated the DHCP snooping database.</p>
Total attempts	<p>This field displays the number of times the Switch has tried to access the DHCP snooping database for any reason.</p>
Startup failures	<p>This field displays the number of times the Switch could not create or read the DHCP snooping database when the Switch started up or a new URL is configured for the DHCP snooping database.</p>
Successful transfers	<p>This field displays the number of times the Switch read bindings from or updated the bindings in the DHCP snooping database successfully.</p>
Failed transfers	<p>This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to read bindings from or update the bindings in the DHCP snooping database.</p>
Successful reads	<p>This field displays the number of times the Switch read bindings from the DHCP snooping database successfully.</p>
Failed reads	<p>This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to read bindings from the DHCP snooping database.</p>
Successful writes	<p>This field displays the number of times the Switch updated the bindings in the DHCP snooping database successfully.</p>
Failed writes	<p>This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to update the bindings in the DHCP snooping database.</p>
Database detail	
First successful access	<p>This field displays the first time the Switch accessed the DHCP snooping database for any reason.</p>
Last ignored bindings counters	<p>This section displays the number of times and the reasons the Switch ignored bindings the last time it read bindings from the DHCP binding database. You can clear these counters by restarting the Switch or using CLI commands. See the Ethernet Switch CLI Reference Guide.</p>
Binding collisions	<p>This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the Switch already had a binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.</p>
Invalid interfaces	<p>This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the port number was a trusted interface or does not exist anymore.</p>

Table 107 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Parse failures	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the Switch was unable to understand the binding in the DHCP binding database.
Expired leases	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the lease time had already expired.
Unsupported vlans	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the VLAN ID does not exist anymore.
Last ignored time	This field displays the last time the Switch ignored any bindings for any reason from the DHCP binding database.
Total ignored bindings counters	This section displays the reasons the Switch has ignored bindings any time it read bindings from the DHCP binding database. You can clear these counters by restarting the Switch or using CLI commands. See the Ethernet Switch CLI Reference Guide.
Binding collisions	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the Switch already had a binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.
Invalid interfaces	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the port number was a trusted interface or does not exist anymore.
Parse failures	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the Switch was unable to understand the binding in the DHCP binding database.
Expired leases	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the lease time had already expired.
Unsupported vlans	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the VLAN ID does not exist anymore.

27.5 DHCP Snooping Configure

Use this screen to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch (not on specific VLAN), specify the VLAN where the default DHCP server is located, and configure the DHCP snooping database. The DHCP snooping database stores the current bindings on a secure, external TFTP server so that they are still available after a restart. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure**.

Figure 148 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping Configure

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 108 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch. You still have to enable DHCP snooping on specific VLAN and specify trusted ports. Note: The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports.
DHCP Vlan	Select Disable if you do not want the Switch to forward DHCP packets to a specific VLAN. Select the second option and specify a VLAN ID if you want the Switch to forward DHCP packets to DHCP servers on a specific VLAN. Note: You have to enable DHCP snooping on the DHCP VLAN too. You can enable Option82 in the DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure screen (Section 27.5.2 on page 253) to help the DHCP servers distinguish between DHCP requests from different VLAN.
Database	If Timeout interval is greater than Write delay interval , it is possible that the next update is scheduled to occur before the current update has finished successfully or timed out. In this case, the Switch waits to start the next update until it completes the current one.
Agent URL	Enter the location of the DHCP snooping database. The location should be expressed like this: ftp://{domain name or IP address}/directory, if applicable/file name ; for example, ftp://192.168.10.1/database.txt .
Timeout interval	Enter how long (10-65535 seconds) the Switch tries to complete a specific update in the DHCP snooping database before it gives up.
Write delay interval	Enter how long (10-65535 seconds) the Switch waits to update the DHCP snooping database the first time the current bindings change after an update. Once the next update is scheduled, additional changes in current bindings are automatically included in the next update.

Table 108 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping Configure (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Renew DHCP Snooping URL	Enter the location of a DHCP snooping database, and click Renew if you want the Switch to load it. You can use this to load dynamic bindings from a different DHCP snooping database than the one specified in Agent URL . When the Switch loads dynamic bindings from a DHCP snooping database, it does not discard the current dynamic bindings first. If there is a conflict, the Switch keeps the dynamic binding in volatile memory and updates the Binding collisions counter in the DHCP Snooping screen (Section 27.4 on page 247).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

27.5.1 DHCP Snooping Port Configure

Use this screen to specify whether ports are trusted or untrusted ports for DHCP snooping.

Note: The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports.

You can also specify the maximum number for DHCP packets that each port (trusted or untrusted) can receive each second. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > Port**.

Figure 149 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping Port Configure

Port	Server Trusted state	Rate (pps)
*	Untrusted ▼	
1	Untrusted ▼	0
2	Untrusted ▼	0
3	Untrusted ▼	0
4	Untrusted ▼	0
5	Untrusted ▼	0
6	Untrusted ▼	0
7	Untrusted ▼	0
8	Untrusted ▼	0
9	Untrusted ▼	0

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 109 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping Port Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number. If you configure the * port, the settings are applied to all of the ports.
Server Trusted state	Select whether this port is a trusted port (Trusted) or an untrusted port (Untrusted). Trusted ports are connected to DHCP servers or other switches, and the Switch discards DHCP packets from trusted ports only if the rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high. Untrusted ports are connected to subscribers, and the Switch discards DHCP packets from untrusted ports in the following situations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The packet is a DHCP server packet (for example, OFFER, ACK, or NACK). The source MAC address and source IP address in the packet do not match any of the current bindings. The packet is a RELEASE or DECLINE packet, and the source MAC address and source port do not match any of the current bindings. The rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high.
Rate (pps)	Specify the maximum number for DHCP packets (1-2048) that the Switch receives from each port each second. The Switch discards any additional DHCP packets. Enter 0 to disable this limit, which is recommended for trusted ports.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

27.5.2 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure

Use this screen to enable DHCP snooping on each VLAN and to specify whether or not the Switch adds DHCP relay agent option 82 information ([Chapter 41 on page 338](#)) to DHCP requests that the Switch relays to a DHCP server for each VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN**.

Figure 150 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN

The screenshot shows the 'DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure' interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the title and a 'Port Configure' link. Below this is a section with a 'Show VLAN' button and two input fields for 'Start VID' and 'End VID'. An 'Apply' button is centered below these fields. The main part of the screen is a table with three columns: 'VID', 'Enabled', and 'Option 82 Profile'. The 'VID' column has a single entry with an asterisk (*). The 'Enabled' column has a dropdown menu currently set to 'No'. The 'Option 82 Profile' column has a dropdown menu. At the bottom of the screen, there are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 110 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to manage in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the * VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
Enabled	Select Yes to enable DHCP snooping on the VLAN. You still have to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch and specify trusted ports. Note: The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports.
Option 82 Profile	Select a pre-defined DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to all ports in the specified VLAN(s). The Switch adds the information (such as slot number, port number, VLAN ID and/or system name) specified in the profile to DHCP requests that it broadcasts to the DHCP VLAN, if specified, or VLAN. You can specify the DHCP VLAN in the DHCP Snooping Configure screen (see Section 27.5 on page 250) and the DHCP option 82 profile in IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Option 82 Profile (see Section 41.4.2 on page 340).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

27.5.3 DHCP Snooping VLAN Port Configure

Use this screen to apply a different DHCP option 82 profile to certain ports in a VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN > Port**.

Figure 151 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN > Port

The screenshot shows the 'DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure' screen. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'Port' and 'DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure'. Below this, there are three input fields: 'VID', 'Port', and 'Option 82 Profile'. Below these fields are three buttons: 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear'. At the bottom of the screen, there is a table with the following columns: 'Index', 'VID', 'Port', 'Profile Name', and 'Delete'. Below the table are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Cancel'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

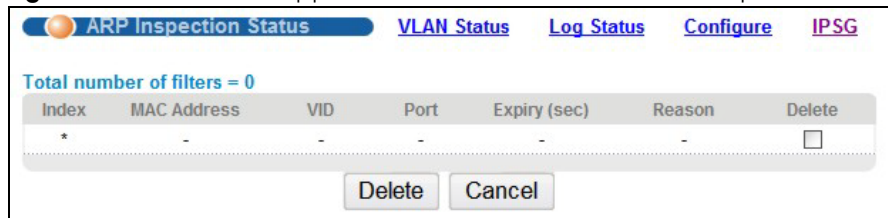
Table 111 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN you want to configure here.
Port	Enter the number of port(s) to which you want to apply the specified DHCP option 82 profile. You can enter multiple ports separated by (no space) comma (,) or hyphen (-). For example, enter "3-5" for ports 3, 4, and 5. Enter "3,5,7" for ports 3, 5, and 7.
Option 82 Profile	Select a pre-defined DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to the specified port(s) in this VLAN. The Switch adds the information (such as slot number, port number, VLAN ID and/or system name) specified in the profile to DHCP requests that it broadcasts to the DHCP VLAN, if specified, or VLAN. You can specify the DHCP VLAN in the DHCP Snooping Configure screen (see Section 27.5 on page 250). The profile you select here has priority over the one you select in the DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN screen.
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values above based on the last selected entry or, if not applicable, to clear the fields above.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each entry. Click an index number to change the settings.
VID	This field displays the VLAN to which the port(s) belongs.
Port	This field displays the port(s) to which the Switch applies the settings.
Profile Name	This field displays the DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to the port(s).
Delete	Select the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the Delete column, then click the Delete button to remove the selected entry(ies) from the table.
Cancel	Click this to clear the Delete check boxes above.

27.6 ARP Inspection Status

Use this screen to look at the current list of MAC address filters that were created because the Switch identified an unauthorized ARP packet. When the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet, it automatically creates a MAC address filter to block traffic from the source MAC address and source VLAN ID of the unauthorized ARP packet. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection**.

Figure 152 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 112 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Total number of filters	This field displays the current number of MAC address filters that were created because the Switch identified unauthorized ARP packets.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each MAC address filter.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the MAC address filter.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the MAC address filter.
Port	This field displays the source port of the discarded ARP packet.
Expiry (sec)	This field displays how long (in seconds) the MAC address filter remains in the Switch. You can also delete the record manually (Delete).
Reason	This field displays the reason the ARP packet was discarded. MAC+VLAN: The MAC address and VLAN ID were not in the binding table. IP: The MAC address and VLAN ID were in the binding table, but the IP address was not valid. Port: The MAC address, VLAN ID, and IP address were in the binding table, but the port number was not valid.
Delete	Select the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the Delete column, then click the Delete button to remove the selected entry(ies) from the table.
Cancel	Click this to clear the Delete check boxes above.

27.6.1 ARP Inspection VLAN Status

Use this screen to look at various statistics about ARP packets in each VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > VLAN Status**.

Figure 153 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection VLAN Status

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 113 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show VLAN range	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to look at in the section below.
Enabled VLAN	Select this to look at all the VLANs on which ARP inspection is enabled in the section below.
Selected VLAN	Select this to look at all the VLANs in a specific range in the section below. Then, enter the lowest VLAN ID (Start VID) and the highest VLAN ID (End VID) you want to look at.

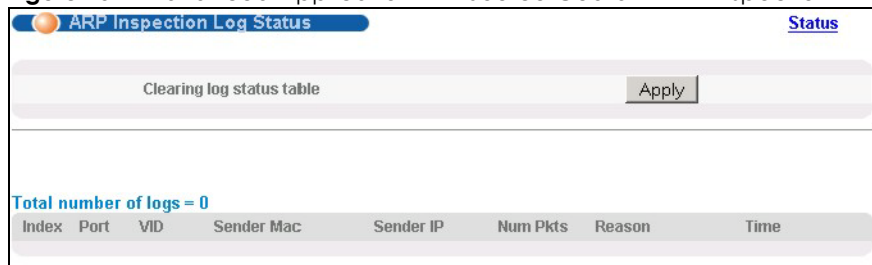
Table 113 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above.
Received	This field displays the total number of ARP packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Request	This field displays the total number of ARP Request packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Reply	This field displays the total number of ARP Reply packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Forwarded	This field displays the total number of ARP packets the Switch forwarded for the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Dropped	This field displays the total number of ARP packets the Switch discarded for the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.

27.6.2 ARP Inspection Log Status

Use this screen to look at log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Log Status**.

Figure 154 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Log Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 114 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Log Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clearing log status table	Click Apply to remove all the log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet.
Total number of logs	This field displays the number of log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet. If one or more log messages are dropped due to unavailable buffer, there is an entry called overflow with the current number of dropped log messages.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each log message.
Port	This field displays the source port of the ARP packet.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID of the ARP packet.
Sender Mac	This field displays the source MAC address of the ARP packet.
Sender IP	This field displays the source IP address of the ARP packet.
Num Pkts	This field displays the number of ARP packets that were consolidated into this log message. The Switch consolidates identical log messages generated by ARP packets in the log consolidation interval into one log message. You can configure this interval in the ARP Inspection Configure screen. See Section 27.6.3 on page 258 .

Table 114 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Log Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reason	<p>This field displays the reason the log message was generated.</p> <p>dhcp deny: An ARP packet was discarded because it violated a dynamic binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.</p> <p>static deny: An ARP packet was discarded because it violated a static binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.</p> <p>deny: An ARP packet was discarded because there were no bindings with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.</p> <p>dhcp permit: An ARP packet was forwarded because it matched a dynamic binding.</p> <p>static permit: An ARP packet was forwarded because it matched a static binding.</p> <p>In the ARP Inspection VLAN Configure screen, you can configure the Switch to generate log messages when ARP packets are discarded or forwarded based on the VLAN ID of the ARP packet. See Section 27.6.5 on page 260.</p>
Time	This field displays when the log message was generated.

27.6.3 ARP Inspection Configure

Use this screen to enable ARP inspection on the Switch. You can also configure the length of time the Switch stores records of discarded ARP packets and global settings for the ARP inspection log. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure**.

Figure 155 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 115 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable ARP inspection on the Switch. You still have to enable ARP inspection on specific VLAN and specify trusted ports.
Filter Aging Time	

Table 115 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Filter aging time	This setting has no effect on existing MAC address filters. Enter how long (1-2147483647 seconds) the MAC address filter remains in the Switch after the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet. The Switch automatically deletes the MAC address filter afterwards. Type 0 if you want the MAC address filter to be permanent.
Log Profile	
Log buffer size	Enter the maximum number (1-1024) of log messages that were generated by ARP packets and have not been sent to the syslog server yet. Make sure this number is appropriate for the specified Syslog rate and Log interval . If the number of log messages in the Switch exceeds this number, the Switch stops recording log messages and simply starts counting the number of entries that were dropped due to unavailable buffer. Click Clearing log status table in the ARP Inspection Log Status screen to clear the log and reset this counter. See Section 27.6.2 on page 257 .
Syslog rate	Type the maximum number of syslog messages the Switch can send to the syslog server in one batch. This number is expressed as a rate because the batch frequency is determined by the Log Interval . You must configure the syslog server (Chapter 46 on page 390) to use this. Enter 0 if you do not want the Switch to send log messages generated by ARP packets to the syslog server. The relationship between Syslog rate and Log interval is illustrated in the following examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4 invalid ARP packets per second, Syslog rate is 5, Log interval is 1: the Switch sends 4 syslog messages every second. • 6 invalid ARP packets per second, Syslog rate is 5, Log interval is 2: the Switch sends 5 syslog messages every 2 seconds.
Log interval	Type how often (1-86400 seconds) the Switch sends a batch of syslog messages to the syslog server. Enter 0 if you want the Switch to send syslog messages immediately. See Syslog rate for an example of the relationship between Syslog rate and Log interval .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

27.6.4 ARP Inspection Port Configure

Use this screen to specify whether ports are trusted or untrusted ports for ARP inspection. You can also specify the maximum rate at which the Switch receives ARP packets on each untrusted port. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > Port**.

Figure 156 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection Port Configure

Port	Trusted State	Limit	
		Rate (pps)	Burst interval (seconds)
*	Untrusted		
1	Untrusted	15	1
2	Untrusted	15	1
3	Untrusted	15	1
4	Untrusted	15	1
5	Untrusted	15	1
6	Untrusted	15	1
7	Untrusted	15	1
8	Untrusted	15	1

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 116 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection Port Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number. If you configure the * port, the settings are applied to all of the ports.
Trusted State	Select whether this port is a trusted port (Trusted) or an untrusted port (Untrusted). The Switch does not discard ARP packets on trusted ports for any reason. The Switch discards ARP packets on untrusted ports in the following situations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The sender's information in the ARP packet does not match any of the current bindings. The rate at which ARP packets arrive is too high. You can specify the maximum rate at which ARP packets can arrive on untrusted ports.
Limit	Rate and Burst Interval settings have no effect on trusted ports.
Rate (pps)	Specify the maximum rate (1-2048 packets per second) at which the Switch receives ARP packets from each port. The Switch discards any additional ARP packets. Enter 0 to disable this limit.
Burst interval (seconds)	The burst interval is the length of time over which the rate of ARP packets is monitored for each port. For example, if the Rate is 15 pps and the burst interval is 1 second, then the Switch accepts a maximum of 15 ARP packets in every one-second interval. If the burst interval is 5 seconds, then the Switch accepts a maximum of 75 ARP packets in every five-second interval. Enter the length (1-15 seconds) of the burst interval.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

27.6.5 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure

Use this screen to enable ARP inspection on each VLAN and to specify when the Switch generates log messages for receiving ARP packets from each VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > VLAN**.

Figure 157 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection VLAN Configure

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 117 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection VLAN Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to manage in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the * VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
Enabled	Select Yes to enable ARP inspection on the VLAN. Select No to disable ARP inspection on the VLAN.
Log	Specify when the Switch generates log messages for receiving ARP packets from the VLAN. None: The Switch does not generate any log messages when it receives an ARP packet from the VLAN. Deny: The Switch generates log messages when it discards an ARP packet from the VLAN. Permit: The Switch generates log messages when it forwards an ARP packet from the VLAN. All: The Switch generates log messages every time it receives an ARP packet from the VLAN.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

CHAPTER 28

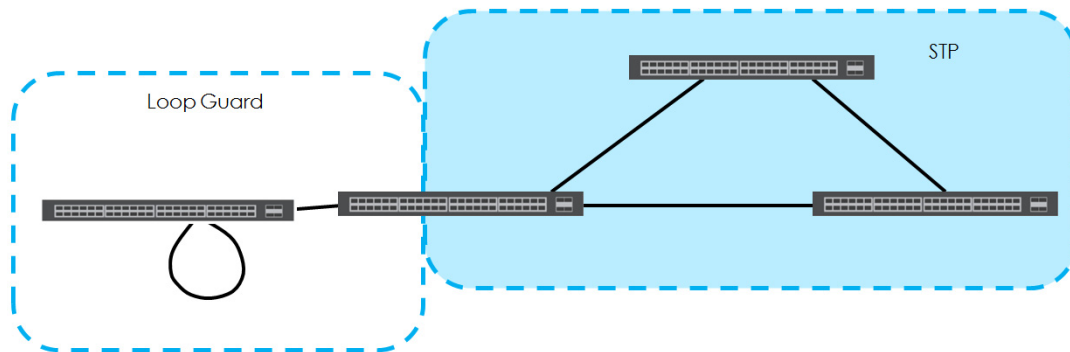
Loop Guard

This chapter shows you how to configure the Switch to guard against loops on the edge of your network.

28.1 Loop Guard Overview

Loop guard allows you to configure the Switch to shut down a port if it detects that packets sent out on that port loop back to the Switch. While you can use Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) to prevent loops in the core of your network, STP cannot prevent loops that occur on the edge of your network.

Figure 158 Loop Guard vs STP

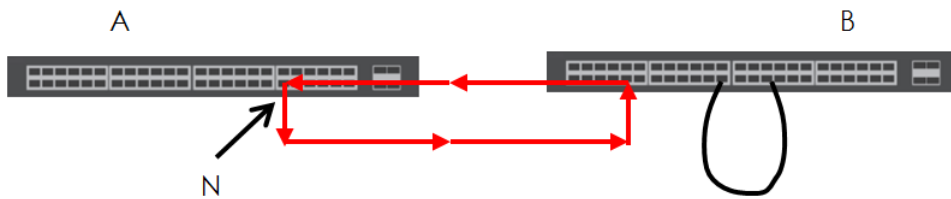


Loop guard is designed to handle loop problems on the edge of your network. This can occur when a port is connected to a Switch that is in a loop state. Loop state occurs as a result of human error. It happens when two ports on a switch are connected with the same cable. When a switch in loop state sends out broadcast messages the messages loop back to the switch and are re-broadcast again and again causing a broadcast storm.

If a switch (not in loop state) connects to a switch in loop state, then it will be affected by the switch in loop state in the following way:

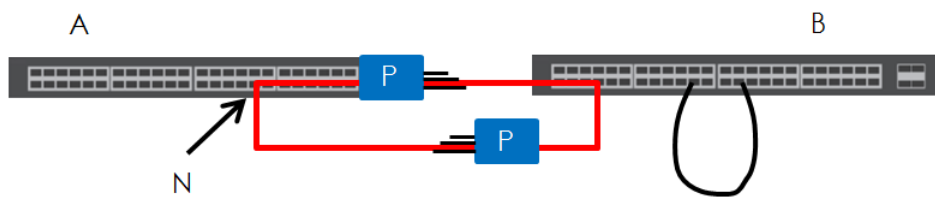
- It will receive broadcast messages sent out from the switch in loop state.
- It will receive its own broadcast messages that it sends out as they loop back. It will then re-broadcast those messages again.

The following figure shows port **N** on switch **A** connected to switch **B**. Switch **B** is in loop state. When broadcast or multicast packets leave port **N** and reach switch **B**, they are sent back to port **N** on **A** as they are rebroadcast from **B**.

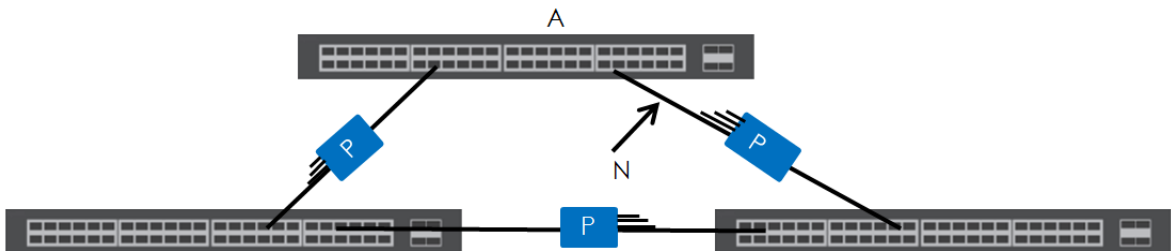
Figure 159 Switch in Loop State

The loop guard feature checks to see if a loop guard enabled port is connected to a switch in loop state. This is accomplished by periodically sending a probe packet and seeing if the packet returns on the same port. If this is the case, the Switch will shut down the port connected to the switch in loop state.

The following figure shows a loop guard enabled port **N** on switch **A** sending a probe packet **P** to switch **B**. Since switch **B** is in loop state, the probe packet **P** returns to port **N** on **A**. The Switch then shuts down port **N** to ensure that the rest of the network is not affected by the switch in loop state.

Figure 160 Loop Guard - Probe Packet

The Switch also shuts down port **N** if the probe packet returns to switch **A** on any other port. In other words loop guard also protects against standard network loops. The following figure illustrates three switches forming a loop. A sample path of the loop guard probe packet is also shown. In this example, the probe packet is sent from port **N** and returns on another port. As long as loop guard is enabled on port **N**. The Switch will shut down port **N** if it detects that the probe packet has returned to the Switch.

Figure 161 Loop Guard - Network Loop

Note: After resolving the loop problem on your network you can re-activate the disabled port via the web configurator (see [Section 8.6 on page 91](#)) or via commands (see the Ethernet Switch CLI Reference Guide).

28.2 Loop Guard Setup

Click **Advanced Application** > **Loop Guard** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Note: The loop guard feature can not be enabled on the ports that have Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP, MRSTP or MSTP) enabled.

Figure 162 Advanced Application > Loop Guard

Port	Active
*	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 118 Advanced Application > Loop Guard

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable loop guard on the Switch. The Switch generates syslog, internal log messages as well as SNMP traps when it shuts down a port via the loop guard feature.
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable the loop guard feature on this port. The Switch sends probe packets from this port to check if the Switch it is connected to is in loop state. If the Switch that this port is connected is in loop state the Switch will shut down this port. Clear this check box to disable the loop guard feature.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 29

VLAN Mapping

This chapter shows you how to configure VLAN mapping on the Switch.

29.1 VLAN Mapping Overview

With VLAN mapping enabled, the Switch can map the VLAN ID and priority level of packets received from a private network to those used in the service provider's network.

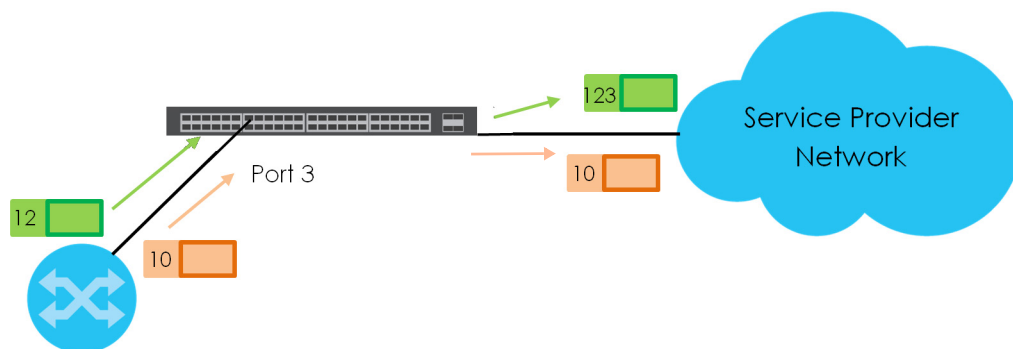
The Switch checks incoming traffic from the switch ports (non-management ports) against the VLAN mapping table first, the MAC learning table and then the VLAN table before forwarding them through the Gigabit uplink port. When VLAN mapping is enabled and incoming tagged packets do not match any entry in the VLAN mapping table, the Switch forwards the tagged packet according to its VLAN tag. If the incoming packets are untagged, the Switch adds a PVID based on the VLAN setting.

Note: You can not enable VLAN mapping and VLAN stacking at the same time.

29.1.1 VLAN Mapping Example

In the following example figure, packets that carry VLAN ID 12 and are received on port 3 match a pre-configured VLAN mapping rule. The Switch translates the VLAN ID from 12 into 123 before forwarding the packets. Any packets carrying a VLAN tag other than 12 (such as 10) and received on port 3 will be forwarded in the individual VLAN network respectively (such as VLAN 10).

Figure 163 VLAN Mapping Example



29.2 Enabling VLAN Mapping

Click **Advanced Application** and then **VLAN Mapping** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 164 Advanced Application > VLAN Mapping

Port	Active
*	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 119 Advanced Application > VLAN Mapping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable VLAN mapping on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable the VLAN mapping feature on this port. Clear this check box to disable the VLAN mapping feature.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

29.3 Configuring VLAN Mapping

Click the **VLAN Mapping Configure** link in the **VLAN Mapping** screen to display the screen as shown. Use this screen to enable and edit the VLAN mapping rule(s).

Figure 165 Advanced Application > VLAN Mapping > VLAN Mapping Configuration

The screenshot shows the 'VLAN Mapping Configure' interface. It includes a form with the following fields: 'Active' (checkbox), 'Name' (text input), 'Port' (text input), 'VID' (text input), 'Translated VID' (text input), 'Priority' (dropdown menu with '0' selected), and 'Direction' (dropdown menu with 'Both' selected). Below the form are 'Add' and 'Cancel' buttons. At the bottom of the screen, there is a table with columns: Index, Active, Name, Port, VID, Translated VID, Priority, Direction, Delete. Below the table are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 120 Advanced Application > VLAN Mapping > VLAN Mapping Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to activate this rule.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Port	Type a port to be included in this rule.
VID	Enter a VLAN ID from 1 to 4094. This is the VLAN tag carried in the packets and will be translated into the VID you specified in the Translated VID field.
Translated VID	Enter a VLAN ID (from 1 to 4094) into which the customer VID carried in the packets will be translated.
Priority	Select a priority level (from 0 to 7). This is the priority level that replaces the customer priority level in the tagged packets or adds to the untagged packets.
Direction	Specify the direction of the traffic to which the rule is applied. Choices are Egress (outgoing), Ingress (incoming) and Both .
Add	Click Add to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Index	This is the number of the VLAN mapping entry in the table.
Active	This shows whether this entry is activated or not.
Name	This is the descriptive name for this rule.
Port	This is the port number to which this rule is applied.
VID	This is the customer VLAN ID in the incoming packets.
Translated VID	This is the VLAN ID that replaces the customer VLAN ID in the tagged packets.
Priority	This is the priority level that replaces the customer priority level in the tagged packets.
Direction	This is the direction of the traffic to which the rule is applied.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

CHAPTER 30

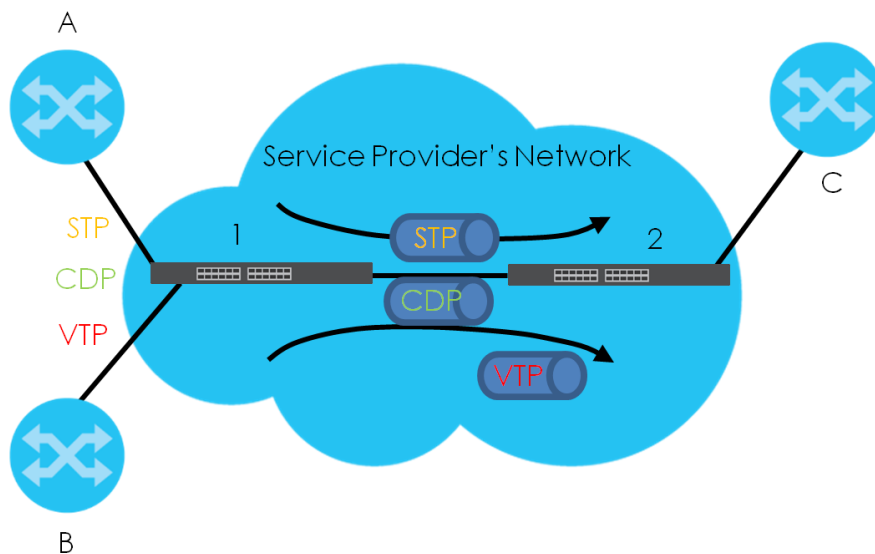
Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling

This chapter shows you how to configure layer-2 protocol tunneling on the Switch.

30.1 Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling Overview

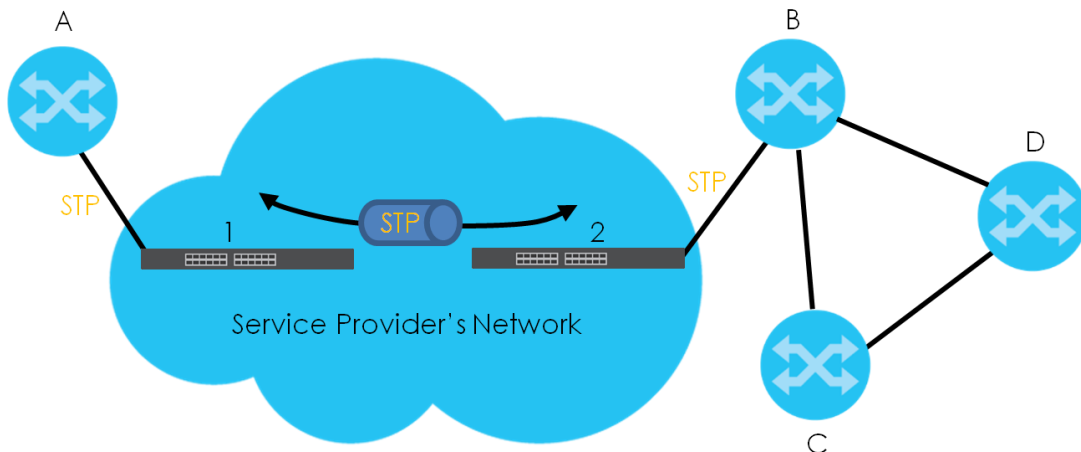
Layer-2 protocol tunneling (L2PT) is used on the service provider's edge devices. L2PT allows edge switches (**1** and **2** in the following figure) to tunnel layer-2 STP (Spanning Tree Protocol), CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) and VTP (VLAN Trunking Protocol) packets between customer switches (**A**, **B** and **C** in the following figure) connected through the service provider's network. The edge switch encapsulates layer-2 protocol packets with a specific MAC address before sending them across the service provider's network to other edge switches.

Figure 166 Layer-2 Protocol Tunneling Network Scenario



In the following example, if you enable L2PT for STP, you can have switches **A**, **B**, **C** and **D** in the same spanning tree, even though switch **A** is not directly connected to switches **B**, **C** and **D**. Topology change information can be propagated throughout the service provider's network.

To emulate a point-to-point topology between two customer switches at different sites, such as **A** and **B**, you can enable protocol tunneling on edge switches **1** and **2** for PAgP (Port Aggregation Protocol), LACP or UDLD (UniDirectional Link Detection).

Figure 167 L2PT Network Example

30.1.1 Layer-2 Protocol Tunneling Mode

Each port can have two layer-2 protocol tunneling modes, **Access** and **Tunnel**.

- The **Access** port is an ingress port on the service provider's edge device (**1** or **2** in [Figure 167 on page 269](#)) and connected to a customer switch (**A** or **B**). Incoming layer-2 protocol packets received on an access port are encapsulated and forwarded to the tunnel ports.
- The **Tunnel** port is an egress port at the edge of the service provider's network and connected to another service provider's switch. Incoming encapsulated layer-2 protocol packets received on a tunnel port are decapsulated and sent to an access port.

30.2 Configuring Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling

Click **Advanced Application > Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 168 Advanced Application > Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling

Layer 2 Protocol Tunnel

Active

Destination MAC Address 00 : 00 : 00 : 00 : 00 : 00

Port	CDP	STP	VTP	Point to Point			Mode
				PAGP	LACP	UDLD	
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 121 Advanced Application > Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable layer-2 protocol tunneling on the Switch.
Destination MAC Address	Specify an MAC address with which the Switch uses to encapsulate the layer-2 protocol packets by replacing the destination MAC address in the packets. Note: The MAC address can be either a unicast MAC address or multicast MAC address. If you use a unicast MAC address, make sure the MAC address does not exist in the address table of a switch on the service provider's network. Note: All the edge switches in the service provider's network should be set to use the same MAC address for encapsulation.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
CDP	Select this option to have the Switch tunnel CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) packets so that other Cisco devices can be discovered through the service provider's network.
STP	Select this option to have the Switch tunnel STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) packets so that STP can run properly across the service provider's network and spanning trees can be set up based on bridge information from all (local and remote) networks.
VTP	Select this option to have the Switch tunnel VTP (VLAN Trunking Protocol) packets so that all customer switches can use consistent VLAN configuration through the service provider's network.

Table 121 Advanced Application > Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Point to Point	<p>The Switch supports PAGP (Port Aggregation Protocol), LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) and UDLD (UniDirectional Link Detection) tunneling for a point-to-point topology.</p> <p>Both PAGP and UDLD are Cisco's proprietary data link layer protocols. PAGP is similar to LACP and used to set up a logical aggregation of Ethernet ports automatically. UDLD is to determine the link's physical status and detect a unidirectional link.</p>
PAGP	Select this option to have the Switch send PAGP packets to a peer to automatically negotiate and build a logical port aggregation.
LACP	Select this option to have the Switch send LACP packets to a peer to dynamically creates and manages trunk groups.
UDLD	Select this option to have the Switch send UDLD packets to a peer's port if connected to monitor the physical status of a link.
Mode	<p>Select Access to have the Switch encapsulate the incoming layer-2 protocol packets and forward them to the tunnel port(s). Select Access for ingress ports at the edge of the service provider's network.</p> <p>Note: You can enable L2PT services for STP, LACP, VTP, CDP, UDLD, and PAGP on the access port(s) only.</p> <p>Select Tunnel for egress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. The Switch decapsulates the encapsulated layer-2 protocol packets received on a tunnel port by changing the destination MAC address to the original one, and then forward them to an access port. If the service(s) is not enabled on an access port, the protocol packets are dropped.</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 31

sFlow

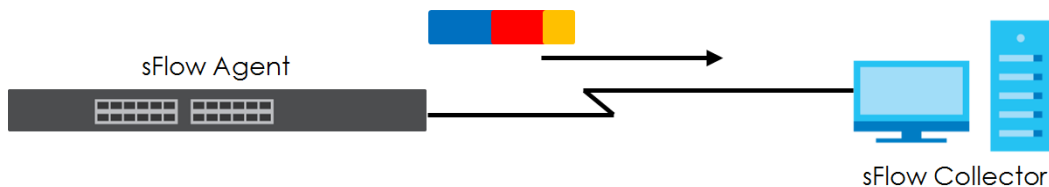
This chapter shows you how to configure sFlow to have the Switch monitor traffic in a network and send information to an sFlow collector for analysis.

31.1 sFlow Overview

sFlow (RFC 3176) is a standard technology for monitoring switched networks. An sFlow agent embedded on a switch or router gets sample data and packet statistics from traffic forwarded through its ports. The sFlow agent then creates sFlow data and sends it to an sFlow collector. The sFlow collector is a server that collects and analyzes sFlow datagram. An sFlow datagram includes packet header, input and output interface, sampling process parameters and forwarding information.

sFlow minimizes impact on CPU load of the Switch as it analyzes sample data only. sFlow can continuously monitor network traffic and create reports for network performance analysis and troubleshooting. For example, you can use it to know which IP address or which type of traffic caused network congestion.

Figure 169 sFlow Application



31.2 sFlow Port Configuration

Click **Advanced Application** > **sFlow** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 170 Advanced Application > sFlow

Port	Active	Sample-rate	poll-interval	Collector Address
*	<input type="checkbox"/>			
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 122 Advanced Application > sFlow

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable the sFlow agent on the Switch.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this to allow the Switch to monitor traffic on this port and generate and send sFlow datagram to the specified collector.
Sample-rate	Enter a number (N) from 256 to 65535. The Switch captures every one out of N packets for this port and creates sFlow datagram.
poll-interval	Specify a time interval (from 20 to 120 in seconds) the Switch waits before sending the sFlow datagram and packet counters for this port to the collector.

Table 122 Advanced Application > sFlow (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Collector Address	Enter the IP address of the sFlow collector. Note: You must have the sFlow collector already configured in the sFlow > Collector screen. The sFlow collector does not need to be in the same subnet as the Switch, but it must be accessible from the Switch. Note: Configure UDP port 6343 (the default) on a NAT router to allow port forwarding if the collector is behind a NAT router. Configure a firewall rule for UDP port 6343 (the default) to allow incoming traffic if the collector is behind a firewall.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

31.2.1 sFlow Collector Configuration

Click the **Collector** link in the **sFlow** screen to display the screen as shown. You can configure up to four sFlow collectors in this screen. You may want to configure more than one collector if the traffic load to be monitored is more than one collector can manage.

Figure 171 Advanced Application > sFlow > Collector

The screenshot shows the 'sflow Collector' configuration page. At the top, there's a 'Collector' section with two input fields: 'Collector Address' (containing '0.0.0.0') and 'UDP Port' (containing '6343'). Below these fields are three buttons: 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear'. A horizontal line separates this section from a table below. The table has four columns: 'Index', 'Collector Address', 'UDP Port', and 'Delete'. The first row contains the values '1', '1.2.3.4', '6343', and a checkbox. Below the table are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Cancel'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 123 Advanced Application > sFlow > Collector

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Collector Address	Enter the IP address of the sFlow collector.
UDP Port	Enter a UDP port number the Switch uses to send sFlow datagram to the collector. If you change the port here, make sure you change it on the collector, too. The default port is 6343.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.

Table 123 Advanced Application > sFlow > Collector (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clear	Click Clear to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number of this entry.
Collector Address	This field displays IP address of the sFlow collector.
UDP Port	This field displays port number the Switch uses to send sFlow datagram to the collector.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

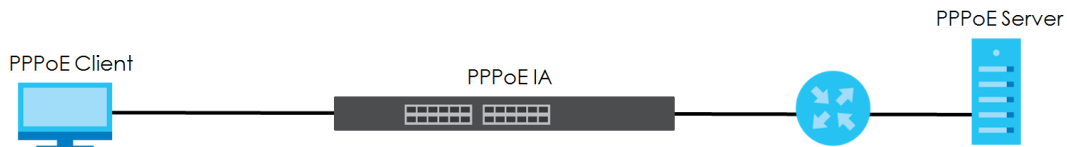
CHAPTER 32

PPPoE

This chapter describes how the Switch gives a PPPoE termination server additional information that the server can use to identify and authenticate a PPPoE client.

32.1 PPPoE Intermediate Agent Overview

A PPPoE Intermediate Agent (PPPoE IA) is deployed between a PPPoE server and PPPoE clients. It helps the PPPoE server identify and authenticate clients by adding subscriber line specific information to PPPoE discovery packets from clients on a per-port or per-port-per-VLAN basis before forwarding them to the PPPoE server.



32.1.1 PPPoE Intermediate Agent Tag Format

If the PPPoE Intermediate Agent is enabled, the Switch adds a vendor-specific tag to PADI (PPPoE Active Discovery Initialization) and PADR (PPPoE Active Discovery Request) packets from PPPoE clients. This tag is defined in RFC 2516 and has the following format for this feature.

Table 124 PPPoE Intermediate Agent Vendor-specific Tag Format

Tag_Type (0x0105)	Tag_Len	Value	i1	i2
----------------------	---------	-------	----	----

The Tag_Type is 0x0105 for vendor-specific tags, as defined in RFC 2516. The Tag_Len indicates the length of Value, i1 and i2. The Value is the 32-bit number 0x00000DE9, which stands for the "ADSL Forum" IANA entry. i1 and i2 are PPPoE intermediate agent sub-options, which contain additional information about the PPPoE client.

32.1.2 Sub-Option Format

There are two types of sub-option: "Agent Circuit ID Sub-option" and "Agent Remote ID Sub-option". They have the following formats.

Table 125 PPPoE IA Circuit ID Sub-option Format: User-defined String

SubOpt	Length	Value
0x01 (1 byte)	N (1 byte)	String (63 bytes)

Table 126 PPPoE IA Remote ID Sub-option Format

SubOpt	Length	Value
0x02 (1 byte)	N (1 byte)	MAC Address or String (63 bytes)

The 1 in the first field identifies this as an Agent Circuit ID sub-option and 2 identifies this as an Agent Remote ID sub-option. The next field specifies the length of the field. The Switch takes the Circuit ID string you manually configure for a VLAN on a port as the highest priority and the Circuit ID string for a port as the second priority. In addition, the Switch puts the PPPoE client's MAC address into the Agent Remote ID Sub-option if you do not specify any user-defined string.

32.1.2.1 Flexible Circuit ID Syntax with Identifier String and Variables

If you do not configure a Circuit ID string for a VLAN on a specific port or for a specific port, the Switch adds the user-defined identifier string and variables into the Agent Circuit ID Sub-option. The variables can be the slot ID of the PPPoE client, the port number of the PPPoE client and/or the VLAN ID on the PPPoE packet.

The identifier-string, slot ID, port number and VLAN ID are separated from each other by a pound key (#), semi-colon (;), period (.), comma (,), forward slash (/) or space. An Agent Circuit ID Sub-option example is "Switch/07/0123" and indicates the PPPoE packets come from a PPPoE client which is connected to the Switch's port 7 and belong to VLAN 123.

Table 127 PPPoE IA Circuit ID Sub-option Format: Using Identifier String and Variables

SubOpt	Length	Value						
0x01 (1 byte)	N (1 byte)	Identifier String (53 byte)	delimiter (1 byte)	Slot ID (1 byte)	delimiter (1 byte)	Port No (2 byte)	delimiter (1 byte)	VLAN ID (4 bytes)

32.1.2.2 WT-101 Default Circuit ID Syntax

If you do not configure a Circuit ID string for a specific VLAN on a port or for a specific port, and disable the flexible Circuit ID syntax in the **PPPoE > Intermediate Agent** screen, the Switch automatically generates a Circuit ID string according to the default Circuit ID syntax which is defined in the DSL Forum Working Text (WT)-101. The default access node identifier is the host name of the PPPoE intermediate agent and the eth indicates "Ethernet".

Table 128 PPPoE IA Circuit ID Sub-option Format: Defined in WT-101

SubOpt	Length	Value								
0x01 (1 byte)	N (1 byte)	Access Node Identifier (20 byte)	Space (1 byte)	eth (3 byte)	Space (1 byte)	Slot ID (1 byte)	/ (1 byte)	Port No (2 byte)	: (1 byte)	VLAN ID (4 bytes)

32.1.3 Port State

Every port is either a trusted port or an untrusted port for the PPPoE intermediate agent. This setting is independent of the trusted/untrusted setting for DHCP snooping or ARP inspection. You can also specify the agent sub-options (circuit ID and remote ID) that the Switch adds to PADI and PADR packets from PPPoE clients.

Trusted ports are connected to PPPoE servers.

- If a PADO (PPPoE Active Discovery Offer), PADS (PPPoE Active Discovery Session-confirmation), or PADT (PPPoE Active Discovery Terminate) packet is sent from a PPPoE server and received on a trusted port, the Switch forwards it to all other ports.
- If a PADI or PADR packet is sent from a PPPoE client but received on a trusted port, the Switch forwards it to other trusted port(s).

Note: The Switch will drop all PPPoE discovery packets if you enable the PPPoE intermediate agent and there are no trusted ports.

Untrusted ports are connected to subscribers.

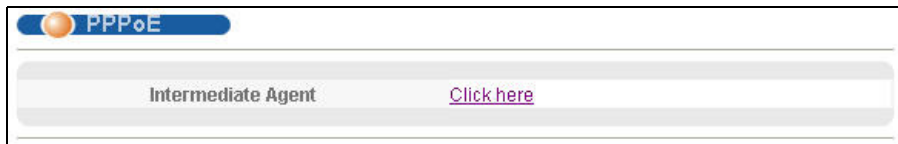
- If a PADI, PADR, or PADT packet is sent from a PPPoE client and received on an untrusted port, the Switch adds a vendor-specific tag to the packet and then forwards it to the trusted port(s).
- The Switch discards PADO and PADS packets which are sent from a PPPoE server but received on an untrusted port.

32.2 PPPoE Screen

Use this screen to configure the PPPoE Intermediate Agent on the Switch.

Click **Advanced Application > PPPoE** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. Click **Click Here** to go to the **Intermediate Agent** screen.

Figure 172 Advanced Application > PPPoE Intermediate Agent



32.3 PPPoE Intermediate Agent

Use this screen to configure the Switch to give a PPPoE termination server additional subscriber information that the server can use to identify and authenticate a PPPoE client.

Click **Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 173 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 129 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable the PPPoE intermediate agent globally on the Switch.
access-node-identifier	Enter up to 20 ASCII characters to identify the PPPoE intermediate agent. Hyphens (-) and spaces are also allowed. The default is the Switch's host name.
circuit-id	Use this section to configure the Circuit ID field in the PADI and PADR packets. The Circuit ID you configure for a specific port or for a specific VLAN on a port has priority over this. The Circuit ID you configure for a specific port (in the Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port screen) or for a specific VLAN on a port (in the Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port > VLAN screen) has priority over this. That means, if you also want to configure PPPoE IA Per-Port or Per-Port Per-VLAN setting, leave the fields here empty and configure circuit-id and remote-id in the Per-Port or Per-Port Per-VLAN screen.
Active	Select this option to have the Switch add the user-defined identifier string and variables (specified in the option field) to PADI or PADR packets from PPPoE clients. If you leave this option unselected and do not configure any Circuit ID string (using CLI commands) on the Switch, the Switch will use the string specified in the access-node-identifier field.
hostname	Select this option to have the Switch add the Switch's host name to PADI or PADR packets from PPPoE clients.
identifier-string	Specify a string that the Switch adds in the Agent Circuit ID sub-option. You can enter up to 53 ASCII characters. Spaces are allowed.
option	Select the variables that you want the Switch to generate and add in the Agent Circuit ID sub-option. The variable options include s , p , v , sp , sv , pv and spv which indicate slot, port, vlan or combinations of slot-port, slot-VLAN, port-VLAN and slot-port-VLAN respectively. The Switch enters a zero into the PADI and PADR packets for the slot value.
delimiter	Select a delimiter to separate the identifier-string, slot ID, port number and/or VLAN ID from each other. You can use a pound key (#), semi-colon (;), period (.), comma (,), forward slash (/) or space.

Table 129 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

32.3.1 PPPoE IA Per-Port

Use this screen to specify whether individual ports are trusted or untrusted ports and have the Switch add extra information to PPPoE discovery packets from PPPoE clients on a per-port basis.

Note: The Switch will drop all PPPoE packets if you enable the PPPoE Intermediate Agent on the Switch and there are no trusted ports.

Click the **Port** link in the **Intermediate Agent** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 174 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port

Port	Server Trusted State	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	Untrusted		
1	Untrusted		
2	Untrusted		
3	Untrusted		
4	Untrusted		
5	Untrusted		
6	Untrusted		
7	Untrusted		
8	Untrusted		
9	Untrusted		
10	Untrusted		
11	Untrusted		

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 130 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

Table 130 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Trusted State	<p>Select whether this port is a trusted port (Trusted) or an untrusted port (Untrusted).</p> <p>Trusted ports are uplink ports connected to PPPoE servers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a PADI or PADR packet is sent from a PPPoE client but received on a trusted port, the Switch forwards it to other trusted port(s). <p>Untrusted ports are downlink ports connected to subscribers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a PADI, PADR, or PADT packet is sent from a PPPoE client and received on an untrusted port, the Switch adds a vendor-specific tag to the packet and then forwards it to the trusted port(s). The Switch discards PADO and PADS packets which are sent from a PPPoE server but received on an untrusted port.
Circuit-id	<p>Enter a string of up to 63 ASCII characters that the Switch adds into the Agent Circuit ID sub-option for PPPoE discovery packets received on this port. Spaces are allowed.</p> <p>The Circuit ID you configure for a specific VLAN on a port (in the Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port > VLAN screen) has the highest priority.</p>
Remote-id	<p>Enter a string of up to 63 ASCII characters that the Switch adds into the Agent Remote ID sub-option for PPPoE discovery packets received on this port. Spaces are allowed.</p> <p>If you do not specify a string here or in the Remote-id field for a VLAN on a port, the Switch automatically uses the PPPoE client's MAC address.</p> <p>The Remote ID you configure for a specific VLAN on a port (in the Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port > VLAN screen) has the highest priority.</p>
Apply	<p>Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.</p>
Cancel	<p>Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.</p>

32.3.2 PPPoE IA Per-Port Per-VLAN

Use this screen to configure PPPoE IA settings that apply to a specific VLAN on a port.

Click the **VLAN** link in the **Intermediate Agent > Port** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 175 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port > VLAN

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration interface for VLANs. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'VLAN' and 'Port'. Below this, there are two main sections: 'Show Port' and 'Show VLAN'. The 'Show Port' section has a 'Port' input field. The 'Show VLAN' section has 'Start VID' and 'End VID' input fields. Below these is an 'Apply' button. A section titled 'Port: 2' contains a table with three columns: 'VID', 'Circuit-id', and 'Remote-id'. The table has four rows: one with '*' in the VID column, and three with '10' and '11' in the VID column. Below the table are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 131 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show Port	Enter a port number to show the PPPoE Intermediate Agent settings for the specified VLAN(s) on the port.
Show VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to configure in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to configure in the section below.
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to configure in the section below.
Apply	Click Apply to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
Port	This field displays the port number specified above.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the * VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all VLANs. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a VLAN-by-VLAN basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the VLANs as soon as you make them.
Circuit-id	Enter a string of up to 63 ASCII characters that the Switch adds into the Agent Circuit ID sub-option for this VLAN on the specified port. Spaces are allowed. The Circuit ID you configure here has the highest priority.
Remote-id	Enter a string of up to 63 ASCII characters that the Switch adds into the Agent Remote ID sub-option for this VLAN on the specified port. Spaces are allowed. If you do not specify a string here or in the Remote-id field for a specific port, the Switch automatically uses the PPPoE client's MAC address. The Remote ID you configure here has the highest priority.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

32.3.3 PPPoE IA for VLAN

Use this screen to set whether the PPPoE Intermediate Agent is enabled on a VLAN and whether the Switch appends the Circuit ID and/or Remote ID to PPPoE discovery packets from a specific VLAN.

Click the **VLAN** link in the **Intermediate Agent** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 176 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > VLAN

VID	Enabled	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
123	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
124	Yes	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
125	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
126	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
127	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
128	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 132 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to configure in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to configure in the section below.
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to configure in the section below.
Apply	Click Apply to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the * VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all VLANs. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a VLAN-by-VLAN basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the VLANs as soon as you make them.
Enabled	Select this option to turn on the PPPoE Intermediate Agent on a VLAN.
Circuit-id	Select this option to make the Circuit ID settings for a specific VLAN take effect.
Remote-id	Select this option to make the Remote ID settings for a specific VLAN take effect.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 33

Error Disable

This chapter shows you how to configure the rate limit for control packets on a port, and set the Switch to take an action (such as to shut down a port or stop sending packets) on a port when the Switch detects a pre-configured error. It also shows you how to configure the Switch to automatically undo the action after the error is gone.

33.1 CPU Protection Overview

Switches exchange protocol control packets in a network to get the latest networking information. If a switch receives large numbers of control packets, such as ARP, BPDU or IGMP packets, which are to be processed by the CPU, the CPU may become overloaded and be unable to handle regular tasks properly.

The CPU protection feature allows you to limit the rate of ARP, BPDU and IGMP packets to be delivered to the CPU on a port. This enhances the CPU efficiency and protects against potential DoS attacks or errors from other network(s). You then can choose to drop control packets that exceed the specified rate limit or disable a port on which the packets are received.

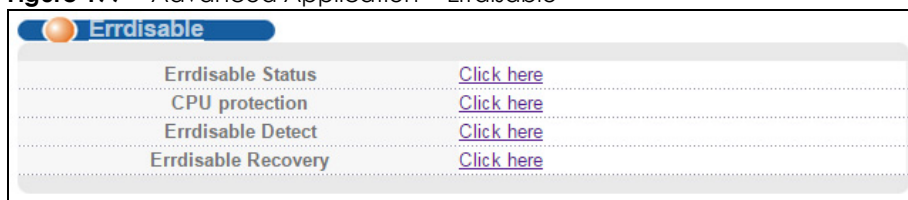
33.2 Error-Disable Recovery Overview

Some features, such as loop guard or CPU protection, allow the Switch to shut down a port or discard specific packets on a port when an error is detected on the port. For example, if the Switch detects that packets sent out the port(s) loop back to the Switch, the Switch can shut down the port(s) automatically. After that, you need to enable the port(s) or allow the packets on a port manually via the web configurator or the commands. With error-disable recovery, you can set the disabled port(s) to become active or start receiving the packets again after the time interval you specify.

33.3 Error Disable Screen

Use this screen to configure error disable related settings. Click **Advanced Application > Errdisable** in the navigation panel to open the following screen.

Figure 177 Advanced Application > Errdisable



33.4 Error-Disable Status

Use this screen to view whether the Switch detected that control packets exceeded the rate limit configured for a port or a port is disabled according to the feature requirements and what action you configure, and related information. Click the **Click here** link next to **Errdisable Status** in the **Advanced Application > Errdisable** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 178 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Status

Port	Cause	Active	Mode	Rate	Status	Recovery Time Left (secs)	Total Dropped
1	ARP	NO	inactive-port	0	Forwarding	-	-
	BPDU	NO	inactive-port	0	Forwarding	-	-
	IGMP	NO	inactive-port	0	Forwarding	-	-
	Loop Guard	NO	inactive-port	-	Forwarding	-	-
	Storm Control	NO	inactive-port	-	Forwarding	-	-
	Port Security	NO	inactive-port	-	Forwarding	-	-
	BPDU Guard	NO	inactive-port	-	Forwarding	-	-
2	Link Flap	NO	inactive-port	-	Forwarding	-	-
	ARP	NO	inactive-port	0	Forwarding	-	-
	BPDU	NO	inactive-port	0	Forwarding	-	-
	IGMP	NO	inactive-port	0	Forwarding	-	-
	Loop Guard	NO	inactive-port	-	Forwarding	-	-
	Storm Control	NO	inactive-port	-	Forwarding	-	-
3	Port Security	NO	inactive-port	-	Forwarding	-	-
	BPDU Guard	NO	inactive-port	-	Forwarding	-	-
	Link Flap	NO	inactive-port	-	Forwarding	-	-
	ARP	NO	inactive-port	0	Forwarding	-	-
	BPDU	NO	inactive-port	0	Forwarding	-	-
	IGMP	NO	inactive-port	0	Forwarding	-	-
4	Loop Guard	NO	inactive-port	-	Forwarding	-	-
	Storm Control	NO	inactive-port	-	Forwarding	-	-
	Port Security	NO	inactive-port	-	Forwarding	-	-

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 133 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Inactive-reason mode reset	
Port List	Enter the number of the port(s) (separated by a comma) on which you want to reset inactive-reason status.
Cause	Select the cause of inactive-reason mode you want to reset here.

Table 133 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reset	Press to reset the specified port(s) to handle ARP, BPDU or IGMP packets instead of ignoring them, if the port(s) is in inactive-reason mode.
Errdisable Status	
Port	This is the number of the port on which you want to configure Errdisable Status.
Cause	This displays the type of the control packet received on the port or the feature enabled on the port and causing the Switch to take the specified action.
Active	This field displays whether the control packets (ARP, BPDU, and/or IGMP) on the port is being detected or not. It also shows whether loop guard, anti-arp scanning, BPDU guard or ZULD is enabled on the port.
Mode	This field shows the action that the Switch takes for the cause. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • inactive-port - The Switch disables the port. • inactive-reason - The Switch drops all the specified control packets (such as BPDU) on the port. • rate-limitation - The Switch drops the additional control packets the port(s) has to handle in every one second.
Rate	This field displays how many control packets this port can receive or transmit per second. It can be adjusted in CPU Protection . 0 means no rate limit.
Status	This field displays the errdisable status <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Forwarding: The Switch is forwarding packets. Rate-limitation mode is always in Forwarding status. • Err-disable: The Switch disables the port on which the control packets are received (inactive-port) or drops specified control packets on the port (inactive-reason)
Recovery Time Left (secs)	This field displays the time (seconds) left before the port(s) becomes active of Errdisable Recovery.
Total Dropped	This field displays the total packet number dropped by this port where the packet rate exceeds the rate of mode rate-limitation.

33.5 CPU Protection Configuration

Use this screen to limit the maximum number of control packets (ARP, BPDU and/or IGMP) that the Switch can receive or transmit on a port. Click the **Click Here** link next to **CPU protection** in the **Advanced Application > Errdisable** screen to display the screen as shown.

Note: After you configure this screen, make sure you also enable error detection for the specific control packets in the **Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Detect** screen.

Figure 179 Advanced Application > Errdisable > CPU protection

Port	Rate Limit (pkt/s)
*	
1	0
2	0
3	0
4	0
5	0
6	0
7	0
8	0
9	0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 134 Advanced Application > Errdisable > CPU protection

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reason	Select the type of control packet you want to configure here.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each port if necessary. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Rate Limit (pkt/s)	Enter a number from 0 to 256 to specify how many control packets this port can receive or transmit per second. 0 means no rate limit. You can configure the action that the Switch takes when the limit is exceeded. See Section 33.6 on page 287 for detailed information.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

33.6 Error-Disable Detect Configuration

Use screen to have the Switch detect whether the control packets exceed the rate limit configured for a port and configure the action to take once the limit is exceeded. Click the **Click Here** link next to **Errdisable Detect** link in the **Advanced Application > Errdisable** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 180 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Detect

Cause	Active	Mode
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port
ARP	<input type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port
BPDU	<input type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port
IGMP	<input type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 135 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Detect

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Cause	This field displays the types of control packet that may cause CPU overload.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all entries. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each entry if necessary. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the entries as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this option to have the Switch detect if the configured rate limit for a specific control packet is exceeded and take the action selected below.
Mode	Select the action that the Switch takes when the number of control packets exceed the rate limit on a port, set in the Advanced Application > Errdisable > CPU protection screen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> inactive-port - The Switch disables the port on which the control packets are received. inactive-reason - The Switch drops all the specified control packets on the port. rate-limitation - The Switch drops the additional control packets the port has to handle in every one second.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

33.7 Error-Disable Recovery Configuration

Use this screen to configure the Switch to automatically undo an action after the error is gone. Click the **Click Here** link next to **Errdisable Recovery** in the **Advanced Application > Errdisable** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 181 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Recovery

Reason	Timer Status	Interval
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="300"/>
loopguard	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="300"/>
ARP	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="300"/>
BPDU	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="300"/>
IGMP	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="300"/>
stormcontrol	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="300"/>
portsecurity	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="300"/>
bpduguard	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="300"/>
linkflap	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="300"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 136 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Recovery

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to turn on the error-disable recovery function on the Switch.
Reason	This field displays the supported features that allow the Switch to shut down a port or discard packets on a port according to the feature requirements and what action you configure.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all entries. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each entry if necessary. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the entries as soon as you make them.
Timer Status	Select this option to allow the Switch to wait for the specified time interval to activate a port or allow specific packets on a port, after the error was gone. Deselect this option to turn off this rule.
Interval	Enter the number of seconds (from 30 to 2592000) for the time interval.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 34

Private VLAN

This chapter shows you how to configure the Switch to prevent communications between ports in a VLAN.

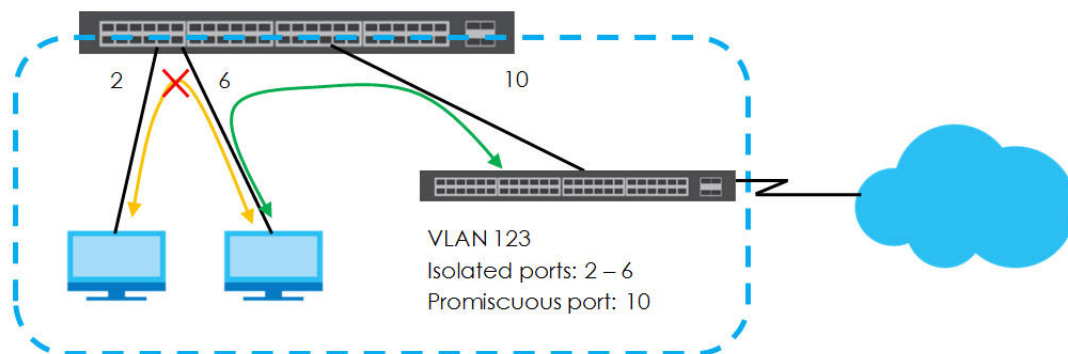
34.1 Private VLAN Overview

Private VLAN allows you to do port isolation within a VLAN in a simple way. If you enable a private VLAN rule for a VLAN on the Switch, the Switch automatically adds all ports (except the uplink port(s)) in this VLAN to the isolated port list and blocks traffic between the isolated ports. The uplink ports (25 to 28 on the MGS3520-28(F)) are always in the promiscuous port list. A promiscuous port can communicate with any port in the same VLAN. An isolated port can communicate with the promiscuous port(s) only.

Note: You can have up to one private VLAN rule for each VLAN.

In the following example, ports 1, 2, 3 and 25 belong to VLAN 123. You configure and enable private VLAN for VLAN 123 on the Switch. Then ports 1, 2 and/or 3 cannot send traffic to each other, but they all can talk to the uplink port 25.

Figure 182 Private VLAN Example



Note: Make sure you keep at least one port in the promiscuous port list for a VLAN with private VLAN enabled. Otherwise, this VLAN is blocked from the whole network.

34.2 Configuring Private VLAN

Click **Advanced Application** > **Private VLAN** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 183 Advanced Application > Private VLAN

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 137 Advanced Application > Private VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to enable private VLAN in a VLAN.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
VLAN ID	Enter a VLAN ID from 1 to 4094. This is the VLAN to which this rule applies.
Add	Click Add to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click Clear to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the index number of the rule.
Active	This shows whether this rule is activated or not.
Name	This is the descriptive name for this rule.
VLAN	This is the VLAN to which this rule is applied.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

CHAPTER 35

Green Ethernet

This chapter shows you how to configure the Switch to reduce the power consumed by switch ports.

35.1 Green Ethernet Overview

Green Ethernet reduces switch port power consumption in the following ways.

IEEE 802.3az Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE)

If EEE is enabled, both sides of a link support EEE and there is no traffic, the port enters Low Power Idle (LPI) mode. LPI mode turns off some functions of the physical layer (becomes quiet) to save power. Periodically the port transmits a REFRESH signal to allow the link partner to keep the link alive. When there is traffic to be sent, a WAKE signal is sent to the link partner to return the link to active mode.

Auto Power Down

Auto Power Down turns off almost all functions of the port's physical layer functions when the link is down, so the port only uses power to check for a link up pulse from the link partner. After the link up pulse is detected, the port wakes up from **Auto Power Down** and operates normally.

Short Reach

Traditional Ethernet transmits all data with enough power to reach the maximum cable length. Shorter cables lose less power, so **Short Reach** saves power by adjusting the transmit power of each port according to the length of cable attached to that port.

35.2 Configuring Green Ethernet

Click **Advanced Application** > **Green Ethernet** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Note: EEE, Auto Power Down and Short Reach are not supported on an uplink port.

Figure 184 Advanced Application > Green Ethernet

Port	EEE	Auto Power Down	Short Reach
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 138 Advanced Application > Green Ethernet

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
EEE	Select this to activate Energy Efficient Ethernet globally.
Auto Power Down	Select this to activate Auto Power Down globally.
Short Reach	Select this to activate Short Reach globally.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each port if necessary. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
EEE	Select this to activate Energy Efficient Ethernet on this port.
Auto Power Down	Select this to activate Auto Power Down on this port.
Short Reach	Select this to activate Short Reach on this port.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 36

Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)

36.1 LLDP Overview

The LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) is a layer 2 protocol. It allows a network device to advertise its identity and capabilities on the local network. It also allows the device to maintain and store information from adjacent devices which are directly connected to the network device. This helps an administrator discover network changes and perform necessary network reconfiguration and management. The device information is encapsulated in the LLDPDUs (LLDP data units) in the form of TLV (Type, Length, Value). Device information carried in the received LLDPDUs is stored in the standard MIB.

The Switch supports these basic management TLVs.

- End of LLDPDU (mandatory)
- Chassis ID (mandatory)
- Port ID (mandatory)
- Time to Live (mandatory)
- Port Description (optional)
- System Name (optional)
- System Description (optional)
- System Capabilities (optional)
- Management Address (optional)

The Switch also supports the IEEE 802.1 and IEEE 802.3 organizationally-specific TLVs.

IEEE 802.1 specific TLVs:

- Port VLAN ID TLV (optional)
- Port and Protocol VLAN ID TLV (optional)

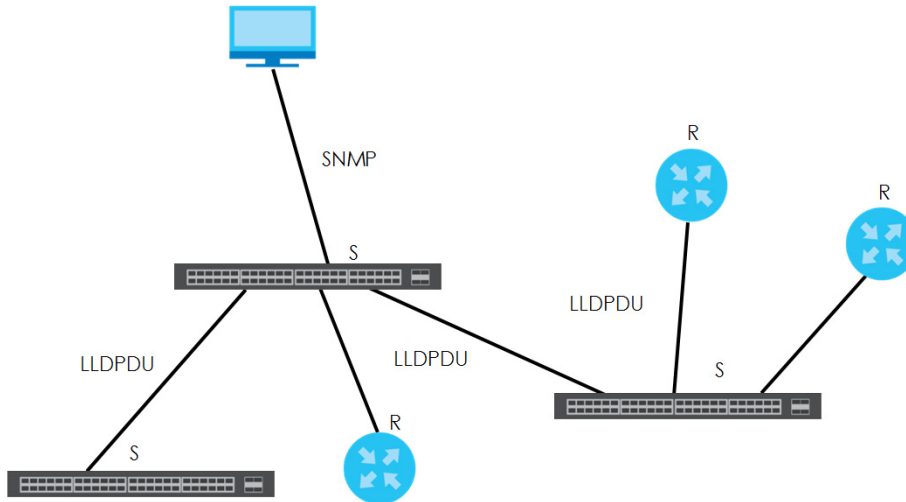
IEEE 802.3 specific TLVs:

- MAC/PHY Configuration/Status TLV (optional)
- Power via MDI TLV (optional, for PoE models only)
- Link Aggregation TLV (optional)
- Maximum Frame Size TLV (optional)

The optional TLVs are inserted between the Time To Live TLV and the End of LLDPDU TLV.

The next figure demonstrates that the network devices Switches and Routers (S and R) transmit and receive device information via LLDPDU and the network manager can query the information using Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).

Figure 185 LLDP Overview



36.2 LLDP-MED Overview

LLDP-MED (Link Layer Discovery Protocol for Media Endpoint Devices) is an extension to the standard LLDP developed by the Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA) TR-41.4 subcommittee which defines the enhanced discovery capabilities, such as VoIP applications, to enable network administrators manage their network topology application more efficiently. Unlike the traditional LLDP, which has some limitations when handling multiple application devices, the LLDP-MED offers display of accurate physical topology, interoperability of devices, and easy trouble shooting for misconfigured IP addresses. There are three classes of endpoint devices that the LLDP-MED supports:

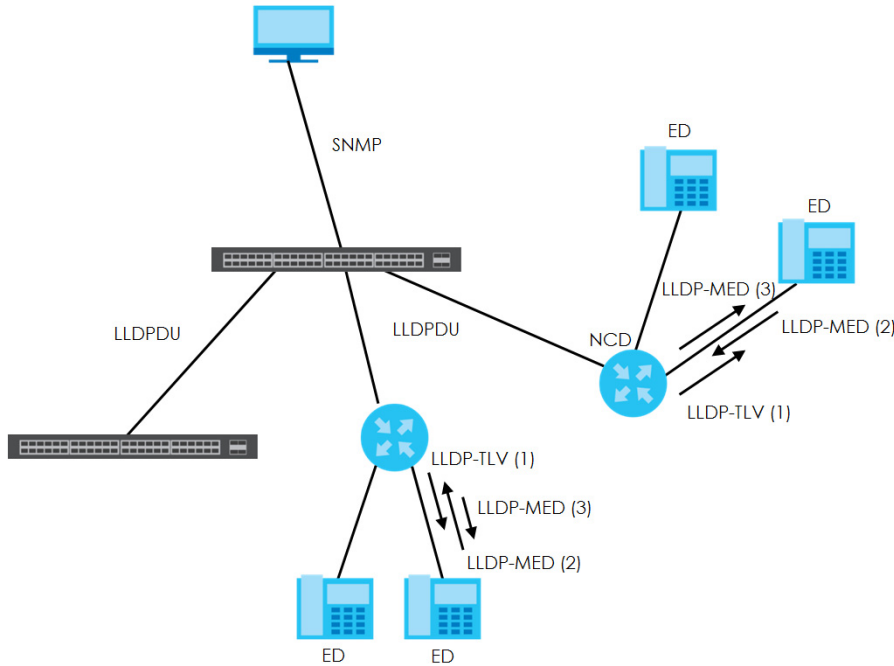
Class I: IP Communications Controllers or other communication related servers

Class II: Voice Gateways, Conference Bridges or Media Servers

Class III: IP-Phones, PC-based Softphones, End user Communication Appliances supporting IP Media

The following figure shows that with the LLDP-MED, network connectivity devices (NCD) like Switches and Routers will transmit LLDP TLV to endpoint device (ED) like IP Phone first (1), to get its device type and capabilities information, then it will receive that information in LLDP-MED TLV back from endpoint devices (2), after that the network connectivity devices will transmit LLDP-MED TLV (3) to provision the endpoint device to such that the endpoint device's network policy and location identification information is updated. Since LLDPDU updates status and configuration information periodically, network managers may check the result of provision via remote status. The remote status is updated by receiving LLDP-MED TLVs from endpoint devices.

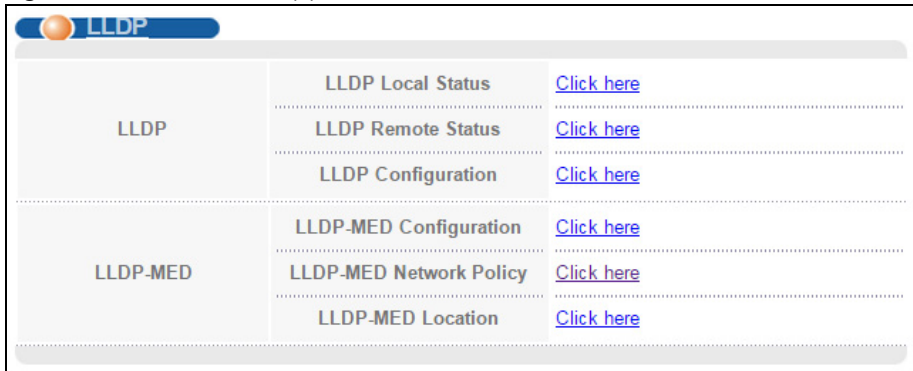
Figure 186 LLDP-MED Overview



36.3 LLDP Screens

Click **Advanced Application** > **LLDP** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 187 Advanced Application > LLDP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 139 Advanced Application > LLDP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
LLDP	
LLDP Local Status	Click here to show a screen with the Switch's LLDP information.
LLDP Remote Status	Click here to show a screen with LLDP information from the neighboring devices.
LLDP Configuration	Click here to show a screen to configure LLDP parameters.

Table 139 Advanced Application > LLDP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
LLDP-MED	
LLDP-MED Configuration	Click here to show a screen to configure LLDP-MED (Link Layer Discovery Protocol for Media Endpoint Devices) parameters.
LLDP-MED Network Policy	Click here to show a screen to configure LLDP-MED (Link Layer Discovery Protocol for Media Endpoint Devices) network policy parameters.
LLDP-MED Location	Click here to show a screen to configure LLDP-MED (Link Layer Discovery Protocol for Media Endpoint Devices) location parameters.

36.4 LLDP Local Status

This screen displays a summary of LLDP status on this Switch. Click **Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 188 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status

LLDP System Information		
Basic TLV		
Chassis ID TLV	Chassis ID Subtype	mac-address
	Chassis ID	90:ef:68:1f:2a:18
System Name TLV	System Name	MGS3520
System Description TLV	System Description	V4.10(AATN.1)b11 07/21/2015
System Capabilities TLV	System Capabilities Supported	Bridge
	System Capabilities Enabled	Bridge
Management Address TLV	Management Address Subtype	ipv4 / all-802
	Interface Number Subtype	unknown
	Interface Number	0
	Object Identifier	0

LLDP Port Information			
Local Port	Port ID Subtype	Port ID	Port Description
1		1	
2		2	
3		3	
4		4	
5		5	
6		6	
7		7	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 140 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Basic TLV	
Chassis ID TLV	This displays the chassis ID of the local Switch, that is the Switch you're configuring. The chassis ID is identified by the chassis ID subtype. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Chassis ID Subtype - this displays how the chassis of the Switch is identified. • Chassis ID - This displays the chassis ID of the local Switch.
System Name TLV	This shows the host name of the Switch.
System Description TLV	This shows the firmware version of the Switch.
System Capabilities TLV	This shows the System Capabilities enabled and supported on the local Switch. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • System Capabilities Supported - Bridge • System Capabilities Enabled - Bridge
Management Address TLV	The Management Address TLV identifies an address associated with the local LLDP agent that may be used to reach higher layer entities to assist discovery by network management. The TLV may also include the system interface number and an object identifier (OID) that are associated with this management address This field displays the Management Address settings on the specified port(s). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Management Address Subtype - ipv4 / all-802 • Interface Number Subtype - unknown • Interface Number - 0 (not supported) • Object Identifier - 0 (not supported)
LLDP Port Information	This displays the local port information.
Local Port	This displays the number of the Switch port which receives the LLDPDU from the remote device. Click a port number to view the detailed LLDP status on this port at LLDP Local Port Status Detail screen.
Port ID Subtype	This indicates how the port ID field is identified.
Port ID	This is an alpha-numeric string that contains the specific identifier for the port from which this LLDPDU was transmitted.
Port Description	This shows the port description that the Switch will advertise from this port.

36.4.1 LLDP Local Port Status Detail

This screen displays detailed LLDP status for each port on this Switch. Click **Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status** and then, click a port number, for example 1 in the local port column to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 189 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status > LLDP Local Port Status Detail (Basic TLV, Dot1 TLV, and Dot3 TLV)

LLDP Local Port Status Detail		LLDP Local Status
Local Port: 1		
Basic TLV		
Port ID TLV	Port ID Subtype	
	Port ID	1
Port Description TLV	Port Description	
Dot1 TLV		
Port VLAN ID TLV	Port VLAN ID	0
Port-Protocol VLAN ID TLV	Port-Protocol VLAN ID	
Dot3 TLV		
MAC PHY Configuration & Status TLV	AN Supported	No
	AN Enabled	No
	AN Advertised Capability	
	Oper MAU Type	0
Link Aggregation TLV	Aggregation Capability	No
	Aggregation Status	No
	Aggregated Port ID	0
Max Frame Size TLV	Max Frame Size	0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 141 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status > LLDP Local Port Status Detail (Basic TLV, Dot1 TLV, and Dot3 TLV)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Basic TLV	These are the Basic TLV flags
Port ID TLV	The port ID TLV identifies the specific port that transmitted the LLDP frame. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Port ID Subtype: This shows how the port is identified. • Port ID: This is the ID of the port.
Port Description TLV	This displays the local port description.
Dot1 TLV	
Port VLAN ID TLV	This displays the VLAN ID sent by the IEEE 802.1 Port VLAN ID TLV.
Port-Protocol VLAN ID TLV	This displays the IEEE 802.1 Port Protocol VLAN ID TLVs, which indicates whether the VLAN is enabled and supported.
Dot3 TLV	

Table 141 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status > LLDP Local Port Status Detail (Basic TLV, Dot1 TLV, and Dot3 TLV)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC PHY Configuration & Status TLV	<p>The MAC/PHY Configuration/Status TLV advertises the bit-rate and duplex capability of the sending 802.3 node. It also advertises the current duplex and bit-rating of the sending node. Lastly, it advertises whether these setting were the result of auto-negotiation during link initiation or manual override.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AN Supported - Displays if the port supports or does not support auto-negotiation. • AN Enabled - The current auto-negotiation status of the port. • AN Advertised Capability - The auto-negotiation capabilities of the port. • Oper MAU Type - The current Medium Attachment Unit (MAU) type of the port
Link Aggregation TLV	<p>The Link Aggregation TLV indicates whether the link is capable of being aggregated, whether the link is currently in an aggregation, and if in an aggregation, the port identification of the aggregation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Aggregation Capability — The current aggregation capability of the port. • Aggregation Status — The current aggregation status of the port. • Aggregation Port ID — The aggregation ID of the current port.
Max Frame Size TLV	<p>This displays the maximum supported frame size in octets.</p>

Figure 190 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status > LLDP Local Port Status Detail (Med TLV)

MED TLV		
Capabilities TLV	Network Policy	No
	Location	No
	Extend Power via MDI PSE	No
	Extend Power via MDI PD	No
	Inventory Management	No
Device Type TLV	Device Type	Network Connectivity
Network Policy TLV	Voice	
	Voice-Signaling	
	Guest-Voice	
	Guest-Voice-Signaling	
	Softphone-Voice	
	Video-Conferencing	
	Streaming-Video	
	Video-Signaling	
Location Identification TLV	Coordinate-base LCI	
	Civic LCI	
	ELIN	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

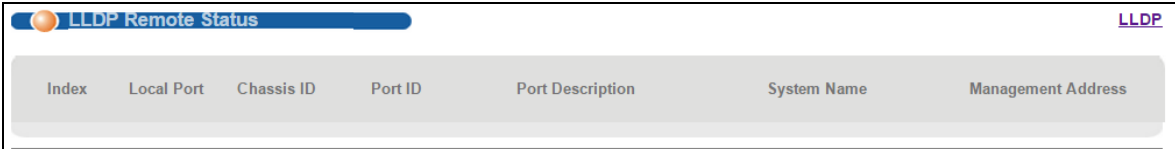
Table 142 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status > LLDP Local Port Status Detail (Med TLV)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MED TLV	LLDP Media Endpoint Discovery (MED) is an extension of LLDP that provides additional capabilities to support media endpoint devices. MED enables advertisement and discovery of network policies, device location discovery to allow creation of location databases, and information for troubleshooting.
Capabilities TLV	This field displays which LLDP-MED TLV are capable to transmit on the Switch. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Network Policy • Location • Extend Power via MDI PSE • Extend Power via MDI PD • Inventory Management
Device Type TLV	This is the LLDP-MED device class. The Zyxel Switch device type is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Network Connectivity
Network Policy TLV	This displays a network policy for the specified application. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Voice • Voice-Signaling • Guest-Voice • Guest-Voice-Signaling • Softphone-Voice • Video-Conferencing • Streaming-Video • Video-Signaling
Location Identification TLV	This shows the location information of a caller by its ELIN (Emergency Location Identifier Number) or the IETF Geopriv Civic Address based Location Configuration Information (Civic Address LCI). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Coordinate-based LCI - latitude, longitude and altitude coordinates of the location Configuration Information (LCI) • Civic LCI - IETF Geopriv Civic Address based Location Configuration Information • ELIN - (Emergency Location Identifier Number)

36.5 LLDP Remote Status

This screen displays a summary of LLDP status for each LLDP connection to a neighboring Switch. Click **Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status (Click Here)** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 191 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status



Index	Local Port	Chassis ID	Port ID	Port Description	System Name	Management Address

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 143 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	The index number shows the number of remote devices that are connected to the Switch. Click on an index number to view the detailed LLDP status for this remote device in the LLDP Remote Port Status Detail screen.
Local Port	This is the number of the Switch's port that received LLDPDU from the remote device.
Chassis ID	This displays the chassis ID of the remote device associated with the transmitting LLDP agent. The chassis ID is identified by the chassis ID subtype. For example, the MAC address of the remote device.
Port ID	This is an alpha-numeric string that contains the specific identifier for the port from which this LLDPDU was transmitted. The port ID is identified by the port ID subtype.
Port Description	This displays a description for the port from which this LLDPDU was transmitted.
System Name	This displays the system name of the remote device.
Management Address	This displays the management address of the remote device. It could be the MAC address or IP address. You can click on the IP address hyperlink directly.

36.5.1 LLDP Remote Port Status Detail

This screen displays detailed LLDP status of the remote device connected to the Switch. Click **Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status (Click Here)** and then click an index number, for example 1, in the **Index** column in the **LLDP Remote Status** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 192 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail (Basic TLV)

LLDP Remote Port Status Detail		LLDP Remote Status
Local Port: 1		
Basic TLV		
Chassis ID TLV	Chassis ID Subtype	mac-address
	Chassis ID	00:19:cb:00:00:02
Port ID TLV	Port ID Subtype	local-assigned
	Port ID	1
Time To Live TLV	Time To Live	120
Port Description TLV	Port Description	12345678901234567890123456789012345678901234567890abcd
System Name TLV	System Name	GS3700
System Description TLV	System Description	V4.10(AAFZ.2) 05/16/2013
System Capabilities TLV	System Capabilities Supported	bridge
	System Capabilities Enabled	bridge
Management Address TLV	Management Address Subtype	ALL_802
	Management Address	00:19:cb:00:00:02
	Interface Number Subtype	unknown
	Interface Number	0
	Object Identifier	0

The following table describes the labels in Basic TLV part of the screen.

Table 144 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail (Basic TLV)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Local Port	This displays the number of the Switch's port to which the remote device is connected.
Basic TLV	
Chassis ID TLV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chassis ID Subtype - this displays how the chassis of the remote device is identified. Chassis ID - this displays the chassis ID of the remote device. The chassis ID is identified by the chassis ID subtype.
Port ID TLV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Port ID Subtype - this displays how the port of the remote device is identified. Port ID - this displays the port ID of the remote device. The port ID is identified by the port ID subtype.
Time To Live TLV	This displays the time-to-live (TTL) multiplier of LLDP frames. The device information on the neighboring devices ages out and is discarded when its corresponding TTL expires. The TTL value is to multiply the TTL multiplier by the LLDP frames transmitting interval.

Table 144 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail (Basic TLV)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port Description TLV	This displays the remote port description.
System Name TLV	This displays the system name of the remote device.
System Description TLV	This displays the system description of the remote device.
System Capabilities TLV	This displays whether the system capabilities are enabled and supported on the remote device. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• System Capabilities Supported• System Capabilities Enabled
Management Address TLV	This displays the following management address parameters of the remote device. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Management Address Subtype• Management Address• Interface Number Subtype• Interface Number• Object Identifier

Figure 193 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail> (Dot 1 and Dot3 TLV)

Dot1 TLV		
Port VLAN ID TLV	Port VLAN ID	100
Port-Protocol VLAN ID TLV	Port-Protocol VLAN ID	200
	Port-Protocol VLAN ID Supported	Yes
	Port-Protocol VLAN ID Enabled	Yes
Vlan Name TLV	VLAN ID	1
	VLAN Name	client 1
Protocol Identity TLV	Protocol ID	1
Dot3 TLV		
MAC PHY Configuration & Status TLV	AN Supported	Yes
	AN Enabled	Yes
	AN Advertised Capability	10baseT 10baseTFD 100baseTX 100baseTXFD 1000baseTFD
	Oper MAU type	30
Link Aggregation TLV	Aggregation Capability	Yes
	Aggregation Status	Yes
	Aggregated Port ID	1
Power Via MDI TLV	Port Class	PSE
	MDI Supported	Yes
	MDI Enabled	Yes
	Pair Controlable	No
	PSE Power Pairs	1
	Power Class	1
Max Frame Size TLV	Max Frame Size	1518

The following table describes the labels in the Dot1 and Dot3 parts of the screen.

Table 145 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail (Dot1 and Dot3 TLV)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Dot1 TLV	
Port VLAN ID TLV	This displays the VLAN ID of this port on the remote device.
Port-Protocol VLAN ID TLV	This displays the IEEE 802.1 Port Protocol VLAN ID TLV, which indicates whether the VLAN ID and whether it is enabled and supported on the port of remote Switch which sent the LLDPDU. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Port-Protocol VLAN ID • Port-Protocol VLAN ID Supported • Port-Protocol VLAN ID Enabled

Table 145 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail (Dot1 and Dot3 TLV)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Vlan Name TLV	This shows the VLAN ID and name for remote device port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • VLAN ID • VLAN Name
Protocol Identity TLV	The Protocol Identity TLV allows the Switch to advertise the particular protocols that are accessible through its port.
Dot3 TLV	
MAC PHY Configuration & Status TLV	The MAC/PHY Configuration/Status TLV advertises the bit-rate and duplex capability of the sending 802.3 node. It also advertises the current duplex and bit-rating of the sending node. Lastly, it advertises whether these setting were the result of auto-negotiation during link initiation or manual override. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AN Supported - Displays if the port supports or does not support auto-negotiation. • AN Enabled - The current auto-negotiation status of the port. • AN Advertised Capability - The auto-negotiation capabilities of the port. • Oper MAU Type - The current Medium Attachment Unit (MAU) type of the port
Link Aggregation TLV	The Link Aggregation TLV indicates whether the link is capable of being aggregated, whether the link is currently in an aggregation, and if in an aggregation, the port identification of the aggregation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Aggregation Capability — The current aggregation capability of the port. • Aggregation Status — The current aggregation status of the port. • Aggregation Port ID — The aggregation ID of the current port.
Power Via MDI TLV	The Power Via MDI TLV allows network management to advertise and discover the MDI power support capabilities of the sending port on the remote device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Port Class • MDI Supported • MDI Enabled • Pair Controlable • PSE Power Pairs • Power Class
Max Frame Size TLV	This displays the maximum supported frame size in octets.

Figure 194 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail (MED TLV)

MED TLV		
Capabilities TLV	Network Policy	Yes
	Location	Yes
	Extend Power via MDI PSE	No
	Extend Power via MDI PD	No
	Inventory Management	No
Device Type TLV	Device Type	Network Connectivity
Network Policy TLV	Voice	VLAN ID 10, tagged, known, L2-priority 7, DSCP 63
	Voice-Signaling	VLAN ID 100, tagged, known, L2-priority 2, DSCP 10
	Guest-Voice	VLAN ID 20, tagged, known, L2-priority 3, DSCP 12
	Guest-Voice-Signaling	VLAN ID 0, untagged, known, L2-priority 0, DSCP 0
	Softphone-Voice	VLAN ID 200, tagged, known, L2-priority 1, DSCP 1
	Video-Conferencing	VLAN ID 0, untagged, known, L2-priority 0, DSCP 0
	Streaming-Video	VLAN ID 300, tagged, known, L2-priority 4, DSCP 20
	Video-Signaling	VLAN ID 400, tagged, known, L2-priority 6, DSCP 55
Location Identification TLV	Coordinate-base LCI	latitude north 0.0 longitude east 0.9995 altitude meters 0.0 datum NAD83-MLLW
	Civic LCI	country TW city HSINCHU building ZYXEL
	ELIN	1234567890
Inventory TLV	Hardware Revision	V20131114 11/14/2013
	Software Revision	V4.10(AAOA.0) 11/15/2013
	Firmware Revision	V4.10(AAOA.0) 11/15/2013
	Model Name	GS3700-HP
	Manufacturer	123456789
	Serial Number	123456789
	Asset ID	123456789
Extended Power via MDI TLV	Power Type	PSE Device
	Power Source	PSE
	Power Priority	High
	Power Value	Available power 130.0 Watts

The following table describes the labels in the MED TLV part of the screen.

Table 146 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail (MED TLV)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MED TLV	LLDP Media Endpoint Discovery (MED) is an extension of LLDP that provides additional capabilities to support media endpoint devices. MED enables advertisement and discovery of network policies, device location discovery to allow creation of location databases, and information for troubleshooting.
Capabilities TLV	This displays the MED capabilities the remote port supports. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Network Policy • Location • Extend Power via MDI PSE • Extend Power via MDI PD • Inventory Management
Device Type TLV	LLDP-MED endpoint device classes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Endpoint Class I • Endpoint Class II • Endpoint Class III • Network Connectivity
Network Policy TLV	This displays a network policy for the specified application. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Voice • Voice-Signaling • Guest-Voice • Guest-Voice-Signaling • Softphone-Voice • Video-Conferencing • Streaming-Video • Video-Signaling
Location Identification TLV	This shows the location information of a caller by its: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Coordinate-base LCI - latitude and longitude coordinates of the Location Configuration Information (LCI) • Civic LCI - IETF Geopriv Civic Address based Location Configuration Information • ELIN - (Emergency Location Identifier Number)
Inventory TLV	The majority of IP Phones lack support of management protocols such as SNMP, so LLDP-MED inventory TLVs are used to provide their inventory information to the Network Connectivity Devices such as the Switch. The Inventory TLV may contain the following information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hardware Revision • Software Revision • Firmware Revision • Model Name • Manufacturer • Serial Number • Asset ID
Extended Power via MDI TLV	Extended Power Via MDI Discovery enables detailed power information to be advertised by Media Endpoints, such as IP phones and Network Connectivity Devices such as the Switch. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Power Type - whether it is currently operating from primary power or is on backup power (backup power may indicate to the Endpoint Device that it should move to a power conservation mode). • Power Source - whether or not the Endpoint is currently operating from an external power source. • Power Priority - the Endpoint Device's power priority (which the Network Connectivity Device may use to prioritize which devices will remain in service during power shortages) • Power Value - power requirement, in fractions of Watts, in current configuration

36.6 LLDP Configuration

Use this screen to configure global LLDP settings on the Switch. Click **Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration (Click Here)** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 195 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration

Port	Admin Status	Notification
*	Disable ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Disable ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Disable ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	Disable ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Disable ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	Disable ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	Disable ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	Disable ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	Disable ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	Disable ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	Disable ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	Disable ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 147 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select to enable LLDP on the Switch. It is enabled by default.
Transmit Interval	Enter how many seconds the Switch waits before sending LLDP packets.
Transmit Hold	Enter the time-to-live (TTL) multiplier of LLDP frames. The device information on the neighboring devices ages out and is discarded when its corresponding TTL expires. The TTL value is to multiply the TTL multiplier by the LLDP packets transmitting interval.
Transmit Delay	Enter the delay (in seconds) between successive LLDPDU transmissions initiated by value or status changes in the Switch MIB.
Reinitialize Delay	Enter the number of seconds for LLDP to wait before initializing on a port.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.

Table 147 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Port	This displays the Switch's port number. * means all ports.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each port if necessary. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Admin Status	Select whether LLDP transmission and/or reception is allowed on this port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disable - not allowed • Tx-Only - transmit only • Rx-Only - receive only • Tx-Rx - transmit and receive
Notification	Select whether LLDP notification is enabled on this port.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

36.6.1 LLDP Configuration Basic TLV Setting

Use this screen to configure Basic TLV settings. Click **Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration (Click Here) > Basic TLV Setting** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 196 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration > Basic TLV Setting

The screenshot shows the 'Basic TLV Setting' configuration page. At the top left is a blue header with an orange circle icon and the text 'Basic TLV Setting'. At the top right is a link labeled 'LLDP Configuration'. Below the header is a table with the following columns: Port, Management Address, Port Description, System Capabilities, System Description, and System Name. The table contains 19 rows, with the first row marked with an asterisk (*) and the remaining rows numbered 1 through 19. Each row has a small square checkbox in the Management Address column. Below the table are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Cancel'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 148 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration > Basic TLV Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This displays the Switch's port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each port if necessary. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Management Address	Select the check box(es) to enable or disable the sending of Management Address TLVs on the port(s).
Port Description	Select the check box(es) to enable or disable the sending of Port Description TLVs on the port(s).
System Capabilities	Select the check box(es) to enable or to disable the sending of System Capabilities TLVs on the port(s).
System Description	Select the check box(es) to enable or to disable the sending of System Description TLVs on the port(s).
System Name	Select the check box(es) to enable or to disable the sending of System Name TLVs on the port(s).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

36.6.2 LLDP Configuration Org-specific TLV Setting

Use this screen to configure organization-specific TLV settings. Click **Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration (Click Here) > Org-specific TLV Setting** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 197 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration > Org-specific TLV Setting

Port	Dot1 TLV			Dot3 TLV	
	Port-Protocol VLAN ID	Port VLAN ID	Link Aggregation	MAC/PHY	Max Frame Size
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
18	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 149 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration > Org-specific TLV Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This displays the Switch's port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each port if necessary. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Dot1 TLV	
Port-Protocol VLAN ID	Select the check box(es) to enable or disable the sending of IEEE 802.1 Port and Protocol VLAN ID TLVs on the port(s).
Port VLAN ID	Select the check box(es) to enable or disable the sending of IEEE 802.1 Port VLAN ID TLVs on the port(s). All check boxes in this column are enabled by default.
Dot3 TLV	
Link Aggregation	Select the check box(es) to enable or disable the sending of IEEE 802.3 Link Aggregation TLVs on the port(s).
MAC/PHY	Select the check box(es) to enable or disable the sending of IEEE 802.3 MAC/PHY Configuration/Status TLVs on the port(s). All check boxes in this column are enabled by default.
Max Frame Size	Select the check box(es) to enable or disable the sending of IEEE 802.3 Max Frame Size TLVs on the port(s).
Power Via MDI	Note: For PoE models only. The Power Via MDI TLV allows network management to advertise and discover the MDI power support capabilities of the sending port on the remote device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Port Class • MDI Supported • MDI Enabled • Pair Controlable • PSE Power Pairs • Power Class
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

36.7 LLDP-MED Configuration

Click **Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Configuration** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 198 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Configuration

Port	Notification	MED TLV Setting	
	Topology Change	Location	Network Policy
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 150 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This displays the Switch's port number. Select * to configure all ports simultaneously.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each port if necessary. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Notification	
Topology Change	Select to enable LLDP-MED topology change traps on this port.
MED TLV Setting	
Location	Select to enable transmitting LLDP-MED location TLV.
Network Policy	Select to enable transmitting LLDP-MED Network Policy TLV.
Apply	Click Apply to save the changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

36.8 LLDP-MED Network Policy

Click **Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Network Policy (Click Here)** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 199 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Network Policy

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 151 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Network Policy

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	Enter the port number to set up the LLDP-MED network policy.
Application Type	Select the type of application used in the network policy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • voice • voice-signaling • guest-voice • guest-voice-signaling • softphone-voice • video-conferencing • streaming-video • video-signaling
Tag	Select to tag or untag in the network policy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • tagged • untagged
VLAN	Enter the VLAN ID number. It should be from 1 to 4094. For priority tagged frames, enter "0".
DSCP	Enter the DSCP value of the network policy. The value is defined from 0 through 63 with the 0 representing use of the default DSCP value.
Priority	Enter the priority value for the network policy.
Add	Click Add after finish entering the network policy information. A summary table will list all the Switch you've added.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin entering the information afresh.
Index	This field displays the of index number of the network policy. Click an index number to edit the rule.
Port	This field displays the port number of the network policy.

Table 151 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Network Policy

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Application Type	This field displays the application type of the network policy.
Tag	This field displays the Tag Status of the network policy.
VLAN	This field displays the VLANID of the network policy.
Priority	This field displays the priority value of the network policy.
DSCP	This field displays the DSCP value of the network policy.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the selected check boxes.

36.9 LLDP-MED Location

Click **Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Location (Click Here)** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 200 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Location

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 152 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Location

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	Enter the port number you want to set up the location within the LLDP-MED network.
Location Coordinates	The LLDP-MED uses geographical coordinates and Civic Address to set the location information of the remote device. Geographical based coordinates includes latitude, longitude, altitude and datum. Civic Address includes Country, State, County, City, Street and other related information.
Latitude	<p>Enter the latitude information. The value should be from 0° to 90°. The negative value represents the South.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • north • south
Longitude	<p>Enter the longitude information. The value should be from 0° to 180°. The negative value represents the West.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • west • east
Altitude	<p>Enter the altitude information. The value should be from -2097151 to 2097151 in meters or in floors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • meters • floor
Datum	<p>Select the appropriate geodetic datum used by GPS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • WGS84 • NAD83-NAVD88 • NAD83-MLLW
Civic Address	<p>Enter the Civic Address by providing information such as Country, State, County, City, Street, Number, ZIP code and other additional information. Enter at least two field in this configuration including the Country. The valid length of the Country field is 2 characters and all other fields are up to 32 characters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Country • State • County • City • Division • Neighbor • Street • Leading-Street-Direction • Street-Suffix • Trailing-Street-Suffix • House-Number • House-Number-Suffix • Landmark • Additional-Location • Name • Zip-Code • Building • Unit • Floor • Room-Number • Place-Type • Postal-Community-Name • Post-Office-Box • Additional-Code

Table 152 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Location (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ELIN Number	Enter a numerical digit string, corresponding to the ELIN identifier which is used during emergency call setup to a traditional CAMA or ISDN trunk-based PSAP. The valid length is from 10 to 25 characters.
Add	Click Add after finish entering the location information.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin entering the location information afresh.
Index	This lists the index number of the location configuration. Click an index number to view or edit the location.
Port	This lists the port number of the location configuration.
Location Coordinates	This field displays the location configuration information based on geographical coordinates that includes longitude, latitude, altitude and datum.
Civic Address	This field displays the Civic Address for the remote device using information such as Country, State, County, City, Street, Number, ZIP code and additional information.
ELIN Number	This field shows the Emergency Location Identification Number (ELIN), which is used to identify endpoint devices when they issue emergency call services. The valid length is form 10 to 25 characters.
	Select an entry's check box to select a specific entry. Otherwise, select the check box in the table heading row to select all entries.
Delete	Check the locations that you want to remove, then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the selected check boxes.

CHAPTER 37

BPDU Guard

37.1 BPDU Guard Overview

A BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) is a data frame that contains information about STP. STP-aware switches exchange BPDUs periodically. The BPDU guard feature allows you to prevent any new STP-aware switch from connecting to an existing network and causing STP topology changes in the network. Enable BPDU guard on the Switch and ports to have the Switch automatically shut down ports that receive BPDU frames. You can re-enable the ports manually in the **Basic Setting > Port Setup** screen, or use the **Errdisable Recovery** screen (see [Section 33.7 on page 288](#)) to have the ports become active after a certain time interval.

37.2 BPDU Guard Status

Use this screen to view whether BPDU guard is enabled on the Switch and individual ports and port status. Click **Advanced Application > BPDU Guard** in the navigation panel.

Figure 201 Advanced Application > BPDU Guard

Port	Active	Status
1	No	Forwarding
2	No	Forwarding
3	No	Forwarding
4	No	Forwarding
5	No	Forwarding
6	No	Forwarding
7	No	Forwarding
8	No	Forwarding
9	No	Forwarding
10	No	Forwarding
11	No	Forwarding
12	No	Forwarding
13	No	Forwarding
14	No	Forwarding
15	No	Forwarding
16	No	Forwarding
17	No	Forwarding
18	No	Forwarding
19	No	Forwarding
20	No	Forwarding
21	No	Forwarding
22	No	Forwarding
23	No	Forwarding
24	No	Forwarding
25	No	Forwarding
26	No	Forwarding
27	No	Forwarding
28	No	Forwarding

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 153 Advanced Application > BPDU Guard

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
BPDU guard global configuration	This field displays whether BPDU guard is activated on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
Active	This shows whether BPDU guard is activated on the port.
Status	This shows whether the port is shut down (Err-disable) or able to transmit packets (Forwarding).

37.3 BPDU Guard Configuration

Use this screen to turn on BPDU guard on the Switch and ports. In the **BPDU Guard Status** screen, click **Configuration** to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 202 Advanced Application > BPDU Guard > Configuration

The screenshot shows the 'BPDU Guard Configuration' interface. At the top, there is a header with an orange circle icon, the title 'BPDU Guard Configuration', and a 'Status' link. Below the header is a bar with the word 'Active' and a checkbox. The main area contains a table with two columns: 'Port' and 'Active'. The 'Port' column lists ports from 1 to 28, plus a '*' row. The 'Active' column contains checkboxes for each port. At the bottom of the table are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Port	Active
*	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	<input type="checkbox"/>
18	<input type="checkbox"/>
19	<input type="checkbox"/>
20	<input type="checkbox"/>
21	<input type="checkbox"/>
22	<input type="checkbox"/>
23	<input type="checkbox"/>
24	<input type="checkbox"/>
25	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	<input type="checkbox"/>
27	<input type="checkbox"/>
28	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 154 Advanced Application > BPDU Guard > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable BPDU guard on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to change the setting for all ports. Hint, you can use this row first to select or clear the setting for all ports and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.
Active	Select this check box to enable the BPDU guard feature on this port. The Switch shuts down this port if it receives any BPDU frames on the port. Clear this check box to disable the BPDU guard feature.

Table 154 Advanced Application > BPDU Guard > Configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save the changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 38

Link Flap

38.1 Link Flap Status

A communications link with a link flap condition alternates between up and down states. Cable or SFP issues, erroneous duplex configuration, power saving features, or device reboots can cause a link flap condition. Link-flap prevention helps minimize disruptions by using errdisable to disable a port if its link status keeps changing rapidly. You can then enable the port manually in the **Basic Setting > Port Setup** screen or use the **Errdisable Recovery** screen (see [Section 33.7 on page 288](#)) to have the ports become active after a certain time interval. Click **Advanced Application > Link Flap** in the navigation panel to open this screen. Use this screen to view whether link flap is enabled on the Switch and individual ports and port status.

Figure 203 Advanced Application > Link Flap

Port	Active	Status
1	No	Forwarding
2	Yes	Forwarding
3	No	Forwarding
4	No	Forwarding
5	No	Forwarding
6	No	Forwarding
7	No	Forwarding
8	No	Forwarding
9	No	Forwarding
10	No	Forwarding
11	No	Forwarding
12	No	Forwarding
13	No	Forwarding
14	No	Forwarding
15	No	Forwarding
16	No	Forwarding
17	No	Forwarding
18	No	Forwarding
19	No	Forwarding
20	No	Forwarding
21	No	Forwarding
22	No	Forwarding
23	No	Forwarding
24	No	Forwarding
25	No	Forwarding
26	No	Forwarding
27	No	Forwarding
28	No	Forwarding

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 155 Advanced Application > Link Flap

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link-Flap Prevention global configuration	This field displays whether link-flap prevention is activated on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
Active	This shows whether link-flap prevention is activated on the port.
Status	This shows whether the port is shut down (Err-disable) or able to transmit packets (Forwarding).

38.2 Link Flap Configuration

Use this screen to turn on link-flap prevention on the Switch and ports. In the **Link Flap Status** screen, click **Configuration** to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 204 Advanced Application > Link Flap > Configuration

Port	Active
*	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	<input type="checkbox"/>
18	<input type="checkbox"/>
19	<input type="checkbox"/>
20	<input type="checkbox"/>
21	<input type="checkbox"/>
22	<input type="checkbox"/>
23	<input type="checkbox"/>
24	<input type="checkbox"/>
25	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	<input type="checkbox"/>
27	<input type="checkbox"/>
28	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 156 Advanced Application > Link Flap > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable link-flap prevention on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to change the setting for all ports. Hint, you can use this row first to select or clear the setting for all ports and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.
Active	Select this check box to enable the link-flap prevention feature on this port. The Switch shuts down this port if its link status changes more than 5 times in 10 seconds. Clear this check box to disable the ink-flap prevention feature.

Table 156 Advanced Application > Link Flap > Configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save the changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 39

Static Route

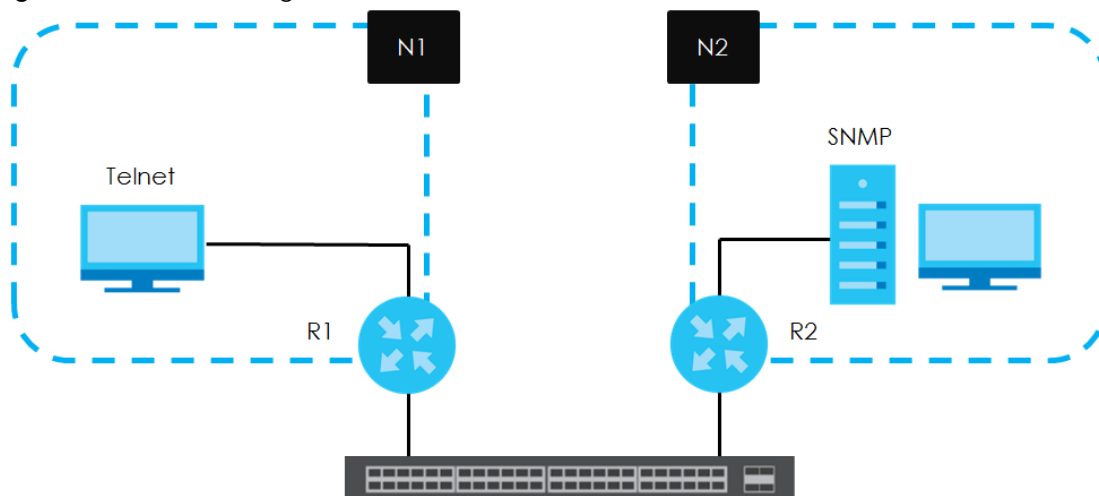
This chapter shows you how to configure static routes.

39.1 Static Routing Overview

The Switch uses IP for communication with management computers, for example using HTTP, Telnet, SSH, or SNMP. Use IP static routes to have the Switch respond to remote management stations that are not reachable through the default gateway. The Switch can also use static routes to send data to a server or device that is not reachable through the default gateway, for example when sending SNMP traps or using ping to test IP connectivity.

This figure shows a **Telnet** session coming in from network **N1**. The Switch sends reply traffic to default gateway **R1** which routes it back to the manager's computer. The Switch needs a static route to tell it to use router **R2** to send traffic to an SNMP trap server on network **N2**.

Figure 205 Static Routing Overview



39.2 Static Routing

Click **IP Application > Static Routing** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 206 IP Application > Static Routing



To enable IPv4 static route, configure the static route settings in the **IP Application > Static Routing > IPv4 Static Route** screen.

39.3 IPv4 Static Route

Click **IP Application > Static Routing > IPv4 Static Route** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 207 IP Application > Static Routing > IPv4 Static Route

The screenshot shows the 'IPv4 Static Route' configuration interface. At the top, there's a title bar with 'IPv4 Static Route' and a 'Static Routing' link. Below it is a form with the following fields:

- Active:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
- Name:** An empty text input field.
- Destination IP Address:** A text input field containing '0.0.0.0'.
- IP Subnet Mask:** A text input field containing '0.0.0.0'.
- Gateway IP Address:** A text input field containing '0.0.0.0'.
- Metric:** An empty text input field.

Below the form are three buttons: 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear'. At the bottom of the screen, there is a table header with columns: 'Index', 'Active', 'Name', 'Destination Address', 'Subnet Mask', 'Gateway Address', 'Metric', and 'Delete'. Below the header are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Cancel'.

The following table describes the related labels you use to create a static route.

Table 157 IP Application > Static Routing > IPv4 Static Route

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	This field allows you to activate/deactivate this static route.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 10 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Destination IP Address	This parameter specifies the IP network address of the final destination.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for this destination. Routing is always based on network number. If you need to specify a route to a single host, use a subnet mask of 255.255.255.255 in the subnet mask field to force the network number to be identical to the host ID.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your Switch that will forward the packet to the destination. The gateway must be a router on the same segment as your Switch.
Metric	The metric represents the "cost" of transmission for routing purposes. IP routing uses hop count as the measurement of cost, with a minimum of 1 for directly connected networks. Enter a number that approximates the cost for this link. The number need not be precise, but it must be between 1 and 15. In practice, 2 or 3 is usually a good number.
Add	Click Add to insert a new static route to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the above fields to your previous configuration.

Table 157 IP Application > Static Routing > IPv4 Static Route (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clear	Click Clear to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number of the route. Click a number to edit the static route entry.
Active	This field displays Yes when the static route is activated and No when it is deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this route. This is for identification purposes only.
Destination Address	This field displays the IP network address of the final destination.
Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask for this destination.
Gateway Address	This field displays the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your Switch that will forward the packet to the destination.
Metric	This field displays the cost of transmission for routing purposes.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

CHAPTER 40

Differentiated Services

This chapter shows you how to configure Differentiated Services (DiffServ) on the Switch.

40.1 DiffServ Overview

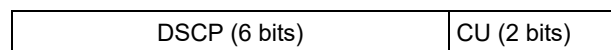
Quality of Service (QoS) is used to prioritize source-to-destination traffic flows. All packets in the flow are given the same priority. You can use CoS (class of service) to give different priorities to different packet types.

DiffServ is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

40.1.1 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (ToS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels and the remaining 2 bits are defined as currently unused (CU). The following figure illustrates the DS field.

Figure 208 DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field



DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

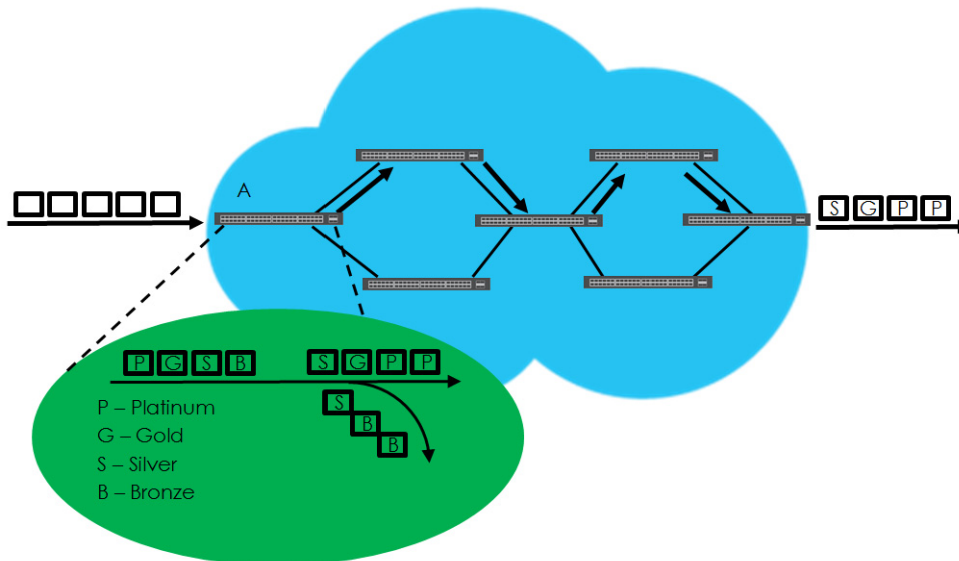
The DSCP value determines the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets as it is forwarded across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule different kinds of traffic can be marked for different priorities of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

40.1.2 DiffServ Network Example

The following figure depicts a DiffServ network consisting of a group of directly connected DiffServ-compliant network devices. The boundary node (**A** in [Figure 209](#)) in a DiffServ network classifies (marks with a DSCP value) the incoming packets into different traffic flows (**Platinum, Gold, Silver, Bronze**) based on the configured marking rules. A network administrator can then apply various traffic policies to the traffic flows. An example traffic policy, is to give higher drop precedence to one traffic flow over

others. In our example, packets in the **Bronze** traffic flow are more likely to be dropped when congestion occurs than the packets in the **Platinum** traffic flow as they move across the DiffServ network.

Figure 209 DiffServ Network



40.2 Two Rate Three Color Marker Traffic Policing (MGS3530-28)

Traffic policing is the limiting of the input or output transmission rate of a class of traffic on the basis of user-defined criteria. Traffic policing methods measure traffic flows against user-defined criteria and identify it as either conforming, exceeding, or violating the criteria.

Two Rate Three Color Marker (TRTCM, defined in RFC 2698) is a type of traffic policing that identifies packets by comparing them to two user-defined rates: the Committed Information Rate (CIR) and the Peak Information Rate (PIR). The CIR specifies the average rate at which packets are admitted to the network. The PIR is greater than or equal to the CIR. CIR and PIR values are based on the guaranteed and maximum bandwidth respectively as negotiated between a service provider and client.

Two Rate Three Color Marker evaluates incoming packets and marks them with one of three colors which refer to packet loss priority levels. High packet loss priority level is referred to as red, medium is referred to as yellow, and low is referred to as green. After TRTCM is configured and DiffServ is enabled the following actions are performed on the colored packets:

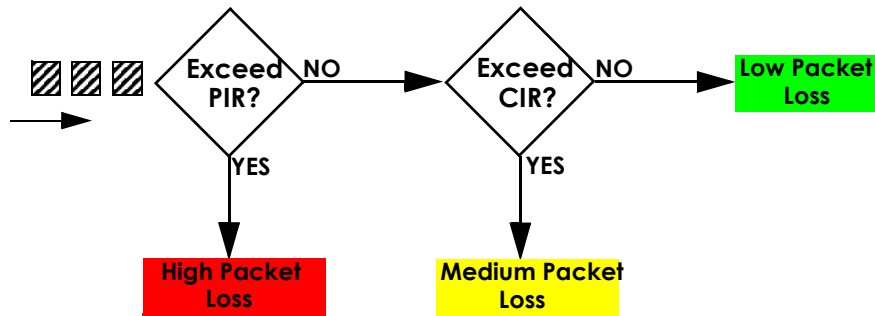
- Red (high loss priority level) packets are dropped or have their DSCP value remarked.
- Yellow (medium loss priority level) packets are dropped if there is congestion on the network.
- Green (low loss priority level) packets are forwarded.

TRTCM operates in one of two modes: color-blind or color-aware. In color-blind mode, packets are marked based on evaluating against the PIR and CIR regardless of if they have previously been marked or not. In the color-aware mode, packets are marked based on both existing color and evaluation against the PIR and CIR.

40.2.1 TRTCM-Color-blind Mode

All packets are evaluated against the PIR. If a packet exceeds the PIR it is marked red. Otherwise it is evaluated against the CIR. If it exceeds the CIR then it is marked yellow. Finally, if it is below the CIR then it is marked green.

Figure 210 TRTCM-Color-blind Mode

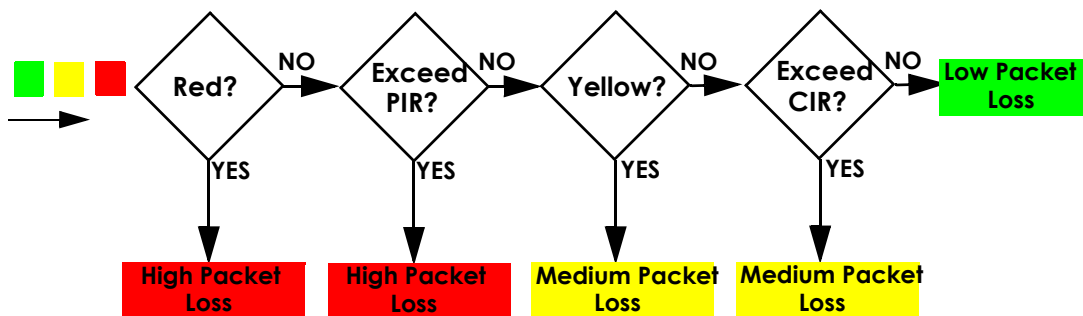


40.2.2 TRTCM-Color-aware Mode

In color-aware mode the evaluation of the packets uses the existing packet loss priority. TRTCM can increase a packet loss priority of a packet but it cannot decrease it. Packets that have been previously marked red or yellow can only be marked with an equal or higher packet loss priority.

Packets marked red (high packet loss priority) continue to be red without evaluation against the PIR or CIR. Packets marked yellow can only be marked red or remain yellow so they are only evaluated against the PIR. Only the packets marked green are first evaluated against the PIR and then if they don't exceed the PIR level are they evaluated against the CIR.

Figure 211 TRTCM-Color-aware Mode



40.2.3 DSCP Remapping

The Switch supports DSCP remapping with color-aware mode TRTCM. Color-aware TRTCM deals with packets that have already been given color marking, by previous devices, indicated by the DSCP value.

In color-blind mode DSCP remapping does not apply and the TRTCM algorithm determines the color of the packets based solely on CIR and PIR. In color-aware mode packets carry colors before the Switch processes them by TRTCM. The Switch marks packet colors by the DSCP value and the DSCP remapping table. DSCP remapping maps every DSCP value (0-63) to a color. After TRTCM processing the algorithm

can change green packets to yellow or red, and yellow packets to red when certain criteria are met. By default, all DSCP values are treated as green.

40.3 Activating DiffServ

Activate DiffServ to apply marking rules or IEEE 802.1p priority mapping on the selected ports.

Click **IP Application** > **DiffServ** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 212 IP Application > DiffServ

Port	Active
*	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	<input type="checkbox"/>
18	<input type="checkbox"/>
19	<input type="checkbox"/>
20	<input type="checkbox"/>
21	<input type="checkbox"/>
22	<input type="checkbox"/>
23	<input type="checkbox"/>
24	<input type="checkbox"/>
25	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	<input type="checkbox"/>
27	<input type="checkbox"/>
28	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 158 IP Application > DiffServ

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable DiffServ on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the index number of a port on the Switch.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Active	Select Active to enable DiffServ on the port.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

40.3.1 Configuring 2-Rate 3 Color Marker Settings

Use this screen to configure TRTCM settings. Click the **2-rate 3 Color Marker** link in the **DiffServ** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Note: You cannot enable both TRTCM and bandwidth control at the same time.

Figure 213 IP Application > DiffServ > 2-rate 3 Color Marker

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 159 IP Application > DiffServ > 2-rate 3 Color Marker

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to activate TRTCM (Two Rate Three Color Marker) on the Switch. The Switch evaluates and marks the packets based on the TRTCM settings. Note: You must also activate DiffServ on the Switch and the individual ports for the Switch to drop red (high loss priority) colored packets.
Mode	Select color-blind to have the Switch treat all incoming packets as uncolored. All incoming packets are evaluated against the CIR and PIR. Select color-aware to treat the packets as marked by some preceding entity. Incoming packets are evaluated based on their existing color. Incoming packets that are not marked proceed through the Switch.
DSCP Remapping	Use the DSCP remapping fields to set the color marking for received packets that have already been given color marking, indicated by the DSCP value, by previous devices. Set them as green, yellow, or red based on their DSCP (0-63). DSCP remapping applies with color-aware mode.
Green	Specify the DSCP value to set green packets to.

Table 159 IP Application > DiffServ > 2-rate 3 Color Marker (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Yellow	Specify the DSCP value to set yellow packets to.
Red	Specify the DSCP value to set red packets to.
Port	This field displays the index number of a port on the Switch.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this to activate TRTCM on the port.
Commit Rate	Specify the Commit Information Rate (CIR) for this port.
Peak Rate	Specify the Peak Information Rate (PIR) for this port.
DSCP	Use this section to specify the DSCP values to assign to packets based on the color they are marked by TRTCM.
green	Specify the DSCP value to use for packets with low packet loss priority.
yellow	Specify the DSCP value to use for packets with medium packet loss priority.
red	Specify the DSCP value to use for packets with high packet loss priority.
Red Packet	Select Remarking to change the DSCP value of red packets according to the DSCP values configured in this table. Select Drop to discard red packets.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

40.4 DSCP-to-IEEE 802.1p Priority Settings

You can configure the DSCP to IEEE 802.1p mapping to allow the Switch to prioritize all traffic based on the incoming DSCP value according to the DiffServ to IEEE 802.1p mapping table.

The following table shows the default DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mapping.

Table 160 Default DSCP-IEEE 802.1p Mapping

DSCP VALUE	0 – 7	8 – 15	16 – 23	24 – 31	32 – 39	40 – 47	48 – 55	56 – 63
IEEE 802.1p	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

40.4.1 Configuring DSCP Settings

To change the DSCP-IEEE 802.1p mapping click the **DSCP Setting** link in the **DiffServ** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 214 IP Application > DiffServ > DSCP Setting

DSCP Setting																Diffserv
DSCP to 802.1p Mapping																
0	0 ▼	1	0 ▼	2	0 ▼	3	0 ▼	4	0 ▼	5	0 ▼	6	0 ▼	7	0 ▼	
8	1 ▼	9	1 ▼	10	1 ▼	11	1 ▼	12	1 ▼	13	1 ▼	14	1 ▼	15	1 ▼	
16	2 ▼	17	2 ▼	18	2 ▼	19	2 ▼	20	2 ▼	21	2 ▼	22	2 ▼	23	2 ▼	
24	3 ▼	25	3 ▼	26	3 ▼	27	3 ▼	28	3 ▼	29	3 ▼	30	3 ▼	31	3 ▼	
32	4 ▼	33	4 ▼	34	4 ▼	35	4 ▼	36	4 ▼	37	4 ▼	38	4 ▼	39	4 ▼	
40	5 ▼	41	5 ▼	42	5 ▼	43	5 ▼	44	5 ▼	45	5 ▼	46	5 ▼	47	5 ▼	
48	6 ▼	49	6 ▼	50	6 ▼	51	6 ▼	52	6 ▼	53	6 ▼	54	6 ▼	55	6 ▼	
56	7 ▼	57	7 ▼	58	7 ▼	59	7 ▼	60	7 ▼	61	7 ▼	62	7 ▼	63	7 ▼	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 161 IP Application > DiffServ > DSCP Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
0 ... 63	This is the DSCP classification identification number. To set the IEEE 802.1p priority mapping, select the priority level from the drop-down list box.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 41

DHCP

This chapter shows you how to configure the DHCP feature.

41.1 DHCP Overview

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual computers to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a server. You can configure the Switch as a DHCP server or a DHCP relay agent. When configured as a server, the Switch provides the TCP/IP configuration for the clients. If you configure the Switch as a relay agent, then the Switch forwards DHCP requests to DHCP server on your network. If you don't configure the Switch as a DHCP server or relay agent then you must have a DHCP server in the broadcast domain of the client computers or else the client computers must be configured manually.

41.1.1 DHCP Modes

If there is already a DHCP server on your network, then you can configure the Switch as a DHCP relay agent. When the Switch receives a request from a computer on your network, it contacts the DHCP server for the necessary IP information, and then relays the assigned information back to the computer.

41.1.2 DHCP Configuration Options

The DHCP configuration on the Switch is divided into **Global** and **VLAN** screens. The screen you should use for configuration depends on the DHCP services you want to offer the DHCP clients on your network. Choose the configuration screen based on the following criteria:

- **Global:** The Switch forwards all DHCP requests to the same DHCP server.
- **VLAN:** The Switch is configured on a VLAN by VLAN basis. The Switch can be configured to relay DHCP requests to different DHCP servers for clients in different VLAN.

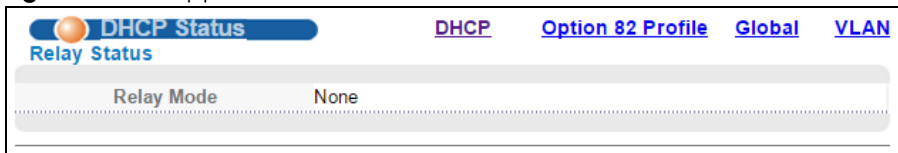
41.2 DHCP Configuration

Click **IP Application > DHCP** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. Click the link next to **DHCPv4** to open screens where you can enable and configure DHCPv4 relay settings and create option 82 profiles. Click the link next to **DHCPv6** to open a screen where you can configure DHCPv6 relay settings.

Figure 215 IP Application > DHCP

41.3 DHCPv4 Status

Click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4** in the navigation panel. The **DHCP Status** screen displays.

Figure 216 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 162 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Relay Status	This section displays configuration settings related to the Switch's DHCP relay mode.
Relay Mode	This field displays: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None: if the Switch is not configured as a DHCP relay agent. • Global: if the Switch is configured as a DHCP relay agent only. • VLAN: followed by a VLAN ID or multiple VLAN IDs if it is configured as a relay agent for specific VLAN(s).

41.4 DHCPv4 Relay

Configure DHCP relay on the Switch if the DHCP clients and the DHCP server are not in the same broadcast domain. During the initial IP address leasing, the Switch helps to relay network information (such as the IP address and subnet mask) between a DHCP client and a DHCP server. Once the DHCP client obtains an IP address and can connect to the network, network information renewal is done between the DHCP client and the DHCP server without the help of the Switch.

The Switch can be configured as a global DHCP relay. This means that the Switch forwards all DHCP requests from all domains to the same DHCP server. You can also configure the Switch to relay DHCP information based on the VLAN membership of the DHCP clients.

41.4.1 DHCPv4 Relay Agent Information

The Switch can add information about the source of client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server by adding **Relay Agent Information**. This helps provide authentication about the source of the requests. The DHCP server can then provide an IP address based on this information. Please refer to RFC 3046 for more details.

The DHCP **Relay Agent Information** feature adds an Agent Information field to the **Option 82** field. The **Option 82** field is in the DHCP headers of client DHCP request frames that the Switch relays to a DHCP server.

Relay Agent Information can include the **System Name** of the Switch if you select this option. You can change the **System Name** in **Basic Settings > General Setup**.

The following describes the DHCP relay information that the Switch sends to the DHCP server:

Table 163 Relay Agent Information

FIELD LABELS	DESCRIPTION
Slot ID	(1 byte) This value is always 0 for stand-alone switches.
Port ID	(1 byte) This is the port that the DHCP client is connected to.
VLAN ID	(2 bytes) This is the VLAN that the port belongs to.
Information	(up to 64 bytes) This optional, read-only field is set according to system name set in Basic Settings > General Setup .

41.4.2 DHCPv4 Option 82 Profile

Use this screen to create DHCPv4 option 82 profiles. Click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4** in the navigation panel and click the **Option 82 Profile** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 217 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Option 82 Profile

DHCP Option 82 Profile [DHCP Setting](#)

Profile Setup

Name:

Circuit-ID: Enable
 slot-port vlan hostname
 string:

Remote-ID: Enable
 mac
 string:

Profile Name	Circuit-ID		Remote-ID		Delete
	Enable	Field	Enable	Field	
default1	Yes	slot-port, vlan	No	-	<input type="checkbox"/>
default2	Yes	slot-port, vlan, hostname	No	-	<input type="checkbox"/>
default3	Yes	slot-port, vlan	Yes	mac	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 164 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Option 82 Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile for identification purposes. You can use up to 32 ASCII characters. Spaces are allowed.
Circuit-ID	Use this section to configure the Circuit ID sub-option to include information that is specific to the relay agent (the Switch).
Enable	Select this option to have the Switch add the Circuit ID sub-option to client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
slot-port	Select this option to have the Switch add the number of port that the DHCP client is connected to.
vlan	Select this option to have the Switch add the ID of VLAN which the port belongs to.
hostname	This is the system name you configure in the Basic Setting > General Setup screen. Select this option for the Switch to add the system name to the client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
string	Enter a string of up to 64 ASCII characters that the Switch adds into the client DHCP requests. Spaces are allowed.
Remote-ID	Use this section to configure the Remote ID sub-option to include information that identifies the relay agent (the Switch).
Enable	Select this option to have the Switch append the Remote ID sub-option to the option 82 field of DHCP requests.
mac	Select this option to have the Switch add its MAC address to the client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
string	Enter a string of up to 64 ASCII characters for the remote ID information in this field. Spaces are allowed.
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to their last saved values.
Profile Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the profile. Click the name to change the settings.
Circuit-ID	
Enable	This field displays whether the Circuit ID sub-option is added to client DHCP requests.
Field	This field displays the information that is included in the Circuit ID sub-option.
Remote-ID	
Enable	This field displays whether the Remote ID sub-option is added to client DHCP requests.
Field	This field displays the information that is included in the Remote ID sub-option.
Delete	Check the entries that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the selected check boxes in the Delete column.

41.4.3 Configuring DHCPv4 Global Relay

Configure global DHCP relay in the **DHCP Relay** screen. Click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4** in the navigation panel and click the **Global** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 218 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Global

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 165 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Global

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable DHCP relay.
Remote DHCP Server 1 .. 3	Enter the IP address of a DHCP server in dotted decimal notation.
Option 82 Profile	Select a pre-defined DHCPv4 option 82 profile that the Switch applies to all ports. The Switch adds the Circuit ID sub-option and/or Remote ID sub-option specified in the profile to DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

41.4.4 DHCPv4 Global Relay Port Configure

Use this screen to apply a different DHCP option 82 profile to certain ports on the Switch. To open this screen, click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Global > Port**.

Figure 219 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Global > Port

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

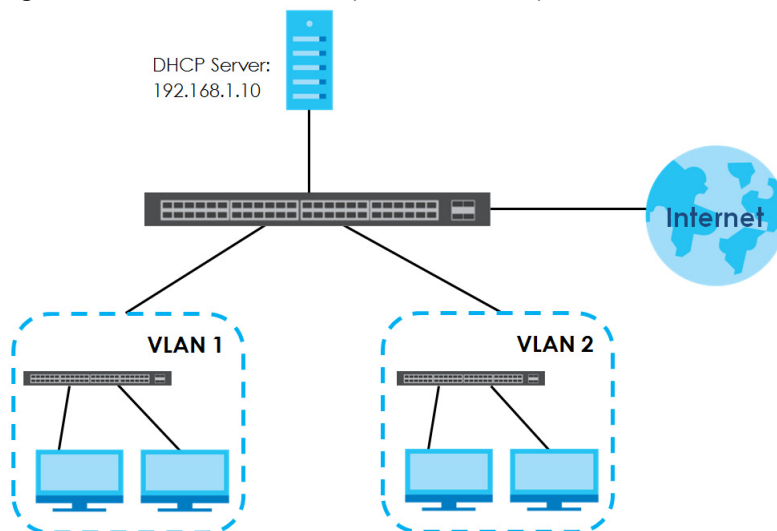
Table 166 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Global > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	Enter the number of port(s) to which you want to apply the specified DHCP option 82 profile. You can enter multiple ports separated by (no space) comma (,) or hyphen (-). For example, enter "3-5" for ports 3, 4, and 5. Enter "3,5,7" for ports 3, 5, and 7.
Option 82 Profile	Select a pre-defined DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to the specified port(s). The Switch adds the Circuit ID sub-option and/or Remote ID sub-option specified in the profile to DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server. The profile you select here has priority over the one you select in the DHCP > DHCPv4 > Global screen.
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values above based on the last selected entry or, if not applicable, to clear the fields above.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each entry. Click an index number to change the settings.
Port	This field displays the port(s) to which the Switch applies the settings.
Profile Name	This field displays the DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to the port(s).
Delete	Select the entries that you want to remove in the Delete column, then click the Delete button to remove the selected entries from the table.
Cancel	Click this to clear the check boxes in the Delete column.

41.4.5 Global DHCPv4 Relay Configuration Example

The follow figure shows a network example where the Switch is used to relay DHCP requests for the **VLAN1** and **VLAN2** domains. There is only one DHCP server that services the DHCP clients in both domains.

Figure 220 Global DHCP Relay Network Example



Configure the **DHCP Relay** screen as shown. Make sure you select a DHCP option 82 profile (**default1** in this example) to set the Switch to send additional information (such as the VLAN ID) together with the DHCP requests to the DHCP server. This allows the DHCP server to assign the appropriate IP address according to the VLAN ID.

Figure 221 DHCP Relay Configuration Example

DHCP Relay		Port	Status
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Remote DHCP Server 1	192.168.1.100		
Remote DHCP Server 2	0.0.0.0		
Remote DHCP Server 3	0.0.0.0		
Option 82 Profile	default1		

EXAMPLE

41.4.6 Configuring DHCPv4 VLAN Settings

Use this screen to configure your DHCP settings based on the VLAN domain of the DHCP clients. Click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4** in the navigation panel, then click the **VLAN** link in the **DHCP Status** screen that displays.

Note: You must set up a management IP address for each VLAN that you want to configure DHCP settings for on the Switch. See [Section 8.5 on page 89](#) for information on how to set up management IP addresses for VLANs.

Figure 222 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN

VLAN Setting		Port	Status
VID			
Remote DHCP Server 1	0.0.0.0		
Remote DHCP Server 2	0.0.0.0		
Remote DHCP Server 3	0.0.0.0		
Option 82 Profile			

VID	Type	DHCP Status	Delete
<input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>			

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 167 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN to which these DHCP settings apply.
Remote DHCP Server 1 .. 3	Enter the IP address of a DHCP server in dotted decimal notation.
Option 82 Profile	Select a pre-defined DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to all ports in this VLAN. The Switch adds the Circuit ID sub-option and/or Remote ID sub-option specified in the profile to DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click this to clear the fields above.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group to which this DHCP settings apply.
Type	This field displays the DHCP mode (Relay).
DHCP Status	For DHCP relay configuration, this field displays the first remote DHCP server IP address.
Delete	Select the configuration entries you want to remove in the Delete column and click the Delete button to remove them.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

41.4.7 DHCPv4 VLAN Port Configure

Use this screen to apply a different DHCP option 82 profile to certain ports in a VLAN. To open this screen, click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN > Port**.

Figure 223 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN > Port

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 168 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN you want to configure here.
Port	Enter the number of port(s) to which you want to apply the specified DHCP option 82 profile. You can enter multiple ports separated by (no space) comma (,) or hyphen (-). For example, enter "3-5" for ports 3, 4, and 5. Enter "3,5,7" for ports 3, 5, and 7.

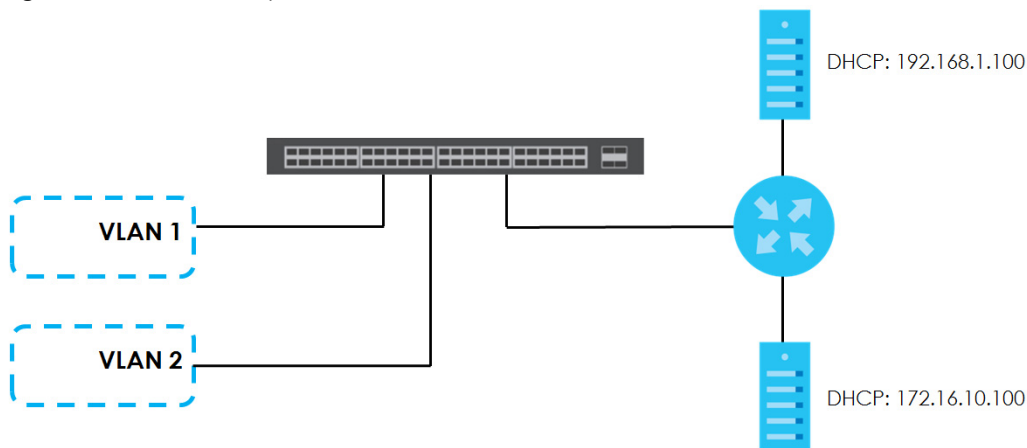
Table 168 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN > Port (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Option 82 Profile	Select a pre-defined DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to the specified port(s) in this VLAN. The Switch adds the Circuit ID sub-option and/or Remote ID sub-option specified in the profile to DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server. The profile you select here has priority over the one you select in the DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN screen.
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values above based on the last selected entry or, if not applicable, to clear the fields above.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each entry. Click an index number to change the settings.
VID	This field displays the VLAN to which the port(s) belongs.
Port	This field displays the port(s) to which the Switch applies the settings.
Profile Name	This field displays the DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to the specified port(s) in this VLAN.
Delete	Select the entries that you want to remove in the Delete column, then click the Delete button to remove the selected entries from the table.
Cancel	Click this to clear the check boxes in the Delete column.

41.4.8 Example: DHCPv4 Relay for Two VLANs

The following example displays two VLANs (VIDs 1 and 2) for a campus network. Two DHCP servers are installed to serve each VLAN. The system is set up to forward DHCP requests from the dormitory rooms (VLAN 1) to the DHCP server with an IP address of 192.168.1.100. Requests from the academic buildings (VLAN 2) are sent to the other DHCP server with an IP address of 172.16.10.100.

Figure 224 DHCP Relay for Two VLANs



For the example network, configure the **VLAN Setting** screen as shown.

Figure 225 DHCPv4 Relay for Two VLANs Configuration Example

VLAN Setting Port Status

VID	2
Remote DHCP Server 1	172.16.10.100
Remote DHCP Server 2	0.0.0.0
Remote DHCP Server 3	0.0.0.0
Option 82 Profile	▼

VID	Type	DHCP Status	Delete
1	Relay	192.168.1.100	<input type="checkbox"/>

41.5 DHCPv6 Relay

A DHCPv6 relay agent is on the same network as the DHCPv6 clients and helps forward messages between the DHCPv6 server and clients. When a client cannot use its link-local address and a well-known multicast address to locate a DHCPv6 server on its network, it then needs a DHCPv6 relay agent to send a message to a DHCPv6 server that is not attached to the same network.

The DHCPv6 relay agent can add the remote identification (remote-ID) option and the interface-ID option to the Relay-Forward DHCPv6 messages. The remote-ID option carries a user-defined string, such as the system name. The interface-ID option provides slot number, port information and the VLAN ID to the DHCPv6 server. The remote-ID option (if any) is stripped from the Relay-Reply messages before the relay agent sends the packets to the clients. The DHCPv6 server copies the interface-ID option from the Relay-Forward message into the Relay-Reply message and sends it to the relay agent. The interface-ID should not change even after the relay agent restarts.

Use this screen to configure DHCPv6 relay settings for a specific VLAN on the Switch. Click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 226 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6

The screenshot shows the DHCPv6 Relay configuration interface. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail: IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6. The main heading is 'DHCPv6 Relay'. To the right of the heading are three links: 'Options Profile', 'Port', and 'DHCP'. Below the heading is a form with three input fields: 'VID', 'Helper Address', and 'Options Profile'. The 'Options Profile' field is a dropdown menu. Below the form are three buttons: 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear'. Below the buttons is a 'Rule Usage: 0 / 64' indicator. At the bottom of the page, there is a table with four columns: 'VID', 'Helper Address', 'Profile Name', and 'Delete'. Below the table are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Cancel'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 169 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN you want to configure here.
Helper Address	Enter the remote DHCPv6 server address for the specified VLAN.
Options Profile	Select a pre-defined DHCPv6 options profile that the Switch applies to all ports in this VLAN. The Switch adds the interface-ID sub-option, remote-ID sub-option and/or subscriber-ID sub-option specified in the profile to DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to their last saved values.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID number. Click the VLAN ID to change the settings.
Helper Address	This field displays the IPv6 address of the remote DHCPv6 server for this VLAN.
Profile Name	This field displays the DHCPv6 options profile that the Switch applies to the port(s) in this VLAN.
Delete	Select the entries that you want to remove in the Delete column, then click the Delete button to remove the selected entries from the table.
Cancel	Click this to clear the check boxes in the Delete column.

41.5.1 DHCPv6 Options Profile

Use this screen to create DHCPv6 options profiles. Click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6** in the navigation panel and click the **Options Profile** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 227 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 > Options Profile

The screenshot shows the DHCPv6 Options Profile configuration interface. At the top, there is a title bar with 'DHCPv6 Options Profile' and a 'DHCPv6 Relay' link. Below the title is the 'Profile Setup' section, which includes a 'Name' input field and three rows for configuring options: Option18 (Interface-ID), Option37 (Remote-ID), and Option38 (Subscriber-ID). Each row has an 'Enable' checkbox and a text input field. Below these options are 'Add' and 'Cancel' buttons. The 'Rule Usage' section shows a table with columns for Profile Name, Option18, Option37, Option38, Referenced, and Delete. A single row is shown for the 'default' profile, which is currently disabled. Below the table are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 170 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 > Options Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile for identification purposes. You can use up to 32 ASCII characters. Spaces are allowed.
Option 18 Interface ID	Select Enable to have the Switch add the interface-ID option in the DHCPv6 requests from the clients before the Switch forwards them to a DHCPv6 server. Enter a string of up to 64 printable characters to be carried in the interface-ID option.
Option 37 Remote ID	Select Enable to have the Switch add the remote-ID option in the DHCPv6 requests from the clients before the Switch forwards them to a DHCPv6 server. Select mac to have the Switch add its MAC address to the client DHCPv6 requests that it relays to a DHCP server. Enter a string of up to 64 printable characters to be carried in the remote-ID option.
Option 38 Subscriber-ID	Select Enable to have the Switch add the Subscriber-ID option to client DHCPv6 requests that it relays to a DHCPv6 server. Select slot-port to have the Switch add the number of port that the DHCPv6 client is connected to. Enter a string of up to 64 printable characters to be carried in the subscriber-ID option.

Table 170 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 > Options Profile (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to their last saved values.
Profile Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the profile. Click the name to change the settings.
Option18	This field displays whether the Interface-ID option is added to client DHCP requests.
Option37	This field displays the information that is included in the Remote-ID option.
Option38	This field displays the information that is included in the Subscriber-ID option.
Referenced	This field displays whether this profile is in use by a feature, such as DHCPv6 relay.
Delete	Check the entries that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the selected check boxes in the Delete column.

41.5.2 DHCPv6 Port Configure

Use this screen to apply a different DHCPv6 options profile to certain ports in a VLAN. To open this screen, click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 > Port**.

Figure 228 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 > Port

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 171 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN you want to configure here.
Port	Enter the number of port(s) to which you want to apply the specified DHCPv6 options profile. You can enter multiple ports separated by (no space) comma (,) or hyphen (-). For example, enter "3-5" for ports 3, 4, and 5. Enter "3,5,7" for ports 3, 5, and 7.
Options Profile	Select a pre-defined DHCPv6 options profile that the Switch applies to the specified port(s) in this VLAN. The profile you select here has priority over the one you select in the DHCP > DHCPv6 screen.

Table 171 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 > Port (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values above based on the last selected entry or, if not applicable, to clear the fields above.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each entry. Click an index number to change the settings.
VID	This field displays the VLAN to which the port(s) belongs.
Port	This field displays the port(s) to which the Switch applies the settings.
Profile Name	This field displays the DHCPv6 options profile that the Switch applies to the specified port(s) in this VLAN.
Delete	Select the entries that you want to remove in the Delete column, then click the Delete button to remove the selected entries from the table.
Cancel	Click this to clear the check boxes in the Delete column.

CHAPTER 42

ARP Setup

42.1 ARP Overview

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an Internet Protocol address (IP address) to a physical machine address, also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address, on the local area network.

An IP (version 4) address is 32 bits long. In an Ethernet LAN, MAC addresses are 48 bits long. The ARP table maintains an association between each MAC address and its corresponding IP address.

42.1.1 How ARP Works

When an incoming packet destined for a host device on a local area network arrives at the Switch, the Switch looks in the ARP Table and if it finds the address, it sends it to the device.

If no entry is found for the IP address, ARP broadcasts the request to all the devices on the LAN. The Switch fills in its own MAC and IP address in the sender address fields, and puts the known IP address of the target in the target IP address field. In addition, the Switch puts all ones in the target MAC field (FF.FF.FF.FF.FF.FF is the Ethernet broadcast address). The replying device (which is either the IP address of the device being sought or the router that knows the way) replaces the broadcast address with the target's MAC address, swaps the sender and target pairs, and unicasts the answer directly back to the requesting machine. ARP updates the ARP Table for future reference and then sends the packet to the MAC address that replied.

42.1.1.1 ARP Learning Mode

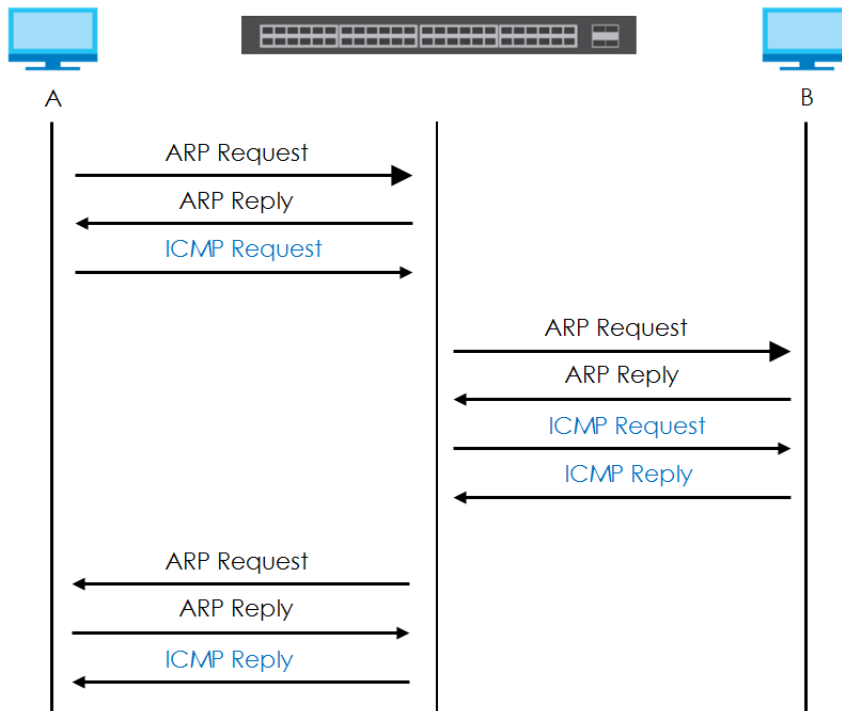
The Switch supports three ARP learning modes: ARP-Reply, Gratuitous-ARP, and ARP-Request.

ARP-Reply

The Switch in ARP-Reply learning mode updates the ARP table only with the ARP replies to the ARP requests sent by the Switch. This can help prevent ARP spoofing.

In the following example, the Switch does not have IP address and MAC address mapping information for hosts **A** and **B** in its ARP table, and host **A** wants to ping host **B**. Host **A** sends an ARP request to the Switch and then sends an ICMP request after getting the ARP reply from the Switch. The Switch finds no matched entry for host **B** in the ARP table and broadcasts the ARP request to all the devices on the LAN. When the Switch receives the ARP reply from host **B**, it updates its ARP table and also forwards host **A**'s ICMP request to host **B**. After the Switch gets the ICMP reply from host **B**, it sends out an ARP request to

get host **A**'s MAC address and updates the ARP table with host **A**'s ARP reply. The Switch then can forward host **B**'s ICMP reply to host **A**.



Gratuitous-ARP

A gratuitous ARP is an ARP request in which both the source and destination IP address fields are set to the IP address of the device that sends this request and the destination MAC address field is set to the broadcast address. There will be no reply to a gratuitous ARP request.

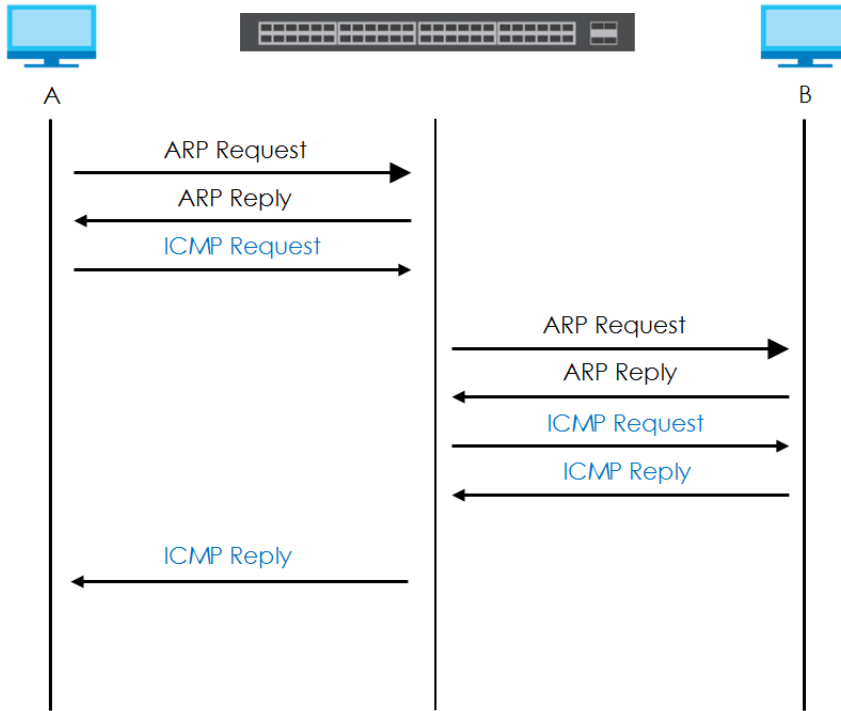
A device may send a gratuitous ARP packet to detect IP collisions. If a device restarts or its MAC address is changed, it can also use gratuitous ARP to inform other devices in the same network to update their ARP table with the new mapping information.

In Gratuitous-ARP learning mode, the Switch updates its ARP table with either an ARP reply or a gratuitous ARP request.

ARP-Request

When the Switch is in ARP-Request learning mode, it updates the ARP table with both ARP replies, gratuitous ARP requests and ARP requests.

Therefore in the following example, the Switch can learn host **A**'s MAC address from the ARP request sent by host **A**. The Switch then forwards host **B**'s ICMP reply to host **A** right after getting host **B**'s MAC address and ICMP reply.



42.2 ARP Setup

Click **IP Application > ARP Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. Click the link next to **ARP Learning** to open a screen where you can set the ARP learning mode for each port.

Figure 229 IP Application > ARP Setup



42.2.1 ARP Learning

Use this screen to configure each port's ARP learning mode. Click the link next to **ARP Learning** in the **IP Application > ARP Setup** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 230 IP Application > ARP Setup > ARP Learning

Port	ARP Learning Mode
*	ARP-Reply ▼
1	ARP-Reply ▼
2	ARP-Reply ▼
3	ARP-Reply ▼
4	ARP-Reply ▼
5	ARP-Reply ▼
6	ARP-Reply ▼
7	ARP-Reply ▼
8	ARP-Reply ▼
9	ARP-Reply ▼
10	ARP-Reply ▼
11	ARP-Reply ▼
12	ARP-Reply ▼
13	ARP-Reply ▼
14	ARP-Reply ▼
15	ARP-Reply ▼
16	ARP-Reply ▼

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 172 IP Application > ARP Setup > ARP Learning

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
ARP Learning Mode	Select the ARP learning mode the Switch uses on the port. Select ARP-Reply to have the Switch update the ARP table only with the ARP replies to the ARP requests sent by the Switch. Select Gratuitous-ARP to have the Switch update its ARP table with either an ARP reply or a gratuitous ARP request. Select ARP-Request to have the Switch update the ARP table with both ARP replies, gratuitous ARP requests and ARP requests.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 43

Maintenance

This chapter explains how to configure the screens that let you maintain the firmware and configuration files.

43.1 The Maintenance Screen

Use this screen to manage firmware and your configuration files. Click **Management > Maintenance** in the navigation panel to open the following screen.

Figure 231 Management > Maintenance



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 173 Management > Maintenance

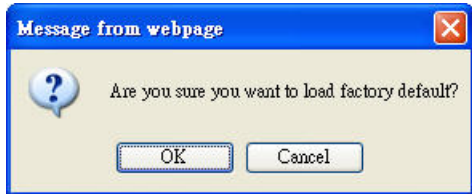
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Current	This field displays which configuration (Configuration 1 or Configuration 2) is currently operating on the Switch.
Firmware Upgrade	Click Click Here to go to the Firmware Upgrade screen.
Restore Configuration	Click Click Here to go to the Restore Configuration screen.
Backup Configuration	Click Click Here to go to the Backup Configuration screen.
Load Factory Default	Click Click Here to reset the configuration to the factory default settings.
Save Configuration	Click Config 1 to save the current configuration settings to Configuration 1 on the Switch. Click Config 2 to save the current configuration settings to Configuration 2 on the Switch.
Reboot System	Click Click Here to go to the Reboot System screen.
Tech-Support	Click Click Here to see the Tech-Support screen. You can set CPU and memory thresholds for log reports and download related log reports for issue analysis. Log reports include CPU history and utilization, crash and memory.

43.2 Load Factory Default

Follow the steps below to reset the Switch back to the factory defaults.

- 1 In the **Maintenance** screen, click the **Click Here** button next to **Load Factory Default** to clear all Switch configuration information you configured and return to the factory defaults.
- 2 Click **OK** to reset all Switch configurations to the factory defaults.

Figure 232 Load Factory Default: Start



- 3 In the web configurator, click the **Save** button in the top of the screen to make the changes take effect. If you want to access the Switch web configurator again, you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default Switch IP address (192.168.1.1).

43.3 Save Configuration

Click **Config 1** to save the current configuration settings permanently to **Configuration 1** on the Switch.

Click **Config 2** to save the current configuration settings to **Configuration 2** on the Switch.

Alternatively, click **Save** on the top right-hand corner in any screen to save the configuration changes to the current configuration.

Note: Clicking the **Apply** or **Add** button does NOT save the changes permanently. All unsaved changes are erased after you reboot the Switch.

43.4 Reboot System

Reboot System allows you to restart the Switch without physically turning the power off. It also allows you to load configuration one (**Config 1**) or configuration two (**Config 2**) when you reboot. You can restart the Switch immediately or set the Switch to restart at a specific time.

Click **Management > Maintenance > Reboot System** to view the screen as shown next.

Figure 233 Management > Maintenance > Reboot System

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 174 Management > Maintenance > Reboot System

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reboot Scheduled in	This displays the number of days, hours, minutes and/or seconds remaining before the Switch restarts. It also shows the date and time at which the Switch is scheduled to restart automatically.
Reboot Reason	This shows the reason for the restart.
Boot Image	This displays which firmware (1 or 2) should load when the Switch restarts and which firmware is currently in use on the Switch (1 or 2).
Configuration File	This displays which configuration file (1 or 2) should load when the Switch restarts and which configuration file is currently in use on the Switch (1 or 2).
Refresh	Click Refresh to update the time information in the Reboot Scheduled in field.
Cancel	Click Cancel to disable the scheduled restart and reset the screen to its default settings.
Reboot System	Select Immediately to have the Switch restart right after you click Apply . Select Delayed (in 24 days) to schedule a time for the restart to happen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select in to specify how many hours and minutes remain for the restart. • Select at to configure a specific time of the day, at which the Switch restarts. You can also specify a date within 24 days of today's date.
Reason	Enter a description for the restart.
Configuration File	Select the configuration files you want the Switch to use when it restarts.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power.

43.5 Firmware Upgrade

Use the following screen to upgrade your Switch to the latest firmware. The Switch supports dual firmware images, **Firmware 1** and **Firmware 2**. Use this screen to specify which image is updated when firmware is uploaded using the web configurator and to specify which image is loaded when the Switch starts up.

Make sure you have downloaded (and unzipped) the correct model firmware and version to your computer before uploading to the device.

Be sure to upload the correct model firmware as uploading the wrong model firmware may damage your device.

Click **Management > Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade** to view the screen as shown next.

Figure 234 Management > Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade

Name	Version	
MGS3520-28	Running	V4.10(AATN.1)b11 07/21/2015
	Firmware 1	V4.10(AATN.1)b11 07/21/2015
	Firmware 2	V4.10(AATN.0) 10/15/2014

Current Boot Image: Firmware 1

Config Boot Image: Firmware 1

Buttons: Apply, Cancel

To upgrade the internal switch firmware, browse the location of the binary (.BIN) file and click Upgrade button.

Firmware: 1 | File Path: Choose File | No file chosen

Upgrade

Type the path and file name of the firmware file you wish to upload to the Switch in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to locate it. Select the **Rebooting** check box if you want to reboot the Switch and apply the new firmware immediately. (Firmware upgrades are only applied after a reboot). Click **Upgrade** to load the new firmware.

After the firmware upgrade process is complete, see the **System Info** screen to verify your current firmware version number.

Table 175 Management > Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	This is the name of the Switch that you're configuring.
Version	<p>The Switch has two firmware sets, Firmware 1 and Firmware 2, residing in flash.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Running shows the version number (and model code) and MM/DD/YYYY creation date of the firmware currently in use on the Switch (Firmware 1 or Firmware 2). The firmware information is also displayed at System Information in Basic Settings. Firmware 1 shows its version number (and model code) and MM/DD/YYYY creation date. Firmware 2 shows its version number (and model code) and MM/DD/YYYY creation date.

Table 175 Management > Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Current Boot Image	This displays which firmware is currently in use on the Switch (Firmware 1 or Firmware 2).
Config Boot Image	Select which firmware (Firmware 1 or Firmware 2) should load, click Apply and reboot the Switch to see changes, you will also see changes in the Current Boot Image field above as well.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Firmware	Choose to upload the new firmware to (Firmware) 1 or (Firmware) 2 .
File Path	Type the path and file name of the firmware file you wish to upload to the Switch in the File Path text box or click Choose File to locate it.
Upgrade	Click Upgrade to load the new firmware. Firmware upgrades are only applied after a reboot. To reboot, go to Management > Maintenance > Reboot System and click Config 1 or Config 2 (Config 1 and Config 2 are the configuration files you want the Switch to use when it restarts).

43.6 Restore a Configuration File

Restore a previously saved configuration from your computer to the Switch using the **Restore Configuration** screen.

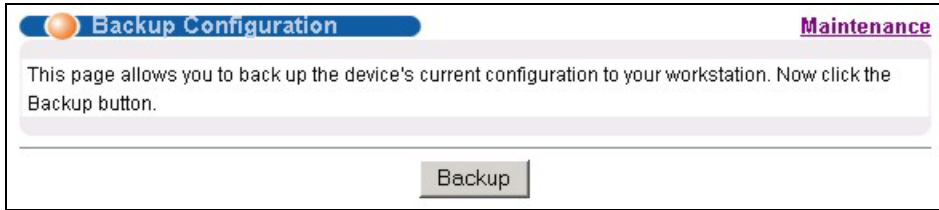
Figure 235 Management > Maintenance > Restore Configuration

Type the path and file name of the configuration file you wish to restore in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to locate it. After you have specified the file, click **Restore**. "config" is the name of the configuration file on the Switch, so your backup configuration file is automatically renamed when you restore using this screen.

43.7 Backup a Configuration File

Backing up your Switch configurations allows you to create various "snap shots" of your device from which you may restore at a later date.

Back up your current Switch configuration to a computer using the **Backup Configuration** screen.

Figure 236 Management > Maintenance > Backup Configuration

Follow the steps below to back up the current Switch configuration to your computer in this screen.

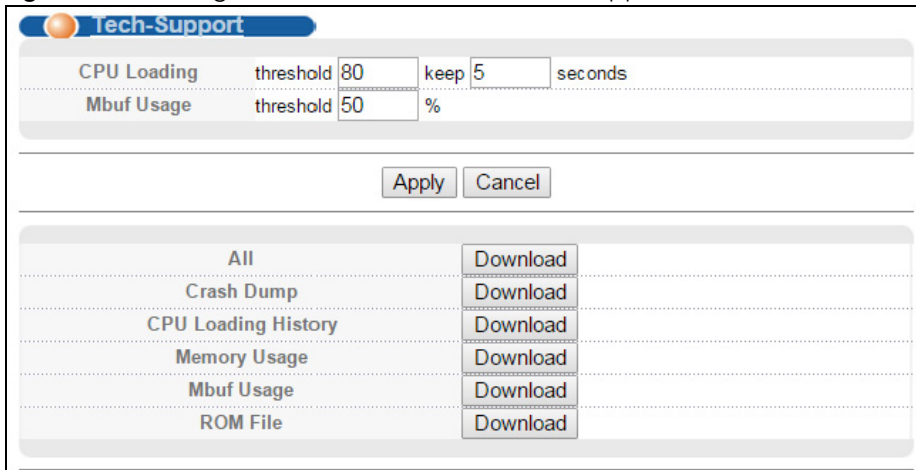
- 1 Click **Backup**.
- 2 Click **Save** to display the **Save As** screen.
- 3 If the current configuration file is open and/or downloaded to your computer automatically, you can click **File > Save As** to save the file to a specific place.

If a dialog box pops up asking whether you want to open or save the file, click **Save** or **Save File** to download it to the default downloads folder on your computer. If a **Save As** screen displays after you click **Save** or **Save File**, choose a location to save the file on your computer from the **Save in** drop-down list box and type a descriptive name for it in the **File name** list box. Click **Save** to save the configuration file to your computer.

43.8 Tech-Support

The Tech-Support feature is a log enhancement tool that logs useful information such as CPU utilization history, memory and Mbuf (Memory Buffer) log and crash reports for issue analysis by customer support should you have difficulty with your Switch. The Tech Support menu eases your effort in obtaining reports and it is also available in CLI command by typing "Show tech-support" command.

Click **Management > Maintenance > Tech-Support** to see the following screen.

Figure 237 Management > Maintenance > Tech-Support

You may need WordPad or similar software to see the log report correctly. The table below describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 176 Management > Maintenance > Tech-Support

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
CPU Loading	<p>Type a number ranging from 50 to 100 in the CPU threshold box, and type another number ranging from 5 to 60 in the seconds box then click Apply.</p> <p>For example, 80 for CPU threshold and 5 for seconds means a log will be created when CPU utilization reaches over 80% and lasts for 5 seconds.</p> <p>The log report holds 7 days of CPU log data and is stored in volatile memory (RAM). The data is lost if the Switch is turned off or in event of power outage. After 7 days, the logs wrap around and new ones and replace the earliest ones.</p> <p>The higher the CPU threshold number, the fewer logs will be created, and the less data technical support will have to analyze and vice versa.</p>
Mbuf Usage	<p>Type a number ranging from 50 to 100 in the Mbuf (Memory Buffer) threshold box. The Mbuf log report is stored in flash (permanent) memory.</p> <p>For example, Mbuf 50 means a log will be created when the Mbuf utilization is over 50%.</p> <p>The higher the Mbuf threshold number, the fewer logs will be created, and the less data technical support will have to analyze and vice versa.</p>
Apply	<p>Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.</p>
Cancel	<p>Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.</p>
All	<p>Click Download to see all the log report and system status. This log report is stored in flash memory. If the All log report is too large, you can download the log reports separately below.</p>
Crash Dump	<p>Click Download to see the crash log report. The log will include information of the last crash and is stored in flash memory.</p>
CPU Loading History	<p>Click Download to see the CPU loading history log report. The 7-days log is stored in RAM and you will need to save it, otherwise it will be lost when the Switch is shutdown or during power outage.</p>
Memory Usage	<p>Click Download to see the memory usage log report. This log report is stored in flash memory.</p>
Mbuf Usage	<p>Click Download to see the Mbuf usage log report. The log includes Mbuf over threshold information. This log report is stored in flash memory.</p>
ROM File	<p>Click Download to see the Read Only Memory (ROM) log report. This report is stored in flash memory.</p>

43.9 FTP Command Line

This section shows some examples of uploading to or downloading files from the Switch using FTP commands. First, understand the filename conventions.

43.9.1 Filename Conventions

The configuration file (also known as the romfile or ROM) contains the factory default settings in the screens such as password, Switch setup, IP Setup, and so on. Once you have customized the Switch's settings, they can be saved back to your computer under a filename of your choosing.

ZyNOS (Zyxel Network Operating System sometimes referred to as the "ras" file) is the system firmware and has a "bin" filename extension.

Table 177 Filename Conventions

FILE TYPE	INTERNAL NAME	EXTERNAL NAME	DESCRIPTION
Configuration File	config	*.cfg	This is the configuration filename on the Switch. Uploading the config file replaces the specified configuration file system, including your Switch configurations, system-related data (including the default password), the error log and the trace log.
Firmware	ras-0 ras-1	*.bin	This is the generic name for the ZyNOS firmware on the Switch. <code>ras-0</code> is image 1; <code>ras-1</code> is image 2.

You can store up to two images, or firmware files of the same device model, on the Switch. Only one image is used at a time.

- Run the `boot image <1|2>` command to specify which image is updated when firmware is loaded using the web configurator and to specify which image is loaded when the Switch starts up.
- You can also use FTP commands to upload firmware to any image.

The Switch supports dual firmware images, `ras-0` and `ras-1`. You can switch from one to the other by using the `boot image <index>` command, where `<index>` is 1 (`ras-0`) or 2 (`ras-1`). See the CLI Reference Guide for more information about using commands. The system does not reboot after it switches from one image to the other.

43.9.1.1 Example FTP Commands

```
ftp> put firmware.bin ras-0
```

This is a sample FTP session showing the transfer of the computer file "firmware.bin" to the Switch.

```
ftp> get config config.cfg
```

This is a sample FTP session saving the current configuration to a file called "config.cfg" on your computer.

If your (T)FTP client does not allow you to have a destination filename different than the source, you will need to rename them as the Switch only recognizes "config", "ras-0", and "ras-1". Be sure you keep unaltered copies of all files for later use.

Be sure to upload the correct model firmware as uploading the wrong model firmware may damage your device.

43.9.2 FTP Command Line Procedure

- 1 Launch the FTP client on your computer.
- 2 Enter `open`, followed by a space and the IP address of your Switch.
- 3 Press [ENTER] when prompted for a username.
- 4 Enter your password as requested (the default is "1234").

- 5 Enter `bin` to set transfer mode to binary.
- 6 Use `put` to transfer files from the computer to the Switch, for example, `put firmware.bin ras-0` transfers the firmware on your computer (`firmware.bin`) to the Switch and renames it to "ras-0". Similarly, `put config.cfg config` transfers the configuration file on your computer (`config.cfg`) to the Switch and renames it to "config". Likewise `get config config.cfg` transfers the configuration file on the Switch to your computer and renames it to "config.cfg". See [Table 177 on page 363](#) for more information on filename conventions.
- 7 Enter `quit` to exit the ftp prompt.

43.9.3 GUI-based FTP Clients

The following table describes some of the commands that you may see in GUI-based FTP clients.

General Commands for GUI-based FTP Clients

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Host Address	Enter the address of the host server.
Login Type	Anonymous. This is when a user I.D. and password is automatically supplied to the server for anonymous access. Anonymous logins will work only if your ISP or service administrator has enabled this option. Normal. The server requires a unique User ID and Password to login.
Transfer Type	Transfer files in either ASCII (plain text format) or in binary mode. Configuration and firmware files should be transferred in binary mode.
Initial Remote Directory	Specify the default remote directory (path).
Initial Local Directory	Specify the default local directory (path).

43.9.4 FTP Restrictions

FTP will not work when:

- FTP service is disabled in the **Service Access Control** screen.
- The IP address(es) in the **Remote Management** screen does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the Switch will disconnect the FTP session immediately.

CHAPTER 44

Access Control

This chapter describes how to control access to the Switch.

44.1 Access Control Overview

A console port and FTP are allowed one session each, Telnet and SSH share nine sessions, up to five Web sessions (five different user names and passwords) and/or limitless SNMP access control sessions are allowed.

Table 178 Access Control Overview

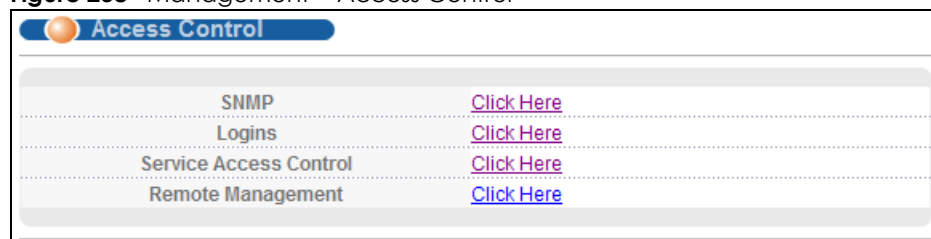
Console Port	SSH	Telnet	FTP	Web	SNMP
One session	Share up to nine sessions		One session	Up to five accounts	No limit

A console port access control session and Telnet access control session cannot coexist when multi-login is disabled. See the CLI Reference Guide for more information on disabling multi-login.

44.2 The Access Control Main Screen

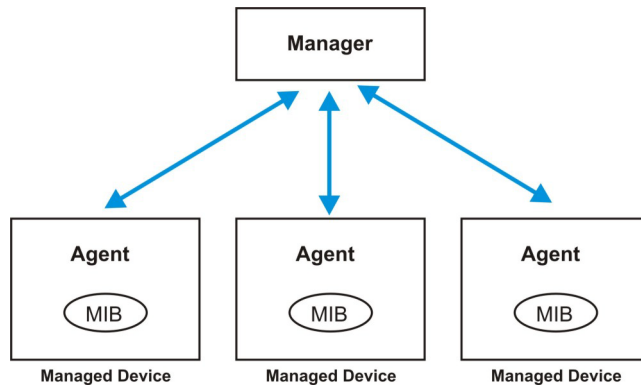
Click **Management > Access Control** in the navigation panel to display the main screen as shown.

Figure 238 Management > Access Control



44.3 About SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an application layer protocol used to manage and monitor TCP/IP-based devices. SNMP is used to exchange management information between the network management system (NMS) and a network element (NE). A manager station can manage and monitor the Switch through the network via SNMP version one (SNMPv1), SNMP version 2c or SNMP version 3. The next figure illustrates an SNMP management operation. SNMP is only available if TCP/IP is configured.

Figure 239 SNMP Management Model

An SNMP managed network consists of two main components: agents and a manager.

An agent is a management software module that resides in a managed switch (the Switch). An agent translates the local management information from the managed switch into a form compatible with SNMP. The manager is the console through which network administrators perform network management functions. It executes applications that control and monitor managed devices.

The managed devices contain object variables/managed objects that define each piece of information to be collected about a switch. Examples of variables include number of packets received, node port status and so on. A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of managed objects. SNMP allows a manager and agents to communicate for the purpose of accessing these objects.

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol based on the manager/agent model. The manager issues a request and the agent returns responses using the following protocol operations:

Table 179 SNMP Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Get	Allows the manager to retrieve an object variable from the agent.
GetNext	Allows the manager to retrieve the next object variable from a table or list within an agent. In SNMPv1, when a manager wants to retrieve all elements of a table from an agent, it initiates a Get operation, followed by a series of GetNext operations.
Set	Allows the manager to set values for object variables within an agent.
Trap	Used by the agent to inform the manager of some events.

44.3.1 SNMP v3 and Security

SNMP v3 enhances security for SNMP management. SNMP managers can be required to authenticate with agents before conducting SNMP management sessions.

Security can be further enhanced by encrypting the SNMP messages sent from the managers. Encryption protects the contents of the SNMP messages. When the contents of the SNMP messages are encrypted, only the intended recipients can read them.

44.3.2 Supported MIBs

MIBs let administrators collect statistics and monitor status and performance.

The Switch supports the following MIBs:

- SNMP MIB II (RFC 1213)
- RFC 1157 SNMP v1
- RFC 1493 Bridge MIBs
- RFC 1643 Ethernet MIBs
- RFC 1155 SMI
- RFC 2674 SNMPv2, SNMPv2c
- RFC 1757 RMON
- SNMPv2, SNMPv2c or later version, compliant with RFC 2011 SNMPv2 MIB for IP, RFC 2012 SNMPv2 MIB for TCP, RFC 2013 SNMPv2 MIB for UDP

44.3.3 SNMP Traps

The Switch sends traps to an SNMP manager when an event occurs. The following tables outline the SNMP traps by category.

An OID (Object ID) that begins with "1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15" is defined in private MIBs. Otherwise, it is a standard MIB OID.

Table 180 SNMP System Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
coldstart	coldStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1	This trap is sent when the Switch is turned on.
warmstart	warmStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.2	This trap is sent when the Switch restarts.
fanspeed	zyHwMonitorFanSpeedOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.26.2.1	This trap is sent when the fan speed goes above or below the normal operating range.
	zyHwMonitorFANSpeedOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.26.2.6	This trap is sent when the fan speed is recovered from the out of range to normal operating range.
poe (For PoE models only)	zyPoePowerPortOverload	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.59.4.1	This trap is sent when the port is turned off to supply power due to overloading.
	zyPoePowerPortShortCircuit	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.59.4.2	This trap is sent when the port is turned off to supply power due to short circuit.
	zyPoePowerPortOverSystemBudget	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.59.4.3	This trap is sent when the port is turned off to supply power because the requested power exceeds the total PoE power budget on the Switch.
	zyPoePowerPortOverloadRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.59.4.5	This trap is sent when the port is turned on to recover from an overloaded state.
	zyPoePowerPortShortCircuitRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.59.4.6	This trap is sent when the port is turned on to recover from a short circuit.
	zyPoePowerPortOverSystemBudgetRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.59.4.7	This trap is sent when the port is turned on to recover from an over system budget.

Table 180 SNMP System Traps (continued)

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
temperature	zyHwMonitorTemperatureOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.26.2.2	This trap is sent when the temperature goes above or below the normal operating range.
	zyHwMonitorTemperatureOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.26.2.7	This trap is sent when the temperature is recovered from the out of range to normal operating range.
voltage	zyHwMonitorPowerSupplyVoltageOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.26.2.3	This trap is sent when the voltage goes above or below the normal operating range.
	zyHwMonitorPowerSupplyVoltageOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.26.2.8	This trap is sent when the power supply voltage is recovered from the out of range to normal operating range.
reset	zySysMgmtUncontrolledSystemReset	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.49.2.1	This trap is sent when the Switch automatically resets.
	zySysMgmtControlledSystemReset	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.49.2.2	This trap is sent when the Switch resets by an administrator through a management interface.
	zySysMgmtBootImageInconsistence	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.49.2.3	This trap is sent when the index number of image which is loaded when the Switch starts up is different from what is specified via the CLI.
	RebootEvent	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.1.1.2	This trap is sent when the Switch reboots by an administrator through a management interface.
timesync	zyDateTimeTrapTimeServerNotReachable	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.82.3.1	This trap is sent when the Switch's date and time is not manually entered or the specified time server is not reachable.
	zyDateTimeTrapTimeServerNotReachableRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.82.3.2	This trap is sent when the Switch's real time clock is up to date.
intrusionlock	zyPortIntrusionLock	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.61.3.2	This trap is sent when intrusion lock occurs on a port.
loopguard	zyLoopGuardLoopDetect	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.45.2.1	This trap is sent when loopguard shuts down a port.
errdisable	zyErrdisableDetect	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.24.4.1	This trap is sent when an error is detected on a port, such as a loop occurs or the rate limit for specific control packets is exceeded.
	zyErrdisableRecovery	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.24.4.2	This trap is sent when the Switch ceases the action taken on a port, such as shutting down the port or discarding packets on the port, after the specified recovery interval.

Table 181 SNMP Interface Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
linkup	linkUp	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.
linkdown	linkDown	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.

Table 181 SNMP Interface Traps (continued)

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
autonegotiation	zyPortAutonegotiationFailed	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.61.3.1	This trap is sent when an Ethernet interface fails to auto-negotiate with the peer Ethernet interface.
	zyPortAutonegotiationFailedRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.61.3.3	This trap is sent when an Ethernet interface recovers from failing to auto-negotiate with the peer Ethernet interface.
lldp	lldpRemTablesChange	1.0.8802.1.1.2.0.0.1	The trap is sent when entries in the remote database have any updates. Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP), defined as IEEE 802.1ab, enables LAN devices that support LLDP to exchange their configured settings. This helps eliminate configuration mismatch issues.
transceiver-ddm	zyTransceiverDdmiTemperatureOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.1	This trap is sent when the transceiver temperature is above or below the normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiTxPowerOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.2	This trap is sent when the transmitted optical power is above or below the normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiRxPowerOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.3	This trap is sent when the received optical power is above or below the normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiVoltageOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.4	This trap is sent when the transceiver supply voltage is above or below the normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiTxBiasOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.5	This trap is sent when the transmitter laser bias current is above or below the normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiTemperatureOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.6	This trap is sent when the transceiver temperature is recovered from the out of normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiTxPowerOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.7	This trap is sent when the transmitted optical power is recovered from the out of normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiRxPowerOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.8	This trap is sent when the received optical power is recovered from the out of normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiVoltageOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.9	This trap is sent when the transceiver supply voltage is recovered from the out of normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiTxBiasOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.10	This trap is sent when the transmitter laser bias current is recovered from the out of normal operating range.

Table 182 AAA Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
authentication	authenticationFailure	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5	This trap is sent when authentication fails due to incorrect user name and/or password.
	zyAaaAuthenticationFailure	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.8.3.1	This trap is sent when authentication fails due to incorrect user name and/or password.
	zyRadiusServerAuthenticationServerNotReachable	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.71.2.1	This trap is sent when there is no response message from the RADIUS authentication server.
	zyTacacsServerAuthenticationServerUnreachable	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.83.2.1	This trap is sent when there is no response message from the TACACS+ authentication server.
	zyRadiusServerAuthenticationServerNotReachableRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.71.2.3	This trap is sent when there is a response message from the previously unreachable RADIUS authentication server.
	zyTacacsServerAuthenticationServerUnreachableRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.83.2.3	This trap is sent when there is a response message from the previously unreachable TACACS+ authentication server.
authorization	zyAaaAuthorizationFailure	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.8.3.2	This trap is sent when management connection authorization failed.
accounting	zyRadiusServerAccountingServerNotReachable	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.71.2.2	This trap is sent when there is no response message from the RADIUS accounting server.
	zyTacacsServerAccountingServerUnreachable	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.83.2.2	This trap is sent when there is no response message from the TACACS+ accounting server.
	zyRadiusServerAccountingServerNotReachableRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.71.2.4	This trap is sent when there is a response message from the previously unreachable RADIUS accounting server.
	zyTacacsServerAccountingServerUnreachableRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.83.2.4	This trap is sent when there is a response message from the previously unreachable TACACS+ accounting server.

Table 183 SNMP IP Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
ping	pingProbeFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.1	This trap is sent when a single ping probe fails.
	pingTestFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.2	This trap is sent when a ping test (consisting of a series of ping probes) fails.
	pingTestCompleted	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.3	This trap is sent when a ping test is completed.
traceroute	traceRouteTestFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.81.0.2	This trap is sent when a traceroute test fails.
	traceRouteTestCompleted	1.3.6.1.2.1.81.0.3	This trap is sent when a traceroute test is completed.

Table 184 SNMP Switch Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
stp	STPNewRoot	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.1	This trap is sent when the STP root switch changes.
	zyMrstpNewRoot	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.5 2.3.1	This trap is sent when the MRSTP root switch changes.
	zyMstpNewRoot	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.5 3.3.1	This trap is sent when the MSTP root switch changes.
	STPTopologyChange	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.2	This trap is sent when the STP topology changes.
	zyMrstpTopologyChange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.5 2.3.2	This trap is sent when the MRSTP topology changes.
	zyMstpTopologyChange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.5 3.3.2	This trap is sent when the MSTP root switch changes.
mactable	zyMacForwardingTableFull	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.4 8.2.1	This trap is sent when more than 99% of the MAC table is used.
	zyMacForwardingTableFullRecoverd	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.4 8.2.2	This trap is sent when the MAC address switching table has become normal from full.
rmon	RmonRisingAlarm	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.0.1	This trap is sent when a variable goes over the RMON "rising" threshold.
	RmonFallingAlarm	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.0.2	This trap is sent when the variable falls below the RMON "falling" threshold.
cfm	dot1agCfmFaultAlarm	1.3.111.2.802.1.1.8.0.1	The trap is sent when the Switch detects a connectivity fault.

44.3.4 Configuring SNMP

Click **Management > Access Control > SNMP** to view the screen as shown. Use this screen to configure your SNMP settings.

Figure 240 Management > Access Control > SNMP

SNMP [Access Control](#) [Trap Group](#) [User](#)

General Setting

Version	v2c
Get Community	public
Set Community	public
Trap Community	public

Trap Destination

Version	IP	Port	Username
v2c	0.0.0.0	162	
v2c	0.0.0.0	162	
v2c	0.0.0.0	162	
v2c	0.0.0.0	162	

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 185 Management > Access Control > SNMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General Setting	Use this section to specify the SNMP version and community (password) values.
Version	Select the SNMP version for the Switch. The SNMP version on the Switch must match the version on the SNMP manager. Choose SNMP version 2c (v2c), SNMP version 3 (v3) or both (v3v2c). Note: SNMP version 2c is backwards compatible with SNMP version 1.
Get Community	Enter the Get Community string, which is the password for the incoming Get- and GetNext-requests from the management station. The Get Community string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower. Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.
Set Community	Enter the Set Community , which is the password for incoming Set- requests from the management station. The Set Community string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower. Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.
Trap Community	Enter the Trap Community string, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager. The Trap Community string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower. Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.
Trap Destination	Use this section to configure where to send SNMP traps from the Switch.
Version	Specify the version of the SNMP trap messages.
IP	Enter the IP addresses of up to four managers to send your SNMP traps to.

Table 185 Management > Access Control > SNMP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	Enter the port number upon which the manager listens for SNMP traps.
Username	Enter the username to be sent to the SNMP manager along with the SNMP v3 trap. Note: This username must match an existing account on the Switch (configured in the Management > Access Control > SNMP > User screen).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

44.3.5 Configuring SNMP Trap Group

Click **Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group** to view the screen as shown. Use the **Trap Group** screen to specify the types of SNMP traps that should be sent to each SNMP manager.

Figure 241 Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 186 Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Trap Destination IP	Select one of your configured trap destination IP addresses. These are the IP addresses of the SNMP managers. You must first configure a trap destination IP address in the SNMP Setting screen. Use the rest of the screen to select which traps the Switch sends to that SNMP manager.
Type	Select the categories of SNMP traps that the Switch is to send to the SNMP manager.
Options	Select the individual SNMP traps that the Switch is to send to the SNMP station. See Section 44.3.3 on page 367 for individual trap descriptions. The traps are grouped by category. Selecting a category automatically selects all of the category's traps. Clear the check boxes for individual traps that you do not want the Switch to send to the SNMP station. Clearing a category's check box automatically clears all of the category's trap check boxes (the Switch only sends traps from selected categories).

Table 186 Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

44.3.6 Enabling/Disabling Sending of SNMP Traps on a Port

From the **SNMP > Trap Group** screen, click **Port** to view the screen as shown. Use this screen to set whether a trap received on the port(s) would be sent to the SNMP manager.

Figure 242 Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group > Port

Port	Active
*	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
9	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 187 Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Option	Select the trap type you want to configure here.
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some of the settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable the sending of SNMP traps on this port. The Switch sends the related traps received on this port to the SNMP manager. Clear this check box to disable the sending of SNMP traps on this port.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

44.3.7 Configuring SNMP User

From the **SNMP** screen, click **User** to view the screen as shown. Use the **User** screen to create SNMP users for authentication with managers using SNMP v3 and associate them to SNMP groups. An SNMP user is an SNMP manager.

Figure 243 Management > Access Control > SNMP > User

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 188 Management > Access Control > SNMP > User

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
User Information	Note: Use the username and password of the login accounts you specify in this screen to create accounts on the SNMP v3 manager.
Username	Specify the username of a login account on the Switch.
Security Level	Select whether you want to implement authentication and/or encryption for SNMP communication from this user. Choose: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> noauth -to use the username as the password string to send to the SNMP manager. This is equivalent to the Get, Set and Trap Community in SNMP v2c. This is the lowest security level. auth - to implement an authentication algorithm for SNMP messages sent by this user. priv - to implement authentication and encryption for SNMP messages sent by this user. This is the highest security level. Note: The settings on the SNMP manager must be set at the same security level or higher than the security level settings on the Switch.
Authentication	Select an authentication algorithm. MD5 (Message Digest 5) and SHA (Secure Hash Algorithm) are hash algorithms used to authenticate SNMP data. SHA authentication is generally considered stronger than MD5, but is slower.
Password	Enter the password of up to 32 ASCII characters for SNMP user authentication. Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.

Table 188 Management > Access Control > SNMP > User (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Privacy	Specify the encryption method for SNMP communication from this user. You can choose one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> DES - Data Encryption Standard is a widely used (but breakable) method of data encryption. It applies a 56-bit key to each 64-bit block of data. AES - Advanced Encryption Standard is another method for data encryption that also uses a secret key. AES applies a 128-bit key to 128-bit blocks of data.
Password	Enter the password of up to 32 ASCII characters for encrypting SNMP packets. Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.
Group	SNMP v3 adopts the concept of View-based Access Control Model (VACM) group. SNMP managers in one group are assigned common access rights to MIBs. Specify in which SNMP group this user is. admin - Members of this group can perform all types of system configuration, including the management of administrator accounts. readwrite - Members of this group have read and write rights, meaning that the user can create and edit the MIBs on the Switch, except the user account and AAA configuration. readonly - Members of this group have read rights only, meaning the user can collect information from the Switch.
Add	Click Add to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is a read-only number identifying a login account on the Switch. Click on an index number to view more details and edit an existing account.
Username	This field displays the username of a login account on the Switch.
Security Level	This field displays whether you want to implement authentication and/or encryption for SNMP communication with this user.
Authentication	This field displays the authentication algorithm used for SNMP communication with this user.
Privacy	This field displays the encryption method used for SNMP communication with this user.
Group	This field displays the SNMP group to which this user belongs.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

44.4 Setting Up Login Accounts

Up to five people (one administrator and four non-administrators) may access the Switch via web configurator at any one time.

- An administrator is someone who can both view and configure Switch changes. The username for the Administrator is always **admin**. The default administrator password is **1234**.

Note: It is highly recommended that you change the default administrator password (**1234**).

- A non-administrator (username is something other than **admin**) is someone who can view but not configure Switch settings.

Click **Management > Access Control > Logins** to view the screen as shown next.

Figure 244 Management > Access Control > Logins

The screenshot shows the 'Logins' configuration page. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'Logins' and 'Access Control'. Below that, there's a section for the 'Administrator' with three input fields: 'Old Password', 'New Password', and 'Retype to confirm'. A red warning message states: 'Please record your new password whenever you change it. The system will lock you out if you have forgotten your password.' Below this is a table titled 'Edit Logins' with the following structure:

Login	User Name	Password	Retype to confirm	Privilege
1				
2				
3				
4				

At the bottom of the page, there are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 189 Management > Access Control > Logins

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Administrator	This is the default administrator account with the "admin" user name. You cannot change the default administrator user name. Only the administrator has read/write access.
Old Password	Type the existing system password (1234 is the default password when shipped).
New Password	Enter your new system password.
Retype to confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation
Edit Logins	You may configure passwords for up to four users. These users have read-only access. You can give users higher privileges via the CLI. For more information on assigning privileges see the Ethernet Switch CLI Reference Guide.
User Name	Set a user name (up to 32 ASCII characters long).
Password	Enter your new system password.
Retype to confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation

Table 189 Management > Access Control > Logins (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Privilege	<p>Type the privilege level for this user. At the time of writing, users may have a privilege level of 0, 3, 13, or 14 representing different configuration rights as shown below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 - Display basic system information. • 3 - Display configuration or status. • 13 - Configure features except for login accounts, SNMP user accounts, the authentication method sequence and authorization settings, multiple logins, administrator and enable passwords, and configuration information display. • 14 - Configure login accounts, SNMP user accounts, the authentication method sequence and authorization settings, multiple logins, and administrator and enable passwords, and display configuration information. <p>Users can run command lines if the session's privilege level is greater than or equal to the command's privilege level. The session privilege initially comes from the privilege of the login account. For example, if the user has a privilege of 5, he/she can run commands that requires privilege level of 5 or less but not more.</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

44.5 SSH Overview

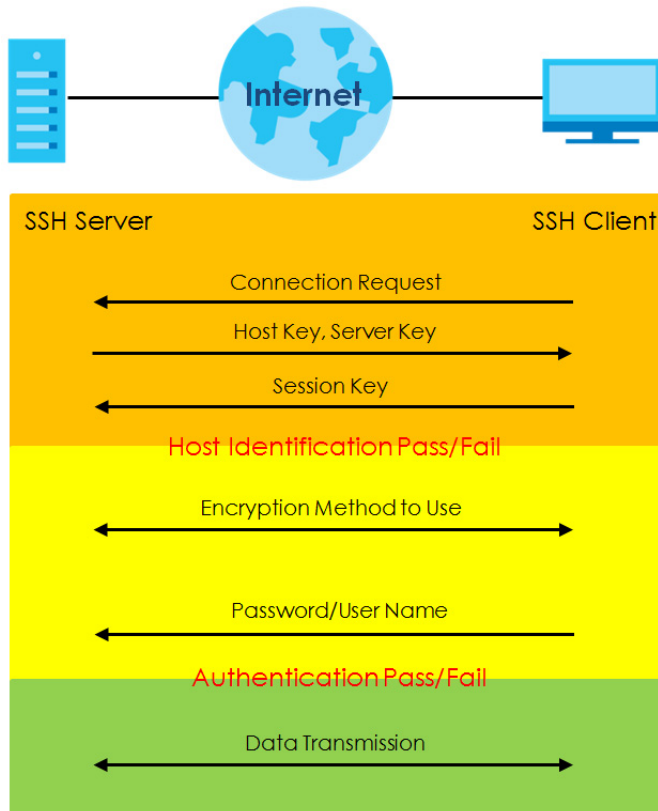
Unlike Telnet or FTP, which transmit data in clear text, SSH (Secure Shell) is a secure communication protocol that combines authentication and data encryption to provide secure encrypted communication between two hosts over an unsecured network.

Figure 245 SSH Communication Example



44.6 How SSH works

The following table summarizes how a secure connection is established between two remote hosts.

Figure 246 How SSH Works**1** Host Identification

The SSH client sends a connection request to the SSH server. The server identifies itself with a host key. The client encrypts a randomly generated session key with the host key and server key and sends the result back to the server.

The client automatically saves any new server public keys. In subsequent connections, the server public key is checked against the saved version on the client computer.

2 Encryption Method

Once the identification is verified, both the client and server must agree on the type of encryption method to use.

3 Authentication and Data Transmission

After the identification is verified and data encryption activated, a secure tunnel is established between the client and the server. The client then sends its authentication information (user name and password) to the server to log in to the server.

44.7 SSH Implementation on the Switch

Your Switch supports SSH version 2 using RSA authentication and three encryption methods (DES, 3DES and Blowfish). The SSH server is implemented on the Switch for remote management and file transfer on port 22. Only one SSH connection is allowed at a time.

44.7.1 Requirements for Using SSH

You must install an SSH client program on a client computer (Windows or Linux operating system) that is used to connect to the Switch over SSH.

44.8 Introduction to HTTPS

HTTPS (HyperText Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer, or HTTP over SSL) is a web protocol that encrypts and decrypts web pages. Secure Socket Layer (SSL) is an application-level protocol that enables secure transactions of data by ensuring confidentiality (an unauthorized party cannot read the transferred data), authentication (one party can identify the other party) and data integrity (you know if data has been changed).

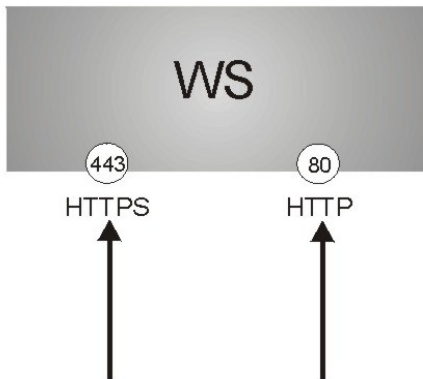
It relies upon certificates, public keys, and private keys.

HTTPS on the Switch is used so that you may securely access the Switch using the web configurator. The SSL protocol specifies that the SSL server (the Switch) must always authenticate itself to the SSL client (the computer which requests the HTTPS connection with the Switch), whereas the SSL client only should authenticate itself when the SSL server requires it to do so. Authenticating client certificates is optional and if selected means the SSL-client must send the Switch a certificate. You must apply for a certificate for the browser from a CA that is a trusted CA on the Switch.

Please refer to the following figure.

- 1 HTTPS connection requests from an SSL-aware web browser go to port 443 (by default) on the Switch's WS (web server).
- 2 HTTP connection requests from a web browser go to port 80 (by default) on the Switch's WS (web server).

Figure 247 HTTPS Implementation



Note: If you disable **HTTP** in the **Service Access Control** screen, then the Switch blocks all HTTP connection attempts.

44.9 HTTPS Example

If you haven't changed the default HTTPS port on the Switch, then in your browser enter "https://Switch IP Address/" as the web site address where "Switch IP Address" is the IP address or domain name of the Switch you wish to access.

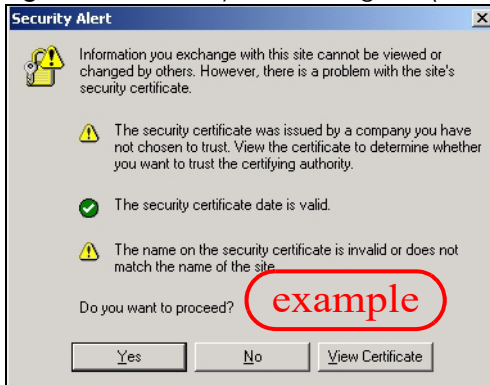
44.9.1 Internet Explorer Warning Messages

44.9.1.1 Internet Explorer 6

When you attempt to access the Switch HTTPS server, a Windows dialog box pops up asking if you trust the server certificate.

You see the following **Security Alert** screen in Internet Explorer. Select **Yes** to proceed to the web configurator login screen; if you select **No**, then web configurator access is blocked.

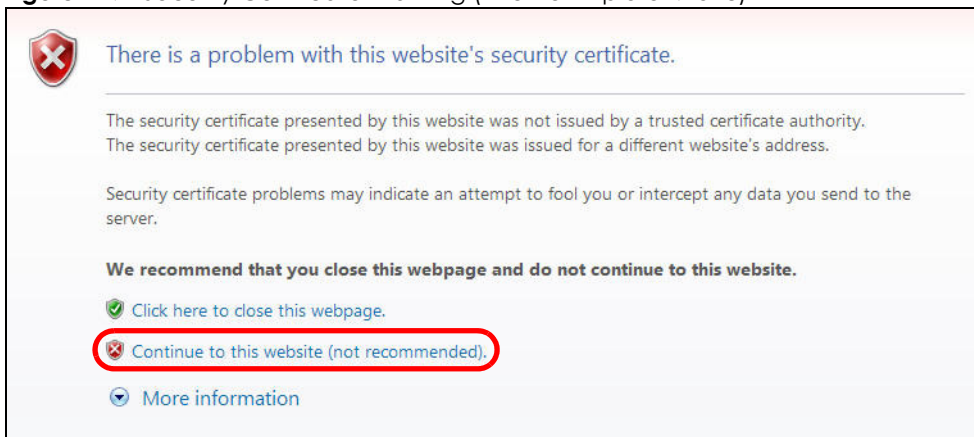
Figure 248 Security Alert Dialog Box (Internet Explorer 6)



44.9.1.2 Internet Explorer 7 or 8

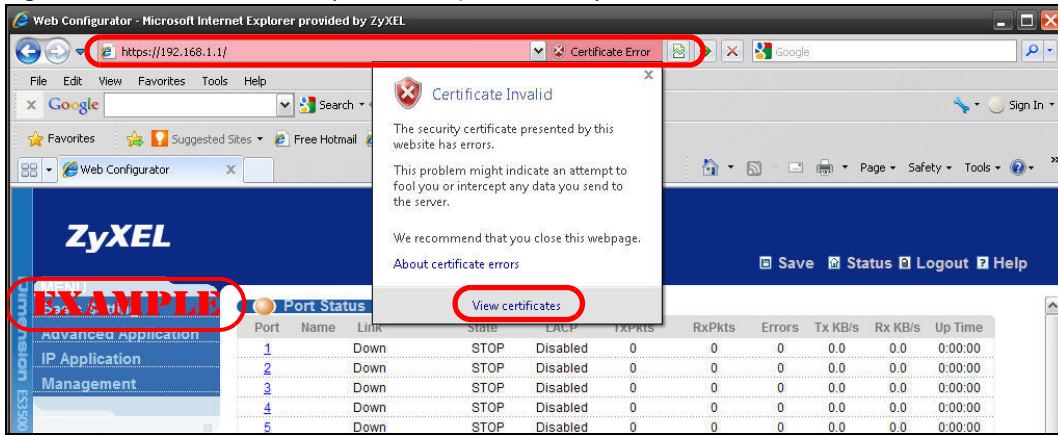
When you attempt to access the Switch HTTPS server, a screen with the message "There is a problem with this website's security certificate." may display. If that is the case, click **Continue to this website (not recommended)** to proceed to the web configurator login screen.

Figure 249 Security Certificate Warning (Internet Explorer 7 or 8)



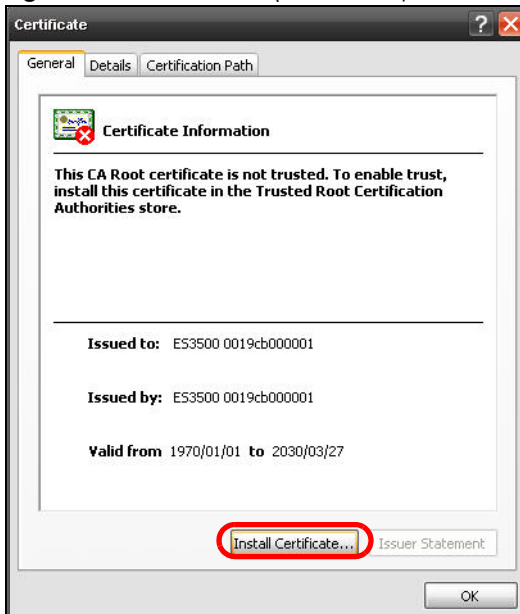
After you log in, you will see the red address bar with the message **Certificate Error**. Click on **Certificate Error** next to the address bar and click **View certificates**.

Figure 250 Certificate Error (Internet Explorer 7 or 8)



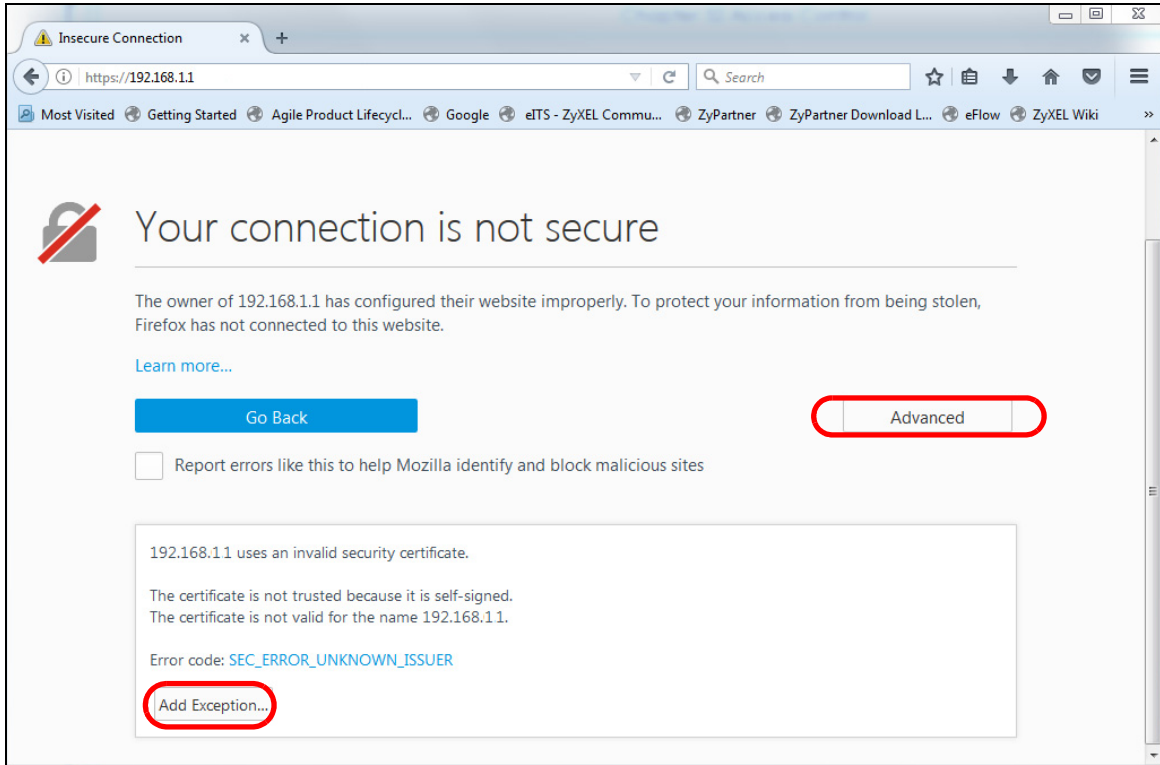
Click **Install Certificate...** and follow the on-screen instructions to install the certificate in your browser.

Figure 251 Certificate (Internet Explorer 7 or 8)

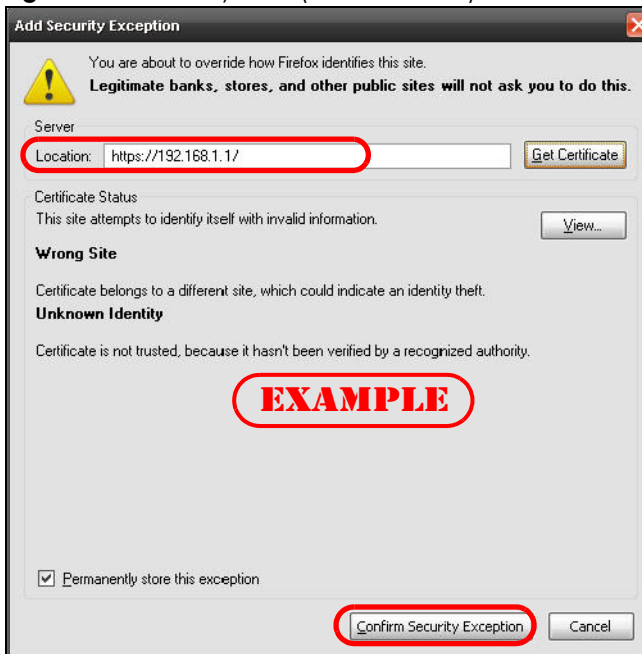


44.9.2 Mozilla Firefox Warning Messages

When you attempt to access the Switch HTTPS server, a **This Connection is Untrusted** screen may display. If that is the case, click **I Understand the Risks** and then the **Add Exception...** button.

Figure 252 Security Alert (Mozilla Firefox)

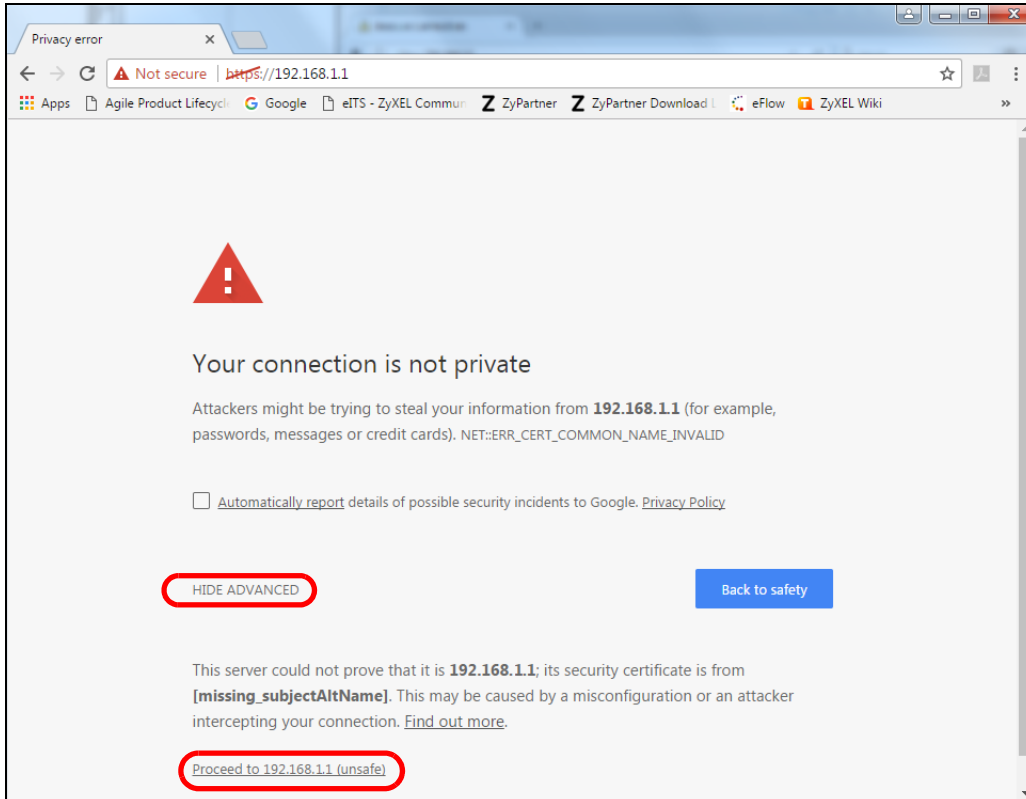
Confirm the HTTPS server URL matches. Click **Confirm Security Exception** to proceed to the web configurator login screen.

Figure 253 Security Alert (Mozilla Firefox)

44.9.3 Google Chrome Warning Messages

When you attempt to access the Switch HTTPS server, a **Your connection is not private** screen may display. If that is the case, click **Advanced** and then **Proceed to x.x.x.x (unsafe)** to proceed to the web configurator login screen.

Figure 254 Security Alert (Google Chrome 58.0.3029.110)



44.9.4 The Main Screen

After you accept the certificate and enter the login username and password, the Switch main screen appears. The lock displayed in the bottom right of the browser status bar or next to the website address denotes a secure connection.

Figure 255 Example: Lock Denoting a Secure Connection

The screenshot shows the ZyXEL Web Configurator interface. The browser's address bar shows a secure connection to https://192.168.1.1. The interface includes a navigation menu on the left with options like Basic Setting, Advanced Application, IP Application, and Management. The main content area displays the 'Port Status' table, which lists 14 ports. All ports are currently 'Down' with a 'STOP' state and 'Disabled' LACP. The table columns are Port, Name, Link, State, LACP, TxPkts, RxPkts, Errors, Tx KB/s, Rx KB/s, and Up Time. A red circle highlights the lock icon in the browser's address bar, and a red box with the word 'EXAMPLE' is overlaid on the left side of the interface.

Port	Name	Link	State	LACP	TxPkts	RxPkts	Errors	Tx KB/s	Rx KB/s	Up Time
1		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
2		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
3		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
4		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
5		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
6		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
7		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
8		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
9		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
10		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
11		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
12		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
13		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
14		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00

44.10 Service Port Access Control

Service Access Control allows you to decide what services you may use to access the Switch. You may also change the default service port and configure "trusted computer(s)" for each service in the **Remote Management** screen (discussed later). Click **Management > Access Control > Service Access Control** to view the screen as shown.

Figure 256 Management > Access Control > Service Access Control

The screenshot shows the 'Service Access Control' configuration screen. It features a table with columns for Services, Active, Service Port, and Timeout. The services listed are Console, Telnet, SSH, FTP, HTTP, HTTPS, ICMP, and SNMP. The 'Active' column has checkboxes, and the 'Timeout' column has input fields for minutes. The 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom.

Services	Active	Service Port	Timeout
Console			5 Minutes
Telnet	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	23	5 Minutes
SSH	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	22	
FTP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	21	5 Minutes
HTTP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	80	3 Minutes
HTTPS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	443	
ICMP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
SNMP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 190 Management > Access Control > Service Access Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Services	Services you may use to access the Switch are listed here.
Active	Select this option for the corresponding services that you want to allow to access the Switch.
Service Port	For Telnet, SSH, FTP, HTTP or HTTPS services, you may change the default service port by typing the new port number in the Server Port field. If you change the default port number then you will have to let people (who wish to use the service) know the new port number for that service.
Timeout	Type how many minutes (from 1 to 255) a management session can be left idle before the session times out. After it times out you have to log in with your password again. Very long idle timeouts may have security risks.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

44.11 Remote Management

Click **Management > Access Control > Remote Management** to view the screen as shown next.

You can specify a group of one or more "trusted computers" from which an administrator may use a service to manage the Switch. Click **Access Control** to return to the **Access Control** screen.

Figure 257 Management > Access Control > Remote Management

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Management' configuration page. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'Remote Management' and 'Access Control'. Below the navigation bar is the 'Secured Client Setup' section. It contains a table with 16 entries. The first entry is active and has all services checked. The other entries are inactive and have no services checked. At the bottom of the table, there are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Entry	Active	Start Address	End Address	Telnet	FTP	HTTP	ICMP	SNMP	SSH	HTTPS
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 191 Management > Access Control > Remote Management

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Entry	This is the client set index number. A "client set" is a group of one or more "trusted computers" from which an administrator may use a service to manage the Switch.
Active	Select this check box to activate this secured client set. Clear the check box if you wish to temporarily disable the set without deleting it.
Start Address	Configure the IP address range of trusted computers from which you can manage this Switch.
End Address	The Switch checks if the client IP address of a computer requesting a service or protocol matches the range set here. The Switch immediately disconnects the session if it does not match.
Telnet/FTP/ HTTP/ICMP/ SNMP/SSH/ HTTPS	Select services that may be used for managing the Switch from the specified trusted computers.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 45

Diagnostic

This chapter explains the **Diagnostic** screen. You can use this screen to help you identify problems

45.1 Diagnostic

Click **Management > Diagnostic** in the navigation panel to open this screen. Use this screen to check system logs, ping IP addresses or perform port tests.

Figure 258 Management > Diagnostic

The screenshot shows the 'Diagnostic' screen with a blue header and a large empty text area labeled '- Info -'. Below this are four sections: 'System Log' with 'Display' and 'Clear' buttons; 'Ping Test' with radio buttons for 'IPv4' and 'IPv6', dropdown menus, and a 'Ping' button; 'Ethernet Port Test' with a 'Port' input field and a 'Port Test' button; and 'Cable Diagnostics' with a 'Port' input field and a 'Diagnose' button.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 192 Management > Diagnostic

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Log	Click Display to display a log of events in the multi-line text box. Click Clear to empty the text box and reset the syslog entry.
Ping Test	

Table 192 Management > Diagnostic (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv4	Select this option if you want to ping an IPv4 address, and select vlan to specify the ID number of the VLAN to which the Switch is to send ping requests. Otherwise, select - to send ping requests to all VLANs on the Switch.
IPv6	Select this option if you want to ping an IPv6 address. You can also select vlan and specify the ID number of the VLAN to which the Switch is to send ping requests. Otherwise, select - to send ping requests to all VLANs on the Switch.
IP Address	Type the IP address of a device that you want to ping in order to test a connection. Click Ping to have the Switch ping the IP address.
Ethernet Port Test	Enter a port number and click Port Test to perform an internal loopback test.
Cable Diagnostics	Enter a port number and click Diagnose to perform a physical wire-pair test of the Ethernet connections on the specified port(s). The following fields display when you diagnose a port.
Port	This is the number of the physical Ethernet port on the Switch.
Channel	An Ethernet cable usually has four pairs of wires. A 10BASE-T or 100BASE-TX port only use and test two pairs, while a 1000BASE-T port requires all four pairs. This displays the descriptive name of the wire-pair in the cable.
Pair status	Ok: The physical connection between the wire-pair is okay. Open: There is no physical connection (an open circuit detected) between the wire-pair. Short: There is an short circuit detected between the wire-pair. Unknown: The Switch failed to run cable diagnostics on the cable connected this port. Unsupported: The port is a fiber port or it is not active.
Cable length	This displays the total length of the Ethernet cable that is connected to the port when the Pair status is Ok and the Switch chipset supports this feature. This shows N/A if the Pair status is Open or Short . Check the Distance to fault . This shows Unsupported if the Switch chipset does not support to show the cable length.
Distance to fault	This displays the distance between the port and the location where the cable is open or shorted. This shows N/A if the Pair status is Ok . This shows Unsupported if the Switch chipset does not support to show the distance.

CHAPTER 46

Syslog

This chapter explains the syslog screens.

46.1 Syslog Overview

The syslog protocol allows devices to send event notification messages across an IP network to syslog servers that collect the event messages. A syslog-enabled device can generate a syslog message and send it to a syslog server.

Syslog is defined in RFC 3164. The RFC defines the packet format, content and system log related information of syslog messages. Each syslog message has a facility and severity level. The syslog facility identifies a file in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for details. The following table describes the syslog severity levels.

Table 193 Syslog Severity Levels

CODE	SEVERITY
0	Emergency: The system is unusable.
1	Alert: Action must be taken immediately.
2	Critical: The system condition is critical.
3	Error: There is an error condition on the system.
4	Warning: There is a warning condition on the system.
5	Notice: There is a normal but significant condition on the system.
6	Informational: The syslog contains an informational message.
7	Debug: The message is intended for debug-level purposes.

46.2 Syslog Setup

Click **Management** > **Syslog** in the navigation panel to display this screen. The syslog feature sends logs to an external syslog server. Use this screen to configure the device's system logging settings.

Figure 259 Management > Syslog

Logging type	Active	Facility	Privilege
System	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0	-
Interface	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0	-
Switch	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0	-
AAA	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0	-
IP	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0	-
Commands	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0	2

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 194 Management > Syslog

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Syslog	Select Active to turn on syslog (system logging) and then configure the syslog setting
Logging Type	This column displays the names of the categories of logs that the device can generate.
Active	Select this option to set the device to generate logs for the corresponding category.
Facility	The log facility allows you to send logs to different files in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for more details.
Privilege	Select a command privilege level. The Switch will only generate logs for commands that have a privilege level greater than or equal to the specified privilege level.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

46.3 Syslog Server Setup

Click **Management > Syslog > Syslog Server Setup** to view the screen as shown next. Use this screen to configure a list of external syslog servers.

Figure 260 Management > Syslog > Syslog Server Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 195 Management > Syslog > Syslog Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to have the device send logs to this syslog server. Clear the check box if you want to create a syslog server entry but not have the device send logs to it (you can edit the entry later).
Server Address	Enter the IP address of the syslog server.
Log Level	Select the severity level(s) of the logs that you want the device to send to this syslog server. The lower the number, the more critical the logs are.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click Clear to return the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the index number of a syslog server entry. Click this number to edit the entry.
Active	This field displays Yes if the device is to send logs to the syslog server. No displays if the device is not to send logs to the syslog server.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address of the syslog server.
Log Level	This field displays the severity level of the logs that the device is to send to this syslog server.
Delete	Select an entry's Delete check box and click Delete to remove the entry.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 47

Cluster Management

This chapter introduces cluster management.

47.1 Cluster Management Status Overview

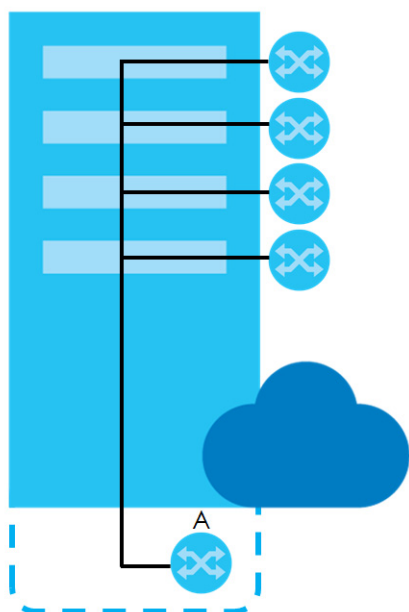
Cluster Management allows you to manage switches through one Switch, called the cluster manager. The switches must be directly connected and be in the same VLAN group so as to be able to communicate with one another.

Table 196 Zyxel Clustering Management Specifications

Maximum number of cluster members	24
Cluster Member Models	Must be compatible with Zyxel cluster management implementation.
Cluster Manager	The switch through which you manage the cluster member switches.
Cluster Members	The switches being managed by the cluster manager switch.

In the following example, switch **A** in the basement is the cluster manager and the other switches on the upper floors of the building are cluster members.

Figure 261 Clustering Application Example



47.2 Cluster Management Status

Click **Management > Cluster Management** in the navigation panel to display the following screen.

Note: A cluster can only have one manager.

Figure 262 Management > Cluster Management: Status

Status	Manager
	00:13:49:00:00:02

The Number Of Member = 1

Index	MacAddr	Name	Model	Status
1	00:a0:c5:01:23:46		GS-2024	Online

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 197 Management > Cluster Management: Status

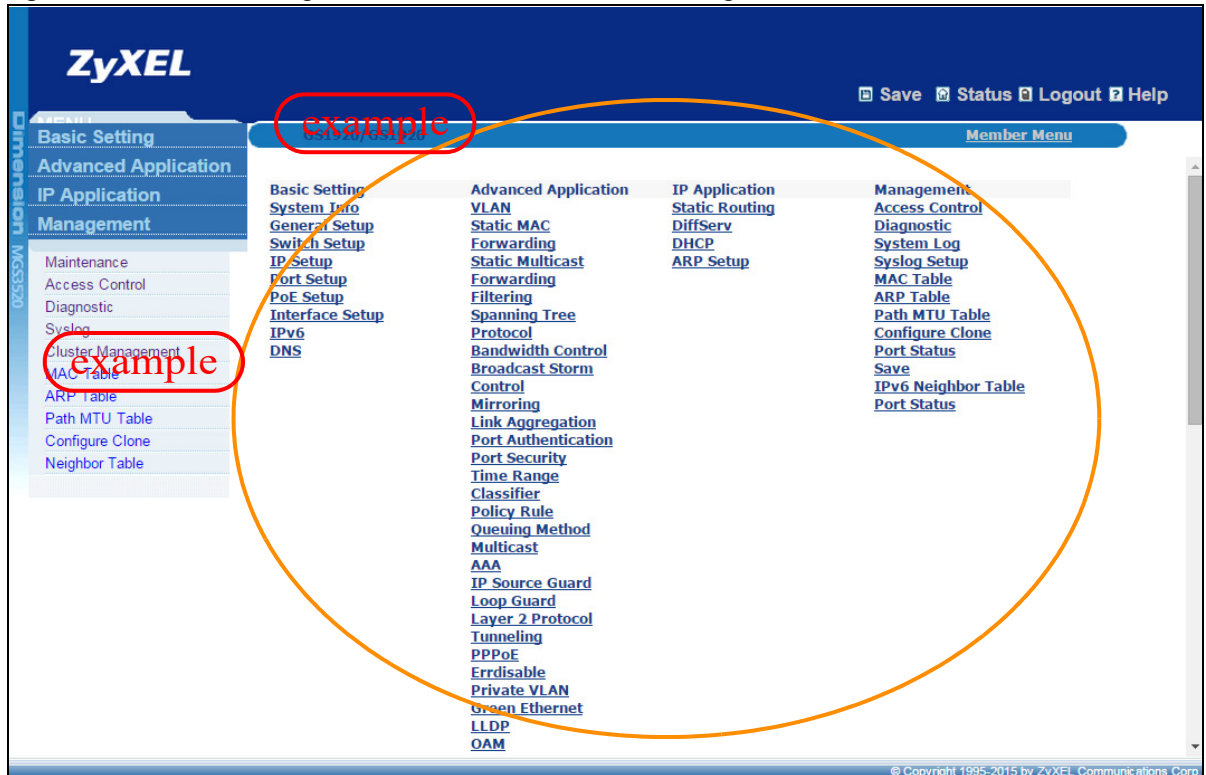
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This field displays the role of this Switch within the cluster. Manager Member (you see this if you access this screen in the cluster member switch directly and not via the cluster manager) None (neither a manager nor a member of a cluster)
Manager	This field displays the cluster manager switch's hardware MAC address.
The Number of Member	This field displays the number of switches that make up this cluster. The following fields describe the cluster member switches.
Index	You can manage cluster member switches via the cluster manager switch. Each number in the Index column is a hyperlink leading to the cluster member switch's web configurator (see Figure 263 on page 395).
MacAddr	This is the cluster member switch's hardware MAC address.
Name	This is the cluster member switch's System Name .
Model	This field displays the model name.
Status	This field displays: Online (the cluster member switch is accessible) Error (for example the cluster member switch password was changed or the switch was set as the manager and so left the member list, etc.) Offline (the switch is disconnected - Offline shows approximately 1.5 minutes after the link between cluster member and manager goes down)

47.2.1 Cluster Member Switch Management

Go to the **Clustering Management Status** screen of the cluster manager switch and then select an **Index** hyperlink from the list of members to go to that cluster member switch's web configurator home page.

This cluster member web configurator home page and the home page that you'd see if you accessed it directly are different.

Figure 263 Cluster Management: Cluster Member Web Configurator Screen



47.2.1.1 Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch

You can use FTP to upload firmware to a cluster member switch through the cluster manager switch as shown in the following example.

Figure 264 Example: Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch

```

C:\>ftp 192.168.1.1
Connected to 192.168.1.1.
220 Switch FTP version 1.0 ready at Thu Jan  1 00:58:46 1970
User (192.168.0.1:(none)): admin
331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp> ls
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for LIST
--w--w--w-  1 owner   group           3082906 Jul  01 12:00 ras-0
--w--w--w-  1 owner   group           3082906 Jul  01 12:00 ras-1
-rw-rw-rw-  1 owner   group           8388608 Jul  01 12:00 config
226 File sent OK
ftp: 297 bytes received in 0.00Seconds 297000.00Kbytes/sec.
ftp> bin
200 Type I OK
ftp> put 410AABB0C0.bin ras-0
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for STOR ras-0
226 File received OK
ftp: 262144 bytes sent in 0.63Seconds 415.44Kbytes/sec.
ftp>

```

The following table explains some of the FTP parameters.

Table 198 FTP Upload to Cluster Member Example

FTP PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
User	Enter "admin".
Password	The web configurator password default is 1234.
ls	Enter this command to list the name of cluster member switch's firmware and configuration file.
410AABB0C0.bin	This is the name of the firmware file you want to upload to the cluster member switch.
ras-0	This is the cluster member switch's firmware name as seen in the cluster manager switch.
config	This is the cluster member switch's configuration file name as seen in the cluster manager switch.

47.3 Clustering Management Configuration

Use this screen to configure clustering management. Click **Management > Cluster Management > Configuration** to display the next screen.

Figure 265 Management > Cluster Management > Configuration

Clustering Management Configuration [Status](#)

Clustering Manager:

Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Name	<input type="text" value="Master"/>
VID	<input type="text" value="1"/>

Clustering Candidate:

List	<input type="text" value="00:a0:c5:01:23:46/GS-2024/"/>
Password	<input type="text"/>

Index	MacAddr	Name	Model	Remove
<input type="button" value="Remove"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>				

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 199 Management > Cluster Management > Configuration



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clustering Manager	
Active	Select Active to have this Switch become the cluster manager switch. A cluster can only have one manager. Other (directly connected) switches that are set to be cluster managers will not be visible in the Clustering Candidates list. If a switch that was previously a cluster member is later set to become a cluster manager, then its Status is displayed as Error in the Cluster Management Status screen and a warning icon () appears in the member summary list below.
Name	Type a name to identify the Clustering Manager . You may use up to 32 printable characters (spaces are allowed).
VID	This is the VLAN ID and is only applicable if the Switch is set to 802.1Q VLAN. All switches must be directly connected and in the same VLAN group to belong to the same cluster. Switches that are not in the same VLAN group are not visible in the Clustering Candidates list. This field is ignored if the Clustering Manager is using Port-based VLAN.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.

Table 199 Management > Cluster Management > Configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clustering Candidate	The following fields relate to the switches that are potential cluster members.
List	A list of suitable candidates found by auto-discovery is shown here. The switches must be directly connected. Directly connected switches that are set to be cluster managers will not be visible in the Clustering Candidate list. Switches that are not in the same management VLAN group will not be visible in the Clustering Candidate list.
Password	Each cluster member's password is its web configurator password. Select a member in the Clustering Candidate list and then enter its web configurator password. If that switch administrator changes the web configurator password afterwards, then it cannot be managed from the Cluster Manager . Its Status is displayed as Error in the Cluster Management Status screen and a warning icon () appears in the member summary list below. If multiple devices have the same password then hold [SHIFT] and click those switches to select them. Then enter their common web configurator password.
Add	Click Add to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Refresh	Click Refresh to perform auto-discovery again to list potential cluster members.
The next summary table shows the information for the clustering members configured.	
Index	This is the index number of a cluster member switch.
MacAddr	This is the cluster member switch's hardware MAC address.
Name	This is the cluster member switch's System Name .
Model	This is the cluster member switch's model name.
Remove	Select this check box and then click the Remove button to remove a cluster member switch from the cluster.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 48

MAC Table

This chapter introduces the **MAC Table** screen.

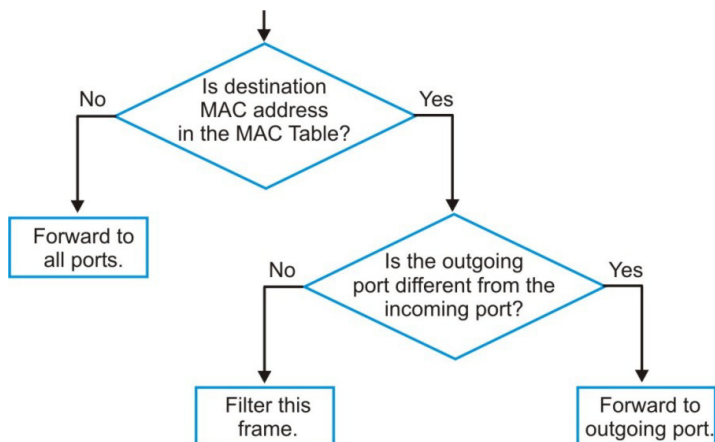
48.1 MAC Table Overview

The **MAC Table** screen (a MAC table is also known as a filtering database) shows how frames are forwarded or filtered across the Switch's ports. It shows what device MAC address, belonging to what VLAN group (if any) is forwarded to which port(s) and whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the Switch) or static (manually entered in the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen).

The Switch uses the MAC table to determine how to forward frames. See the following figure.

- 1 The Switch examines a received frame and learns the port on which this source MAC address came.
- 2 The Switch checks to see if the frame's destination MAC address matches a source MAC address already learned in the MAC table.
 - If the Switch has already learned the port for this MAC address, then it forwards the frame to that port.
 - If the Switch has not already learned the port for this MAC address, then the frame is flooded to all ports. Too much port flooding leads to network congestion.
 - If the Switch has already learned the port for this MAC address, but the destination port is the same as the port it came in on, then it filters the frame.

Figure 266 MAC Table Flowchart



48.2 Viewing the MAC Table

Click **Management > MAC Table** in the navigation panel to display the following screen. Use this screen to search specific MAC addresses. You can also directly add dynamic MAC address(es) into the static MAC forwarding table or MAC filtering table from the MAC table using this screen.

Figure 267 Management > MAC Table

Index	MAC Address	VID	Port	Type
1	00:00:aa:10:01:73	1	27	dynamic
2	00:00:e8:7c:14:80	1	28	dynamic
3	00:02:e3:56:16:9d	1	27	dynamic
4	00:02:e3:57:ea:1c	1	27	dynamic
5	00:04:80:9b:78:00	1	27	dynamic
6	00:0d:88:ca:af:b2	1	27	dynamic
7	00:0e:7b:e4:17:19	1	27	dynamic
8	00:0f:b0:80:e7:56	1	27	dynamic

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 200 Management > MAC Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Condition	<p>Select one of the buttons and click Search to only display the data which matches the criteria you specified.</p> <p>Select All to display any entry in the MAC table of the Switch.</p> <p>Select Static to display the MAC entries manually configured on the Switch.</p> <p>Select MAC and enter a MAC address in the field provided to display a specified MAC entry.</p> <p>Select VID and enter a VLAN ID in the field provided to display the MAC entries belonging to the specified VLAN.</p> <p>Select Port and enter a port number in the field provided to display the MAC addresses which are forwarded on the specified port.</p>
Sort by	<p>Define how the Switch displays and arranges the data in the summary table below.</p> <p>Select MAC to display and arrange the data according to MAC address.</p> <p>Select VID to display and arrange the data according to VLAN group.</p> <p>Select PORT to display and arrange the data according to port number.</p>

Table 200 Management > MAC Table (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Transfer Type	<p>Select Dynamic to MAC forwarding and click the Transfer button to change all dynamically learned MAC address entries in the summary table below into static entries. They also display in the Static MAC Forwarding screen.</p> <p>Select Dynamic to MAC filtering and click the Transfer button to change all dynamically learned MAC address entries in the summary table below into MAC filtering entries. These entries will then display only in the Filtering screen and the default filtering action is Discard source.</p>
Search	Click this to search data in the MAC table according to your input criteria.
Transfer	Click this to perform the MAC address transferring you selected in the Transfer Type field.
Cancel	Click Cancel to change the fields back to their last saved values.
Index	This is the incoming frame index number.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device from which this incoming frame came.
VID	This is the VLAN group to which this frame belongs.
Port	This is the port where the above MAC address is forwarded.
Type	This shows whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the Switch) or static (manually entered in the Static MAC Forwarding screen).

CHAPTER 49

ARP Table

This chapter introduces ARP Table.

49.1 ARP Table Overview

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an Internet Protocol address (IP address) to a physical machine address, also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address, on the local area network.

An IP (version 4) address is 32 bits long. In an Ethernet LAN, MAC addresses are 48 bits long. The ARP Table maintains an association between each MAC address and its corresponding IP address.

49.1.1 How ARP Works

When an incoming packet destined for a host device on a local area network arrives at the Switch, the Switch's ARP program looks in the ARP Table and, if it finds the address, sends it to the device.

If no entry is found for the IP address, ARP broadcasts the request to all the devices on the LAN. The Switch fills in its own MAC and IP address in the sender address fields, and puts the known IP address of the target in the target IP address field. In addition, the Switch puts all ones in the target MAC field (FF.FF.FF.FF.FF.FF is the Ethernet broadcast address). The replying device (which is either the IP address of the device being sought or the router that knows the way) replaces the broadcast address with the target's MAC address, swaps the sender and target pairs, and unicasts the answer directly back to the requesting machine. ARP updates the ARP Table for future reference and then sends the packet to the MAC address that replied.

49.2 The ARP Table Screen

Click **Management > ARP Table** in the navigation panel to open the following screen. Use the ARP table to view IP-to-MAC address mapping(s) and remove specific dynamic ARP entries.

Figure 268 Management > ARP Table

Index	IP Address	MAC Address	VID	Port	Ags(s)	Type
1	10.214.80.33	dc:4a:3e:40:ec:67	1	28	90	dynamic

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 201 Management > ARP Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Condition	Specify how you want the Switch to remove ARP entries when you click Flush . Select All to remove all of the dynamic entries from the ARP table. Select IP Address and enter an IP address to remove the dynamic entries learned with the specified IP address. Select Port and enter a port number to remove the dynamic entries learned on the specified port.
Flush	Click Flush to remove the ARP entries according to the condition you specified.
Cancel	Click Cancel to return the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the ARP table entry number.
IP Address	This is the learned IP address of a device connected to a Switch port with the corresponding MAC address below.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device with the corresponding IP address above.
VID	This field displays the VLAN to which the device belongs.
Port	This field displays the port to which the device connects. CPU means this learned IP address is the Switch's management IP address.
Ags(s)	This field displays how long (in seconds) an entry can still remain in the ARP table before it ages out and needs to be relearned. This shows 0 for a static entry.
Type	This shows whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the Switch) or static (manually entered in the Static MAC Forwarding screen).

CHAPTER 50

Path MTU Table

50.1 Path MTU Overview

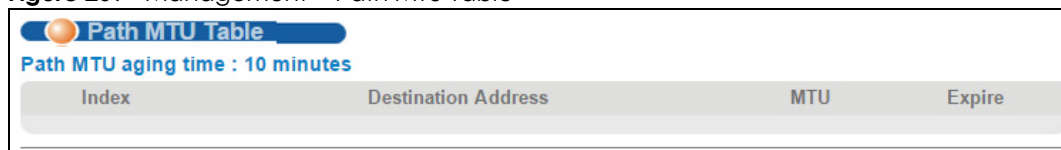
This chapter introduces the IPv6 Path MTU table.

The largest size (in bytes) of a packet that can be transferred over a data link is called the maximum transmission unit (MTU). The Switch uses Path MTU Discovery to discover Path MTU (PMTU), that is, the minimum link MTU of all the links in a path to the destination. If the Switch receives an ICMPv6 Packet Too Big error message after sending a packet, it fragments the next packet according to the suggested MTU in the error message.

50.2 Viewing the Path MTU Table

Use this screen to view IPv6 path MTU information on the Switch. Click **Management > Path MTU Table** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 269 Management > Path MTU Table



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 202 Management > Path MTU Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Path MTU aging time	This field displays how long an entry remains in the Path MTU table before it ages out and needs to be relearned.
Index	This field displays the index number of each entry in the table.
Destination Address	This field displays the destination IPv6 address of each path/entry.
MTU	This field displays the maximum transmission unit of the links in the path.
Expire	This field displays how long (in minutes) an entry can still remain in the Path MTU table before it ages out and needs to be relearned.

CHAPTER 51

Configure Clone

This chapter shows you how you can copy the settings of one port onto other ports.

51.1 Configure Clone

Cloning allows you to copy the basic and advanced settings from a source port to a destination port or ports. Click **Management** > **Configure Clone** to open the following screen.

Figure 270 Management > Configure Clone

Configure Clone

Source
Destination

Port Features

Basic Setting

Advanced Application

- Active
- Name
- Speed / Duplex
- Flow Control
- Intrusion Lock
- VLAN1q
- VLAN1q Member
- Bandwidth Control
- VLAN Stacking
- Port Security
- Broadcast Storm Control
- Mirroring
- Port Authentication
- Queuing Method
- IGMP Filtering
- Spanning Tree Protocol
- Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol
- Protocol-based VLAN
- Port-based VLAN
- MAC Authentication
- Two-rate three color marker
- Ethernet OAM
- Loop Guard
- ARP Inspection
- DHCP Snooping
- VLAN Mapping
- Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling
- LLDP
- sFlow
- PPPoE IA
- ARP Learning
- CPUProtection
- Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol
- SNMP Trap
- Green Ethernet
- BPDU Guard
- Link-Flap
- MVR Member

MGS3520/MGS3530-28 Series User's Guide

406

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 203 Management > Configure Clone

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Source/ Destination Port	<p>Enter the source port under the Source label. This port's attributes are copied.</p> <p>Enter the destination port or ports under the Destination label. These are the ports which are going to have the same attributes as the source port. You can enter individual ports separated by a comma or a range of ports by using a dash.</p> <p>Example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2, 4, 6 indicates that ports 2, 4 and 6 are the destination ports. • 2-6 indicates that ports 2 through 6 are the destination ports.
Basic Setting	Select which port settings (you configured in the Basic Setting menus) should be copied to the destination port(s).
Advanced Application	Select which port settings (you configured in the Advanced Application menus) should be copied to the destination ports.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 52

Neighbor Table

52.1 IPv6 Neighbor Table Overview

This chapter introduces the IPv6 neighbor table.

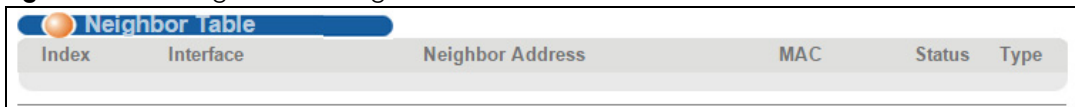
An IPv6 host is required to have a neighbor table. If there is an address to be resolved or verified, the Switch sends out a neighbor solicitation message. When the Switch receives a neighbor advertisement in response, it stores the neighbor's link-layer address in the neighbor table. You can also manually create a static IPv6 neighbor entry using the **Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Neighbor Setup** screen.

When the Switch needs to send a packet, it first consults other table to determine the next hop. Once the next hop IPv6 address is known, the Switch looks into the neighbor table to get the link-layer address and sends the packet when the neighbor is reachable. If the Switch cannot find an entry in the neighbor table or the state for the neighbor is not reachable, it starts the address resolution process. This helps reduce the number of IPv6 solicitation and advertisement messages.

52.2 Viewing the IPv6 Neighbor Table

Use this screen to view IPv6 neighbor information on the Switch. Click **Management > Neighbor Table** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 271 Management > Neighbor Table



Index	Interface	Neighbor Address	MAC	Status	Type
-------	-----------	------------------	-----	--------	------

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 204 Management > Neighbor Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of each entry in the table.
Interface	This field displays the ID number of the IPv6 interface on which the IPv6 address is created or through which the neighboring device can be reached.
Neighbor Address	This field displays the IPv6 address of the Switch or a neighboring device.
MAC	This field displays the MAC address of the IPv6 interface on which the IPv6 address is configured or the MAC address of the neighboring device.

Table 204 Management > Neighbor Table (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	<p>This field displays whether the neighbor IPv6 interface is reachable. In IPv6, "reachable" means an IPv6 packet can be correctly forwarded to a neighbor node (host or router) and the neighbor can successfully receive and handle the packet. The available options in this field are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • reachable (R): The interface of the neighboring device is reachable. (The Switch has received a response to the initial request.) • stale (S): The last reachable time has expired and the Switch is waiting for a response to another initial request. The field displays this also when the Switch receives an unrequested response from the neighbor's interface. • delay (D): The neighboring interface is no longer known to be reachable, and traffic has been sent to the neighbor recently. The Switch delays sending request packets for a short to give upper-layer protocols a chance to determine reachability. • probe (P): The Switch is sending request packets and waiting for the neighbor's response. • invalid (IV): The neighbor address is with an invalid IPv6 address. • unknown (?): The status of the neighboring interface can not be determined for some reason. • incomplete (I): Address resolution is in progress and the link-layer address of the neighbor has not yet been determined. The interface of the neighboring device did not give a complete response.
Type	<p>This field displays the type of an address mapping to a neighbor interface. The available options in this field are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • other (O): none of the following type. • local (L): A Switch interface is using the address. • dynamic (D): The IP address to MAC address can be successfully resolved using IPv6 Neighbor Discovery protocol. Is it similar as IPv4 ARP (Address Resolution protocol). • static (S): The interface address is statically configured.

CHAPTER 53

Troubleshooting

This chapter offers some suggestions to solve problems you might encounter. The potential problems are divided into the following categories.

- [Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs](#)
- [Switch Access and Login](#)
- [Switch Configuration](#)

53.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs

The Switch does not turn on. None of the LEDs turn on.

- 1 Make sure the Switch is turned on (in DC models or if the DC power supply is connected in AC/DC models).
- 2 Make sure you are using the power adaptor or cord included with the Switch.
- 3 Make sure the power adaptor or cord is connected to the Switch and plugged in to an appropriate power source. Make sure the power source is turned on.
- 4 Turn the Switch off and on (in DC models or if the DC power supply is connected in AC/DC models).
- 5 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the Switch (in AC models or if the AC power supply is connected in AC/DC models).
- 6 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

The **ALM** LED is on.

- 1 Turn the Switch off and on (in DC models or if the DC power supply is connected in AC/DC models).
- 2 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the Switch (in AC models or if the AC power supply is connected in AC/DC models).
- 3 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

One of the LEDs does not behave as expected.

- 1 Make sure you understand the normal behavior of the LED. See [Section 3.2 on page 38](#).
- 2 Check the hardware connections. See [Section 3.1 on page 29](#).
- 3 Inspect your cables for damage. Contact the vendor to replace any damaged cables.
- 4 Turn the Switch off and on (in DC models or if the DC power supply is connected in AC/DC models).
- 5 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the Switch (in AC models or if the AC power supply is connected in AC/DC models).
- 6 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

53.2 Switch Access and Login

I forgot the IP address for the Switch.

- 1 The default management IP address is **192.168.1.1**.
- 2 Use the console port to log in to the Switch.
- 3 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 4.6 on page 46](#).

I forgot the username and/or password.

- 1 The default username is **admin** and the default password is **1234**.
- 2 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 4.6 on page 46](#).

I cannot see or access the **Login** screen in the web configurator.

- 1 Make sure you are using the correct IP address.
 - The default management IP address is [192.168.1.1](#).
 - If you changed the IP address, use the new IP address.
 - If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, see the troubleshooting suggestions for [I forgot the IP address for the Switch](#).

- 2 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See [Section 3.2 on page 38](#).
- 3 Make sure your Internet browser does not block pop-up windows and has JavaScripts and Java enabled.
- 4 Make sure your computer is in the same subnet as the Switch. (If you know that there are routers between your computer and the Switch, skip this step.)
- 5 Reset the device to its factory defaults, and try to access the Switch with the default IP address. See [Section 4.6 on page 46](#).
- 6 If the problem continues, contact the vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

Advanced Suggestions

- Try to access the Switch using another service, such as Telnet. If you can access the Switch, check the remote management settings to find out why the Switch does not respond to HTTP.

I can see the **Login** screen, but I cannot log in to the Switch.

- 1 Make sure you have entered the user name and password correctly. The default user name is **admin**, and the default password is **1234**. These fields are case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 2 You may have exceeded the maximum number of concurrent Telnet sessions. Close other Telnet session(s) or try connecting again later.

Check that you have enabled logins for HTTP or Telnet. If you have configured a secured client IP address, your computer's IP address must match it. Refer to the chapter on access control for details.
- 3 Disconnect and re-connect the cord to the Switch.
- 4 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 4.6 on page 46](#).

Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device.
- JavaScripts (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

I cannot see some of **Advanced Application** submenus at the bottom of the navigation panel.

The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels. Adjust the value in your computer and then you should see the rest of **Advanced Application** submenus at the bottom of the navigation panel.

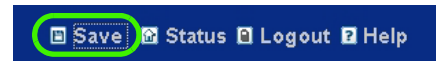
There is unauthorized access to my Switch via telnet, HTTP and SSH.

Click the **Display** button in the **System Log** field in the **Management > Diagnostic** screen to check for unauthorized access to your Switch. To avoid unauthorized access, configure the secured client setting in the **Management > Access Control > Remote Management** screen for telnet, HTTP and SSH (see [Section 44.1.1 on page 386](#)). Computers not belonging to the secured client set cannot get permission to access the Switch.

53.3 Switch Configuration

I lost my configuration settings after I restart the Switch.

Make sure you save your configuration into the Switch's nonvolatile memory each time you make changes. Click **Save** at the top right corner of the web configurator to save the configuration permanently. See also [Section 43.3 on page 357](#) for more information about how to save your configuration.



APPENDIX A

Common Services

The following table lists some commonly-used services and their associated protocols and port numbers. For a comprehensive list of port numbers, ICMP type/code numbers and services, visit the IANA (Internet Assigned Number Authority) web site.

- **Name:** This is a short, descriptive name for the service. You can use this one or create a different one, if you like.
- **Protocol:** This is the type of IP protocol used by the service. If this is **TCP/UDP**, then the service uses the same port number with TCP and UDP. If this is **User-Defined**, the **Port(s)** is the IP protocol number, not the port number.
- **Port(s):** This value depends on the **Protocol**. Please refer to RFC 1700 for further information about port numbers.
 - If the **Protocol** is **TCP**, **UDP**, or **TCP/UDP**, this is the IP port number.
 - If the **Protocol** is **USER**, this is the IP protocol number.
- **Description:** This is a brief explanation of the applications that use this service or the situations in which this service is used.

Table 205 Commonly Used Services

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
AH (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	51	The IPSEC AH (Authentication Header) tunneling protocol uses this service.
AIM/New-ICQ	TCP	5190	AOL's Internet Messenger service. It is also used as a listening port by ICQ.
AUTH	TCP	113	Authentication protocol used by some servers.
BGP	TCP	179	Border Gateway Protocol.
BOOTP_CLIENT	UDP	68	DHCP Client.
BOOTP_SERVER	UDP	67	DHCP Server.
CU-SEEME	TCP UDP	7648 24032	A popular videoconferencing solution from White Pines Software.
DNS	TCP/UDP	53	Domain Name Server, a service that matches web names (for example www.zyxel.com) to IP numbers.
ESP (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	50	The IPSEC ESP (Encapsulation Security Protocol) tunneling protocol uses this service.
FINGER	TCP	79	Finger is a UNIX or Internet related command that can be used to find out if a user is logged on.
FTP	TCP TCP	20 21	File Transfer Program, a program to enable fast transfer of files, including large files that may not be possible by e-mail.
H.323	TCP	1720	NetMeeting uses this protocol.
HTTP	TCP	80	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol - a client/server protocol for the world wide web.

Table 205 Commonly Used Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
HTTPS	TCP	443	HTTPS is a secured http session often used in e-commerce.
ICMP	User-Defined	1	Internet Control Message Protocol is often used for diagnostic or routing purposes.
ICQ	UDP	4000	This is a popular Internet chat program.
IGMP (MULTICAST)	User-Defined	2	Internet Group Multicast Protocol is used when sending packets to a specific group of hosts.
IKE	UDP	500	The Internet Key Exchange algorithm is used for key distribution and management.
IRC	TCP/UDP	6667	This is another popular Internet chat program.
MSN Messenger	TCP	1863	Microsoft Networks' messenger service uses this protocol.
NEW-ICQ	TCP	5190	An Internet chat program.
NEWS	TCP	144	A protocol for news groups.
NFS	UDP	2049	Network File System - NFS is a client/server distributed file service that provides transparent file sharing for network environments.
NNTP	TCP	119	Network News Transport Protocol is the delivery mechanism for the USENET newsgroup service.
PING	User-Defined	1	Packet Internet Groper is a protocol that sends out ICMP echo requests to test whether or not a remote host is reachable.
POP3	TCP	110	Post Office Protocol version 3 lets a client computer get e-mail from a POP3 server through a temporary connection (TCP/IP or other).
PPTP	TCP	1723	Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the control channel.
PPTP_TUNNEL (GRE)	User-Defined	47	PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol) enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the data channel.
RCMD	TCP	512	Remote Command Service.
REAL_AUDIO	TCP	7070	A streaming audio service that enables real time sound over the web.
REXEC	TCP	514	Remote Execution Daemon.
RLOGIN	TCP	513	Remote Login.
RTELNET	TCP	107	Remote Telnet.
RTSP	TCP/UDP	554	The Real Time Streaming (media control) Protocol (RTSP) is a remote control for multimedia on the Internet.
SFTP	TCP	115	Simple File Transfer Protocol.
SMTP	TCP	25	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol is the message-exchange standard for the Internet. SMTP enables you to move messages from one e-mail server to another.
SNMP	TCP/UDP	161	Simple Network Management Program.
SNMP-TRAPS	TCP/UDP	162	Traps for use with the SNMP (RFC:1215).

Table 205 Commonly Used Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
SQL-NET	TCP	1521	Structured Query Language is an interface to access data on many different types of database systems, including mainframes, midrange systems, UNIX systems and network servers.
SSH	TCP/UDP	22	Secure Shell Remote Login Program.
STRM WORKS	UDP	1558	Stream Works Protocol.
SYSLOG	UDP	514	Syslog allows you to send system logs to a UNIX server.
TACACS	UDP	49	Login Host Protocol used for (Terminal Access Controller Access Control System).
TELNET	TCP	23	Telnet is the login and terminal emulation protocol common on the Internet and in UNIX environments. It operates over TCP/IP networks. Its primary function is to allow users to log into remote host systems.
TFTP	UDP	69	Trivial File Transfer Protocol is an Internet file transfer protocol similar to FTP, but uses the UDP (User Datagram Protocol) rather than TCP (Transmission Control Protocol).
VDOLIVE	TCP	7000	Another videoconferencing solution.

APPENDIX B

IPv6

Overview

IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 6), is designed to enhance IP address size and features. The increase in IPv6 address size to 128 bits (from the 32-bit IPv4 address) allows up to 3.4×10^{38} IP addresses.

IPv6 Addressing

The 128-bit IPv6 address is written as eight 16-bit hexadecimal blocks separated by colons (:). This is an example IPv6 address `2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000`.

IPv6 addresses can be abbreviated in two ways:

- Leading zeros in a block can be omitted. So `2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000` can be written as `2001:db8:1a2b:15:0:0:1a2f:0`.
- Any number of consecutive blocks of zeros can be replaced by a double colon. A double colon can only appear once in an IPv6 address. So `2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f:0000:0000:0015` can be written as `2001:0db8::1a2f:0000:0000:0015`, `2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f::0015`, `2001:db8::1a2f:0:0:15` or `2001:db8:0:0:1a2f::15`.

Prefix and Prefix Length

Similar to an IPv4 subnet mask, IPv6 uses an address prefix to represent the network address. An IPv6 prefix length specifies how many most significant bits (start from the left) in the address compose the network address. The prefix length is written as “/x” where x is a number. For example,

`2001:db8:1a2b:15::1a2f:0/32`

means that the first 32 bits (`2001:db8`) is the subnet prefix.

Link-local Address

A link-local address uniquely identifies a device on the local network (the LAN). It is similar to a “private IP address” in IPv4. You can have the same link-local address on multiple interfaces on a device. A link-local unicast address has a predefined prefix of `fe80::/10`. The link-local unicast address format is as follows.

Table 206 Link-local Unicast Address Format

1111 1110 10	0	Interface ID
10 bits	54 bits	64 bits

Global Address

A global address uniquely identifies a device on the Internet. It is similar to a “public IP address” in IPv4. A global unicast address starts with a 2 or 3.

Unspecified Address

An unspecified address (0:0:0:0:0:0 or ::) is used as the source address when a device does not have its own address. It is similar to "0.0.0.0" in IPv4.

Loopback Address

A loopback address (0:0:0:0:0:1 or ::1) allows a host to send packets to itself. It is similar to "127.0.0.1" in IPv4.

Multicast Address

In IPv6, multicast addresses provide the same functionality as IPv4 broadcast addresses. Broadcasting is not supported in IPv6. A multicast address allows a host to send packets to all hosts in a multicast group.

Multicast scope allows you to determine the size of the multicast group. A multicast address has a predefined prefix of ff00::/8. The following table describes some of the predefined multicast addresses.

Table 207 Predefined Multicast Address

MULTICAST ADDRESS	DESCRIPTION
FF01:0:0:0:0:0:1	All hosts on a local node.
FF01:0:0:0:0:0:2	All routers on a local node.
FF02:0:0:0:0:0:1	All hosts on a local connected link.
FF02:0:0:0:0:0:2	All routers on a local connected link.
FF05:0:0:0:0:0:2	All routers on a local site.
FF05:0:0:0:0:0:1:3	All DHCP servers on a local site.

The following table describes the multicast addresses which are reserved and can not be assigned to a multicast group.

Table 208 Reserved Multicast Address

MULTICAST ADDRESS
FF00:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF01:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF02:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF03:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF04:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF05:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF06:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF07:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF08:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF09:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0A:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0B:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0C:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0D:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0E:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0F:0:0:0:0:0:0:0

Subnet Masking

Both an IPv6 address and IPv6 subnet mask compose of 128-bit binary digits, which are divided into eight 16-bit blocks and written in hexadecimal notation. Hexadecimal uses four bits for each character (1 ~ 10, A ~ F). Each block's 16 bits are then represented by four hexadecimal characters. For example, FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FC00:0000:0000:0000.

Interface ID

In IPv6, an interface ID is a 64-bit identifier. It identifies a physical interface (for example, an Ethernet port) or a virtual interface (for example, the management IP address for a VLAN). One interface should have a unique interface ID.

EUI-64

The EUI-64 (Extended Unique Identifier) defined by the IEEE (Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers) is an interface ID format designed to adapt with IPv6. It is derived from the 48-bit (6-byte) Ethernet MAC address as shown next. EUI-64 inserts the hex digits fffe between the third and fourth bytes of the MAC address and complements the seventh bit of the first byte of the MAC address. See the following example.

Table 209

MAC	00	:	13	:	49	:	12	:	34	:	56
------------	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----

Table 210

EUI-64	02	:	13	:	49	:	FF	:	FE	:	12	:	34	:	56
---------------	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----

Stateless Autoconfiguration

With stateless autoconfiguration in IPv6, addresses can be uniquely and automatically generated. Unlike DHCPv6 (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol version six) which is used in IPv6 stateful autoconfiguration, the owner and status of addresses don't need to be maintained by a DHCP server. Every IPv6 device is able to generate its own and unique IP address automatically when IPv6 is initiated on its interface. It combines the prefix and the interface ID (generated from its own Ethernet MAC address, see [Interface ID](#) and [EUI-64](#)) to form a complete IPv6 address.

When IPv6 is enabled on a device, its interface automatically generates a link-local address (beginning with fe80).

When the interface is connected to a network with a router and the Switch is set to automatically obtain an IPv6 network prefix from the router for the interface, it generates ³another address which combines its interface ID and global and subnet information advertised from the router. This is a routable global IP address.

DHCPv6

The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6, RFC 3315) is a server-client protocol that allows a DHCP server to assign and pass IPv6 network addresses, prefixes and other configuration information to DHCP clients. DHCPv6 servers and clients exchange DHCP messages using UDP.

3. In IPv6, all network interfaces can be associated with several addresses.

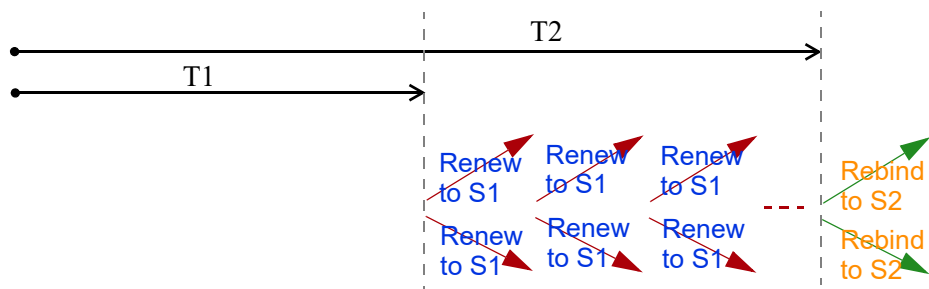
Each DHCP client and server has a unique DHCP Unique Identifier (DUID), which is used for identification when they are exchanging DHCPv6 messages. The DUID is generated from the MAC address, time, vendor assigned ID and/or the vendor's private enterprise number registered with the IANA. It should not change over time even after you reboot the device.

Identity Association

An Identity Association (IA) is a collection of addresses assigned to a DHCP client, through which the server and client can manage a set of related IP addresses. Each IA must be associated with exactly one interface. The DHCP client uses the IA assigned to an interface to obtain configuration from a DHCP server for that interface. Each IA consists of a unique IAID and associated IP information.

The IA type is the type of address in the IA. Each IA holds one type of address. IA_NA means an identity association for non-temporary addresses and IA_TA is an identity association for temporary addresses.

An IA_NA option contains the T1 and T2 fields, but an IA_TA option does not. The DHCPv6 server uses T1 and T2 to control the time at which the client contacts with the server to extend the lifetimes on any addresses in the IA_NA before the lifetimes expire. After T1, the client sends the server (**S1**) (from which the addresses in the IA_NA were obtained) a Renew message. If the time T2 is reached and the server does not respond, the client sends a Rebind message to any available server (**S2**). For an IA_TA, the client may send a Renew or Rebind message at the client's discretion.



DHCP Relay Agent

A DHCP relay agent is on the same network as the DHCP clients and helps forward messages between the DHCP server and clients. When a client cannot use its link-local address and a well-known multicast address to locate a DHCP server on its network, it then needs a DHCP relay agent to send a message to a DHCP server that is not attached to the same network.

The DHCP relay agent can add the remote identification (remote-ID) option and the interface-ID option to the Relay-Forward DHCPv6 messages. The remote-ID option carries a user-defined string, such as the system name. The interface-ID option provides slot number, port information and the VLAN ID to the DHCPv6 server. The remote-ID option (if any) is stripped from the Relay-Reply messages before the relay agent sends the packets to the clients. The DHCP server copies the interface-ID option from the Relay-Forward message into the Relay-Reply message and sends it to the relay agent. The interface-ID should not change even after the relay agent restarts.

Prefix Delegation

Prefix delegation enables an IPv6 router to use the IPv6 prefix (network address) received from the ISP (or a connected uplink router) for its LAN. The Switch uses the received IPv6 prefix (for example, 2001:db2::/48) to generate its LAN IP address. Through sending Router Advertisements (RAs) regularly by multicast, the Switch passes the IPv6 prefix information to its LAN hosts. The hosts then can use the prefix to generate their IPv6 addresses.

ICMPv6

Internet Control Message Protocol for IPv6 (ICMPv6 or ICMP for IPv6) is defined in RFC 4443. ICMPv6 has a preceding Next Header value of 58, which is different from the value used to identify ICMP for IPv4. ICMPv6 is an integral part of IPv6. IPv6 nodes use ICMPv6 to report errors encountered in packet processing and perform other diagnostic functions, such as "ping".

Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP)

The Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) is a protocol used to discover other IPv6 devices and track neighbor's reachability in a network. An IPv6 device uses the following ICMPv6 messages types:

- Neighbor solicitation: A request from a host to determine a neighbor's link-layer address (MAC address) and detect if the neighbor is still reachable. A neighbor being "reachable" means it responds to a neighbor solicitation message (from the host) with a neighbor advertisement message.
- Neighbor advertisement: A response from a node to announce its link-layer address.
- Router solicitation: A request from a host to locate a router that can act as the default router and forward packets.
- Router advertisement: A response to a router solicitation or a periodical multicast advertisement from a router to advertise its presence and other parameters.

IPv6 Cache

An IPv6 host is required to have a neighbor cache, destination cache, prefix list and default router list. The Switch maintains and updates its IPv6 caches constantly using the information from response messages. In IPv6, the Switch configures a link-local address automatically, and then sends a neighbor solicitation message to check if the address is unique. If there is an address to be resolved or verified, the Switch also sends out a neighbor solicitation message. When the Switch receives a neighbor advertisement in response, it stores the neighbor's link-layer address in the neighbor cache. When the Switch uses a router solicitation message to query for a router and receives a router advertisement message, it adds the router's information to the neighbor cache, prefix list and destination cache. The Switch creates an entry in the default router list cache if the router can be used as a default router.

When the Switch needs to send a packet, it first consults the destination cache to determine the next hop. If there is no matching entry in the destination cache, the Switch uses the prefix list to determine whether the destination address is on-link and can be reached directly without passing through a router. If the address is onlink, the address is considered as the next hop. Otherwise, the Switch determines the next-hop from the default router list or routing table. Once the next hop IP address is known, the Switch looks into the neighbor cache to get the link-layer address and sends the packet when the neighbor is reachable. If the Switch cannot find an entry in the neighbor cache or the state for the neighbor is not reachable, it starts the address resolution process. This helps reduce the number of IPv6 solicitation and advertisement messages.

Example - Enabling IPv6 on Windows XP/2003/Vista

By default, Windows XP and Windows 2003 support IPv6. This example shows you how to use the `ipv6 install` command on Windows XP/2003 to enable IPv6. This also displays how to use the `ipconfig` command to see auto-generated IP addresses.

```
C:\>ipv6 install
Installing...
Succeeded.

C:\>ipconfig

Windows IP Configuration

Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:

    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . :
    IP Address. . . . . : 10.1.1.46
    Subnet Mask . . . . . : 255.255.255.0
    IP Address. . . . . : fe80::2d0:59ff:feb8:103c%4
    Default Gateway . . . . . : 10.1.1.254
```

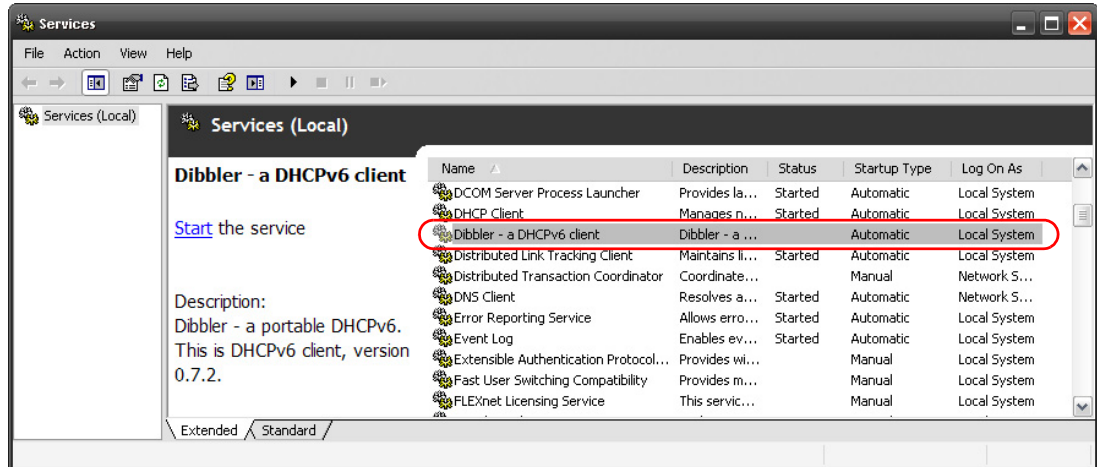
IPv6 is installed and enabled by default in Windows Vista. Use the `ipconfig` command to check your automatic configured IPv6 address as well. You should see at least one IPv6 address available for the interface on your computer.

Example - Enabling DHCPv6 on Windows XP

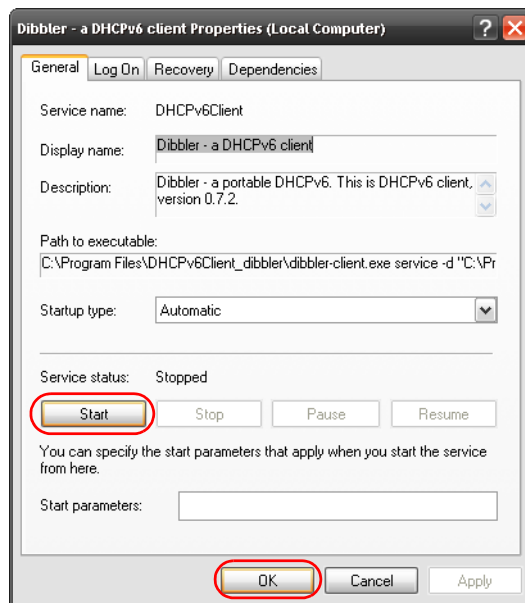
Windows XP does not support DHCPv6. If your network uses DHCPv6 for IP address assignment, you have to additionally install a DHCPv6 client software on your Windows XP. (Note: If you use static IP addresses or Router Advertisement for IPv6 address assignment in your network, ignore this section.)

This example uses Dibbler as the DHCPv6 client. To enable DHCPv6 client on your computer:

- 1 Install Dibbler and select the DHCPv6 client option on your computer.
- 2 After the installation is complete, select **Start > All Programs > Dibbler-DHCPv6 > Client Install as service**.
- 3 Select **Start > Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services**.
- 4 Double click **Dibbler - a DHCPv6 client**.



- 5 Click **Start** and then **OK**.



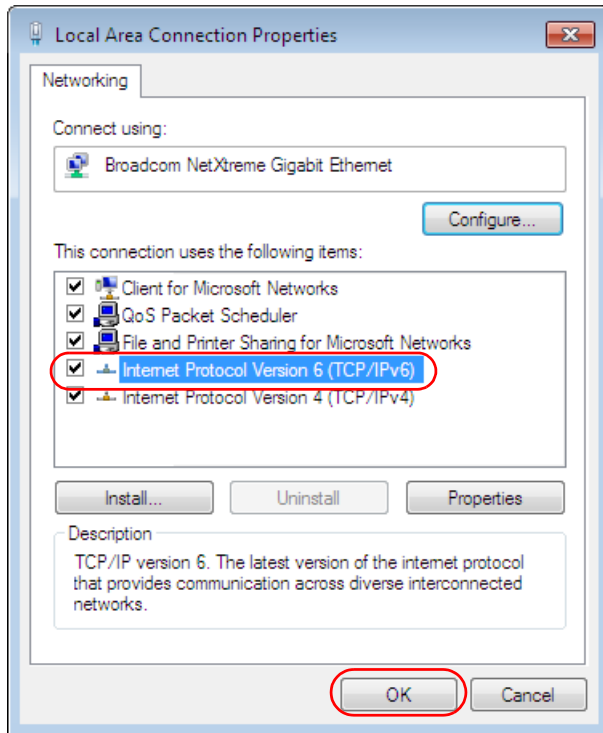
- 6 Now your computer can obtain an IPv6 address from a DHCPv6 server.

Example - Enabling IPv6 on Windows 7

Windows 7 supports IPv6 by default. DHCPv6 is also enabled when you enable IPv6 on a Windows 7 computer.

To enable IPv6 in Windows 7:

- 1 Select **Control Panel > Network and Sharing Center > Local Area Connection**.
- 2 Select the **Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPv6)** check box to enable it.
- 3 Click **OK** to save the change.



- 4 Click **Close** to exit the **Local Area Connection Status** screen.
- 5 Select **Start > All Programs > Accessories > Command Prompt**.
- 6 Use the `ipconfig` command to check your dynamic IPv6 address. This example shows a global address (2001:b021:2d::1000) obtained from a DHCP server.

```
C:\>ipconfig

Windows IP Configuration

Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:

    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . : 
    IPv6 Address. . . . . : 2001:b021:2d::1000
    Link-local IPv6 Address . . . . . : fe80::25d8:dcab:c80a:5189%11
    IPv4 Address. . . . . : 172.16.100.61
    Subnet Mask . . . . . : 255.255.255.0
    Default Gateway . . . . . : fe80::213:49ff:feaa:7125%11
                                172.16.100.254
```


APPENDIX C

Legal Information

Copyright

Copyright © 2024 Zyxel and/ or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Zyxel Communications Corporation.

Published by Zyxel Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

Disclaimer

Zyxel does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. Zyxel further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

Regulatory Notice and Statement

United States of America



The following information applies if you use the product within USA area.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) EMC Statement

- This device complies with Part 15 of FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
 - (1) This device may not cause harmful interference.
 - (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operations.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
- This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Canada

The following information applies if you use the product within Canada area

Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada ICES Statement

CAN ICES-3 (A)/NMB-3(A)

European Union



The following information applies if you use the product within the European Union.

CE EMC statement

WARNING: This equipment is compliant with Class A of EN55032. In a residential environment this equipment may cause radio interference.

List of National Codes

COUNTRY	ISO 3166 2 LETTER CODE	COUNTRY	ISO 3166 2 LETTER CODE
Austria	AT	Liechtenstein	LI
Belgium	BE	Lithuania	LT
Bulgaria	BG	Luxembourg	LU
Croatia	HR	Malta	MT
Cyprus	CY	Netherlands	NL
Czech Republic	CR	Norway	NO
Denmark	DK	Poland	PL
Estonia	EE	Portugal	PT
Finland	FI	Romania	RO
France	FR	Serbia	RS
Germany	DE	Slovakia	SK
Greece	GR	Slovenia	SI
Hungary	HU	Spain	ES
Iceland	IS	Sweden	SE
Ireland	IE	Switzerland	CH
Italy	IT	Turkey	TR
Latvia	LV	United Kingdom	GB

Safety Warnings

- Do not use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Do not expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids.
- Do not store things on the device.
- Do not install, use, or service this device during a thunderstorm. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.
- Do not open the device or unit. Opening or removing covers can expose you to dangerous high voltage points or other risks. Only qualified service personnel should service or disassemble this device. Please contact your vendor for further information.
- Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports.
- Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them.
- Always disconnect all cables from this device before servicing or disassembling.
- Do not remove the plug and connect it to a power outlet by itself; always attach the plug to the power adaptor first before connecting it to a power outlet.
- Do not allow anything to rest on the power adaptor or cord and do NOT place the product where anyone can walk on the power adaptor or cord.
- Please use the provided or designated connection cables/power cables/ adaptors. Connect it to the right supply voltage (for example, 110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe). If the power adaptor or cord is damaged, it might cause electrocution. Remove it from the device and the power source, repairing the power adaptor or cord is prohibited. Contact your local vendor to order a new one.
- Do not use the device outside, and make sure all the connections are indoors. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Caution: Risk of explosion if battery is replaced by an incorrect type, dispose of used batteries according to the instruction. Dispose them at the applicable collection point for the recycling of electrical and electronic device. For detailed information about recycling of this product, please contact your local city office, your household waste disposal service or the store where you purchased the product.
- Use ONLY power wires of the appropriate wire gauge for your device. Connect it to a power supply of the correct voltage.
- Fuse Warning! Replace a fuse only with a fuse of the same type and rating.
- The POE (Power over Ethernet) devices that supply or receive power and their connected Ethernet cables must all be completely indoors.
- Do not obstruct the device ventilation slots as insufficient airflow may harm your device. For example, do not place the device in an enclosed space such as a box or on a very soft surface such as a bed or sofa.
- The following warning statements apply, where the disconnect device is not incorporated in the device or where the plug on the power supply cord is intended to serve as the disconnect device.
 - For permanently connected devices, a readily accessible disconnect device shall be incorporated external to the device;
 - For pluggable devices, the socket-outlet shall be installed near the device and shall be easily accessible.
- This device must be grounded. Never defeat the ground conductor or operate the device in the absence of a suitably installed ground conductor. Contact the appropriate electrical inspection authority or an electrician if you are uncertain that suitable grounding is available.
- When connecting or disconnecting power to hot-pluggable power supplies, if offered with your system, observe the following guidelines:
 - Install the power supply before connecting the power cable to the power supply.
 - Unplug the power cable before removing the power supply.
 - If the system has multiple sources of power, disconnect power from the system by unplugging all power cables from the power supply.

Environment Statement

European Union - Disposal and Recycling Information

The symbol below means that according to local regulations your product and/or its battery shall be disposed of separately from domestic waste. If this product is end of life, take it to a recycling station designated by local authorities. At the time of disposal, the separate collection of your product and/or its battery will help save natural resources and ensure that the environment is sustainable development.

Die folgende Symbol bedeutet, dass Ihr Produkt und/oder seine Batterie gemäß den örtlichen Bestimmungen getrennt vom Hausmüll entsorgt werden muss. Wenden Sie sich an eine Recyclingstation, wenn dieses Produkt das Ende seiner Lebensdauer erreicht hat. Zum Zeitpunkt der Entsorgung wird die getrennte Sammlung von Produkt und/oder seiner Batterie dazu beitragen, natürliche Ressourcen zu sparen und die Umwelt und die menschliche Gesundheit zu schützen.

El símbolo de abajo indica que según las regulaciones locales, su producto y/o su batería deberán depositarse como basura separada de la doméstica. Cuando este producto alcance el final de su vida útil, llévelo a un punto limpio. Cuando llegue el momento de desechar el producto, la recogida por separado éste y/o su batería ayudará a salvar los recursos naturales y a proteger la salud humana y medioambiental.

Le symbole ci-dessous signifie que selon les réglementations locales votre produit et/ou sa batterie doivent être éliminés séparément des ordures ménagères. Lorsque ce produit atteint sa fin de vie, amenez-le à un centre de recyclage. Au moment de la mise au rebut, la collecte séparée de votre produit et/ou de sa batterie aidera à économiser les ressources naturelles et protéger l'environnement et la santé humaine.

Il simbolo sotto significa che secondo i regolamenti locali il vostro prodotto e/o batteria deve essere smaltito separatamente dai rifiuti domestici. Quando questo prodotto raggiunge la fine della vita di servizio portarlo a una stazione di riciclaggio. Al momento dello smaltimento, la raccolta separata dei vostro prodotto e/o della sua batteria aiuta a risparmiare risorse naturali e a proteggere l'ambiente e la salute umana.

Symbolen innebär att enligt lokal lagstiftning ska produkten och/eller dess batteri kastas separat från hushållsavfallet. När den här produkten når slutet av sin livslängd ska du ta den till en återvinningsstation. Vid tiden för kasseringen bidrar du till en bättre miljö och mänsklig hälsa genom att göra dig av med den på ett återvinningsställe.



台灣

以下訊息僅適用於產品銷售至台灣地區

這是甲類的資訊產品，在居住的環境中使用時，可能會造成射頻干擾，在這種情況下，使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

安全警告

為了您的安全，請先閱讀以下警告及指示：


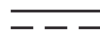


- 請勿將此產品接近水、火焰或放置在高溫的環境。
- 避免設備接觸
任何液體 - 切勿讓設備接觸水、雨水、高濕度、污水腐蝕性的液體或其他水份。
灰塵及污物 - 切勿接觸灰塵、污物、沙土、食物或其他不適合的材料。
- 雷雨天氣時，不要安裝、使用或維修此設備。有遭受電擊的風險。
- 切勿重摔或撞擊設備，並勿使用不正確的電源變壓器。
- 若接上不正確的電源變壓器會有爆炸的風險。
- 請勿將設備解體。
- 請勿阻礙設備的散熱孔，空氣對流不足將會造成設備損害。
- 請插在正確的電壓供給插座（如：北美 / 台灣電壓 110V AC，歐洲是 230V AC）。
- 假若電源變壓器或電源變壓器的纜線損壞，請從插座拔除，若您還繼續插電使用，會有觸電死亡的風險。
- 請勿試圖修理電源變壓器或電源變壓器的纜線，若有毀損，請直接聯絡您購買的店家，購買一個新的電源變壓器。
- 請勿將此設備安裝於室外，此設備僅適合放置於室內。
- 請勿隨一般垃圾丟棄。
- 請參閱產品背貼上的設備額定功率。
- 請參考產品型錄或是彩盒上的作業溫度。
- 設備必須接地，接地導線不允許被破壞或沒有適當安裝接地導線，如果不確定接地方式是否符合要求可聯繫相應的電氣檢驗機構檢驗。
- 如果您提供的系統中有提供熱插拔電源，連接或斷開電源請遵循以下指導原則
 - 先連接電源線至設備連，再連接電源。
 - 先斷開電源再拔除連接至設備的電源線。
 - 如果系統有多個電源，需拔除所有連接至電源的電源線再關閉設備電源。

- 產品沒有斷電裝置或者採用電源線的插頭視為斷電裝置的一部分，以下警語將適用：
 - 對永久連接之設備，在設備外部須安裝可觸及之斷電裝置；
 - 對插接式之設備，插座必須接近安裝之地點而且是易於觸及的。

About the Symbols

Various symbols are used in this product to ensure correct usage, to prevent danger to the user and others, and to prevent property damage. The meaning of these symbols are described below. It is important that you read these descriptions thoroughly and fully understand the contents.

Explanation of the Symbols

SYMBOL	EXPLANATION
	Alternating current (AC): AC is an electric current in which the flow of electric charge periodically reverses direction.
	Direct current (DC): DC is the unidirectional flow or movement of electric charge carriers.
	Earth; ground: A wiring terminal intended for connection of a Protective Earthing Conductor.
	Class II equipment: The method of protection against electric shock in the case of class II equipment is either double insulation or reinforced insulation.

Zyxel Limited Warranty

Zyxel warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in material or workmanship for a specific period (the Warranty Period) from the date of purchase. The Warranty Period varies by region. Check with your vendor and/or the authorized Zyxel local distributor for details about the Warranty Period of this product. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, Zyxel will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal or higher value, and will be solely at the discretion of Zyxel. This warranty shall not apply if the product has been modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

Trademarks

ZyNOS (Zyxel Network Operating System) and ZON (Zyxel One Network) are registered trademarks of Zyxel Communications, Inc. Other trademarks mentioned in this publication are used for identification purposes only and may be properties of their respective owners.

Open Source Licenses

This product contains in part some free software distributed under GPL license terms and/or GPL like licenses.

To request the source code covered under these licenses, please go to: <https://service-provider.zyxel.com/global/en/gpl-oss-software-notice>.

Numbers

802.1P priority [92](#)

A

access control

limitations [365](#)

login account [376](#)

remote management [386](#)

service port [385](#)

SNMP [365](#)

accounting

setup [233](#)

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) [352](#), [402](#), [405](#), [407](#)

administrator password [377](#)

age [145](#)

aggregator ID [163](#), [165](#)

aging time [88](#)

applications

backbone [19](#)

bridging [20](#)

IEEE 802.1Q VLAN [21](#)

switched workgroup [20](#)

ARP

how it works [352](#), [402](#)

learning mode [352](#)

overview [352](#)

setup [354](#)

table [402](#)

ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) [402](#)

ARP inspection [241](#), [243](#)

and MAC filter [244](#)

configuring [244](#)

syslog messages [244](#)

trusted ports [244](#)

ARP-Reply [352](#)

ARP-Request [353](#)

authentication

and RADIUS [228](#)

setup [233](#)

authorization

privilege levels [236](#)

setup [233](#)

auto-crossover [31](#)

automatic VLAN registration [106](#)

B

back up, configuration file [360](#)

basic settings [83](#)

basic setup tutorial [52](#)

binding [241](#)

binding table [241](#)

building [241](#)

BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) [133](#)

Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) [133](#)

C

CDP [270](#)

CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) [105](#)

changing the password [45](#)

Cisco Discovery Protocol, see CDP

CIST [136](#)

CIST (Common and Internal Spanning Tree) [134](#)

Class of Service (CoS) [330](#)

classifier [184](#), [187](#)

and QoS [184](#)

editing [187](#)

example [188](#)

overview [184](#)

setup [184](#), [187](#)

viewing [187](#)

cloning a port See port cloning [407](#)

cluster management [393](#)

and switch passwords [398](#)

cluster manager [393](#), [397](#)

- cluster member [393, 398](#)
 - cluster member firmware upgrade [395](#)
 - network example [393](#)
 - setup [396](#)
 - specification [393](#)
 - status [394](#)
 - switch models [393](#)
 - VID [397](#)
 - web configurator [394](#)
 - cluster manager [393](#)
 - cluster member [393](#)
 - Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) [134](#)
 - Common and Internal Spanning Tree, See CIST [136](#)
 - configuration [329](#)
 - change running config [357](#)
 - file names [362](#)
 - configuration file [46](#)
 - backup [360](#)
 - restore [46, 360](#)
 - saving [357](#)
 - configuration, saving [45](#)
 - console port [30](#)
 - copying port settings, See port cloning [407](#)
 - copyright [425](#)
 - CPU management port [121](#)
 - CPU protection
 - configuration [286](#)
 - overview [284](#)
 - current date [86](#)
 - current time [86](#)
- ## D
- daylight saving time [86](#)
 - default Ethernet settings [31](#)
 - DHCP [338](#)
 - configuration options [338](#)
 - modes [338](#)
 - relay agent [338](#)
 - relay example [346](#)
 - setup [338, 344](#)
 - DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) [338](#)
 - DHCP relay option 82 [242](#)
 - DHCP snooping [52, 241](#)
 - configuring [243](#)
 - DHCP relay option 82 [242](#)
 - trusted ports [242](#)
 - untrusted ports [242](#)
 - DHCP snooping database [242](#)
 - DHCPv6 relay [347](#)
 - interface-ID [347](#)
 - remote-ID [347](#)
 - diagnostics [388](#)
 - Ethernet port test [389](#)
 - ping [388](#)
 - system log [388](#)
 - Differentiated Service (DiffServ) [330](#)
 - DiffServ [330](#)
 - activate [333](#)
 - and TRTCM [335](#)
 - DS field [330](#)
 - DSCP [330](#)
 - network example [330](#)
 - PHB [330](#)
 - disclaimer [425](#)
 - double-tagged frames [198](#)
 - DS (Differentiated Services) [330](#)
 - DSCP
 - service level [330](#)
 - what it does [330](#)
 - DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) [330](#)
 - dual firmware images [359](#)
 - dynamic link aggregation [161](#)
- ## E
- egress port [124](#)
 - errdisable status [286](#)
 - Error Disable [65](#)
 - error disable
 - control packets [286](#)
 - status [285](#)
 - error disable detect [287](#)
 - error disable recovery
 - configuration [288](#)
 - overview [284](#)
 - Ethernet broadcast address [352, 402](#)
 - Ethernet port test [389](#)
 - external authentication server [228](#)

F

- fan speed [84](#)
- FCC interference statement [425](#)
- file transfer using FTP
 - command example [363](#)
- filename convention, configuration [362](#)
- filtering [130](#)
 - rules [130](#)
- filtering database, MAC table [399](#)
- firmware [84](#)
 - upgrade [359](#), [395](#)
- flow control [92](#)
 - back pressure [92](#)
 - IEEE802.3x [92](#)
- forwarding
 - delay [145](#)
- frames
 - tagged [112](#)
 - untagged [112](#)
- front panel [29](#)
- FTP [362](#)
 - file transfer procedure [363](#)
 - restrictions over WAN [364](#)

G

- GARP [106](#)
- GARP (Generic Attribute Registration Protocol) [106](#)
- GARP terminology [106](#)
- GARP timer [88](#), [106](#)
- general setup [85](#)
- getting help [47](#)
- Gigabit ports [30](#)
- GMT (Greenwich Mean Time) [86](#)
- gratuitous ARP [353](#)
- green Ethernet [292](#)
 - and uplink port [292](#)
 - auto power down [292](#)
 - EEE [292](#)
 - short reach [292](#)
- GVRP [106](#), [112](#)
 - and port assignment [112](#)
- GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) [106](#)

H

- hardware installation [23](#)
- hardware monitor [84](#)
- hardware overview [29](#)
- hello time [145](#)
- hops [145](#)
- HTTPS [380](#)
 - certificates [380](#)
 - implementation [380](#)
 - public keys, private keys [380](#)
- HTTPS example [381](#)

I

- IEEE 802.1p, priority [88](#)
- IEEE 802.1x
 - activate [170](#), [173](#), [231](#)
 - reauthentication [171](#)
- IEEE 802.1x, port authentication [168](#)
- IEEE 802.3az [292](#)
- IGMP
 - version [205](#)
- IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) [205](#)
- IGMP filtering [205](#)
 - profile [212](#)
 - profiles [209](#)
- IGMP leave timeout
 - fast [210](#)
 - normal [210](#)
- IGMP snooping [205](#)
 - MVR [221](#)
- IGMP throttling [210](#)
- ingress port [124](#)
- installation
 - desktop [23](#)
 - precautions [24](#)
 - rack-mounting [23](#)
 - transceivers [31](#)
- installation scenarios [23](#)
- Internet Protocol version 6, see IPv6
- introduction [19](#)
- IP address [90](#)
- IP interface [89](#)

- IP setup [89](#)
 - IP source guard [241](#)
 - ARP inspection [241, 243](#)
 - DHCP snooping [241](#)
 - static bindings [241](#)
 - IP subnet mask [90](#)
 - IPv6 [22, 417](#)
 - addressing [417](#)
 - EUI-64 [419](#)
 - global address [417](#)
 - interface ID [419](#)
 - link-local address [417](#)
 - Neighbor Discovery Protocol [22, 417](#)
 - neighbor table [408](#)
 - ping [22, 417](#)
 - prefix [417](#)
 - prefix length [417](#)
 - stateless autoconfiguration [419](#)
 - unspecified address [418](#)
 - IPv6 interface [93](#)
 - IPv6 multicast
 - [213](#)
 - status [213](#)
 - IPv6 neighbor table [408](#)
- ## L
- L2PT [268](#)
 - access port [269](#)
 - CDP [268](#)
 - configuration [269](#)
 - encapsulation [268](#)
 - LACP [268](#)
 - MAC address [268](#)
 - mode [269](#)
 - overview [268](#)
 - PAgP [268](#)
 - point to point [268](#)
 - STP [268](#)
 - tunnel port [269](#)
 - UDLD [268](#)
 - VTP [268](#)
 - LACP [161, 271](#)
 - system priority [166](#)
 - timeout [166](#)
 - Layer 2 protocol tunneling, see L2PT
 - LEDs [38](#)
 - limit MAC address learning [178](#)
 - Link Aggregate Control Protocol (LACP) [161](#)
 - link aggregation [161](#)
 - dynamic [161](#)
 - ID information [162](#)
 - setup [163, 165](#)
 - status [162](#)
 - traffic distribution algorithm [163](#)
 - traffic distribution type [164](#)
 - Link Layer Discovery Protocol [294](#)
 - LLDP [294](#)
 - Basic TLV [311](#)
 - global settings [310](#)
 - local port status [298](#)
 - organization-specific TLV [312](#)
 - status of remote device [303](#)
 - TLV [294](#)
 - LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) [294](#)
 - LLDP-MED [295](#)
 - classes of endpoint devices [295](#)
 - example [295](#)
 - local port mirroring [155](#)
 - lockout [46](#)
 - log [388](#)
 - login [40](#)
 - password [45](#)
 - login account
 - Administrator [376](#)
 - non-administrator [377](#)
 - login accounts [376](#)
 - configuring via web configurator [376](#)
 - multiple [376](#)
 - number of [376](#)
 - login password [377](#)
 - loop guard [262](#)
 - how it works [263](#)
 - port shut down [263](#)
 - probe packet [263](#)
 - loop guard, vs STP [262](#)
- ## M
- MAC (Media Access Control) [84](#)
 - MAC address [84, 402](#)

- maximum number per port [178](#)
- MAC address learning [88, 125, 178](#)
 - specify limit [178](#)
- MAC authentication [169](#)
 - aging time [174](#)
- MAC filter
 - and ARP inspection [244](#)
- MAC freeze [177](#)
- MAC table [399](#)
 - display criteria [400](#)
 - how it works [399](#)
 - sorting criteria [400](#)
 - transfer type [401](#)
 - viewing [400](#)
- MAC-based VLAN [118](#)
- maintenance [356](#)
 - configuration backup [360](#)
 - current configuration [356](#)
 - firmware [359](#)
 - main screen [356](#)
 - restoring configuration [360](#)
- Management Information Base (MIB) [366](#)
- management port [124](#)
- managing the device
 - good habits [22](#)
 - using FTP. See FTP. [22](#)
 - using Telnet. See command interface. [22](#)
 - using the command interface. See command interface. [22](#)
- man-in-the-middle attacks [243](#)
- max
 - age [145](#)
 - hops [145](#)
- maximum transmission unit [404](#)
- MDIX (Media Dependent Interface Crossover) [31](#)
- Metric [328](#)
- MIB
 - and SNMP [366](#)
 - supported MIBs [366](#)
- MIB (Management Information Base) [366](#)
- mirroring ports [155](#)
- MLD filtering profile [220](#)
- MLD snooping-proxy [214](#)
 - filtering [218](#)
 - filtering profile [220](#)
 - port role [216](#)
 - VLAN ID [215](#)
- monitor port [157](#)
- mounting brackets [24](#)
- MST Instance, See MSTI [135](#)
- MST region [135](#)
- MSTI [135](#)
 - MST ID [135](#)
- MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance) [134](#)
- MSTP [132, 134](#)
 - bridge ID [148, 149](#)
 - configuration [144, 146](#)
 - configuration digest [149](#)
 - forwarding delay [145](#)
 - Hello Time [148](#)
 - hello time [145](#)
 - Max Age [148](#)
 - max age [145](#)
 - max hops [145](#)
 - MST region [135](#)
 - network example [134](#)
 - path cost [146](#)
 - port priority [146](#)
 - revision level [145](#)
- MSTP (Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol) [132](#)
- MTU [404](#)
- MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) [87](#)
- multicast [205](#)
 - 802.1 priority [209](#)
 - and IGMP [205](#)
 - IGMP throttling [210](#)
 - IP addresses [205](#)
 - overview [205](#)
 - setup [207, 208, 209](#)
- multicast group [212](#)
- multicast VLAN [224](#)
- Multiple Spanning Tree Instance, See MSTI [134](#)
- Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol [133](#)
- Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol, See MSTP. [132](#)
- Multiple STP [133](#)
- Multiple STP, see MSTP [134](#)
- MVR [221](#)
 - configuration [222](#)
 - group configuration [224](#)
 - network example [221](#)
- MVR (Multicast VLAN Registration) [221](#)

N

network applications [19](#)
 network management system (NMS) [365](#)
 NTP (RFC-1305) [85](#)

P

PAGP [271](#)
 password [45](#)
 administrator [377](#)
 Path MTU [404](#)
 Path MTU Discovery [404](#)
 PHB (Per-Hop Behavior) [330](#)
 ping, test connection [388](#)
 policy [191, 193](#)
 and classifier [191](#)
 and DiffServ [190](#)
 configuration [191](#)
 example [193](#)
 overview [190](#)
 rules [190](#)
 viewing [192](#)
 policy configuration [193](#)
 Port Aggregation Protocol, see PAGP
 port authentication [168](#)
 and RADIUS [229](#)
 IEEE802.1x [170, 173, 231](#)
 MAC authentication [169](#)
 port based VLAN type [88](#)
 port cloning [405, 407](#)
 advanced settings [405, 407](#)
 basic settings [405, 407](#)
 port details [79](#)
 port isolation [124](#)
 port mirroring [155, 157](#)
 direction [157, 159](#)
 egress [157, 159](#)
 ingress [157, 159](#)
 port redundancy [161](#)
 port security [176](#)
 address learning [178](#)
 limit MAC address learning [178](#)
 MAC address learning [176](#)
 overview [176](#)
 setup [176, 263, 269](#)
 port setup [91](#)
 port status [78](#)
 port VLAN trunking [107](#)
 port-based VLAN [121](#)
 all connected [124](#)
 port isolation [124](#)
 settings wizard [124](#)
 ports
 "standby" [161](#)
 diagnostics [389](#)
 mirroring [155](#)
 speed/duplex [92](#)
 power connector [33](#)
 power status [84](#)
 power voltage [84](#)
 PPPoE IA [59](#)
 trusted ports [278](#)
 untrusted ports [278](#)
 priority level [88](#)
 priority, queue assignment [88](#)
 private VLAN [290](#)
 configuration [290](#)
 isolated port [290](#)
 overview [290](#)
 promiscuous port [290](#)
 protocol based VLAN [115](#)
 and IEEE 802.1Q tagging [115](#)
 example [117](#)
 hexadecimal notation for protocols [114, 116](#)
 isolate traffic [115](#)
 priority [114, 116](#)
 PVID [105, 112](#)
 PVID (Priority Frame) [105](#)

Q

QoS
 and classifier [184](#)
 queue weight [196](#)
 queuing [195](#)
 SPQ [196](#)
 WRR [196](#)
 queuing method [195, 197](#)

R

- rack-mounting [23](#)
- RADIUS [228](#)
 - advantages [229](#)
 - and authentication [228](#)
 - Network example [228](#)
 - server [229](#)
 - settings [229](#)
 - setup [229](#)
- Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol, See RSTP. [132](#)
- reboot
 - load configuration [357](#)
- reboot system [357](#)
- reflector port [155](#)
- remote management [386](#)
 - service [387](#)
 - trusted computers [387](#)
- remote port mirroring [155](#)
- resetting [46, 357](#)
 - to factory default settings [357](#)
- restoring configuration [46, 360](#)
- RFC 3164 [390](#)
- RMirror [155](#)
 - monitor port [158](#)
 - reflector port [158](#)
 - source [158](#)
- Round Robin Scheduling [196](#)
- RSTP [132](#)

S

- save configuration [45, 357](#)
- service access control [385](#)
 - service port [386](#)
- sFlow [272](#)
 - collector [274](#)
 - configuration [272](#)
 - datagram [272](#)
 - overview [272](#)
 - poll interval [273](#)
 - sample rate [273](#)
 - UDP port [274](#)
- sFlow agent [272](#)
- sFlow collector [272](#)
- Simple Network Management Protocol, see SNMP [365](#)
- Small Form-factor Pluggable (SFP) [31](#)
- SNMP [365](#)
 - agent [366](#)
 - and MIB [366](#)
 - and security [366](#)
 - authentication [375, 376](#)
 - communities [372](#)
 - management model [366](#)
 - manager [366](#)
 - MIB [366](#)
 - network components [366](#)
 - object variables [366](#)
 - protocol operations [366](#)
 - security [375, 376](#)
 - setup [371, 373](#)
 - users [375](#)
 - version 3 [366](#)
 - versions supported [365](#)
- SNMP traps [367](#)
 - setup [373](#)
 - supported [367, 368, 369, 371](#)
- Spanning Tree Protocol, See STP. [132](#)
- SPQ (Strict Priority Queuing) [196](#)
- SSH
 - encryption methods [379](#)
 - how it works [378](#)
 - implementation [379](#)
- SSH (Secure Shell) Secure Shell, See SSH [378](#)
- SSL (Secure Socket Layer) [380](#)
- standby ports [161](#)
- static bindings [241](#)
- static MAC address [125](#)
- static MAC forwarding [125](#)
- static multicast address [127](#)
- static multicast forwarding [127](#)
- Static route
 - Setup [328](#)
- static routes [329](#)
- static trunking example [166](#)
- Static VLAN [109](#)
- static VLAN
 - control [111](#)
 - tagging [111](#)
- status [78](#)
 - link aggregation [162](#)

- port [78](#)
- port details [79](#)
- power [84](#)
- STP [140, 143, 148](#)
- VLAN [108](#)
- STP [132, 270](#)
 - bridge ID [140, 143](#)
 - bridge priority [138, 141](#)
 - configuration [137, 141, 144](#)
 - designated bridge [133](#)
 - forwarding delay [139, 142](#)
 - Hello BPDU [133](#)
 - Hello Time [138, 140, 141, 143](#)
 - how it works [133](#)
 - Max Age [139, 140, 142, 143](#)
 - path cost [132, 139, 142](#)
 - port priority [139, 142](#)
 - port state [133](#)
 - root port [133](#)
 - status [140, 143, 148](#)
 - terminology [132](#)
 - vs loop guard [262](#)
- subnet based VLAN [113](#)
- subnet based VLANs [112](#)
 - and DHCP VLAN [114](#)
 - and priority [113](#)
 - configuration [113](#)
- switch lockout [46](#)
- switch reset [46](#)
- switch setup [87](#)
- syslog [244, 390](#)
 - protocol [390](#)
 - server setup [391](#)
 - settings [390](#)
 - setup [390](#)
 - severity levels [390](#)
- system information [83](#)
- system log [388](#)
- system reboot [357](#)
- tagged VLAN [105](#)
- Tech-Support [361](#)
 - log enhancement [361](#)
- temperature indicator [84](#)
- terminal emulation [30](#)
- time
 - current [86](#)
 - time zone [86](#)
- Time (RFC-868) [85](#)
- time server [85](#)
- time service protocol [85](#)
 - format [85](#)
- trademarks [428](#)
- transceiver MultiSource Agreement (MSA) [31](#)
- transceivers [31](#)
 - installation [31](#)
 - removal [32](#)
- traps
 - destination [372](#)
- TRTCM
 - and bandwidth control [334](#)
 - and DiffServ [335](#)
 - color-aware mode [332](#)
 - color-blind mode [332](#)
 - setup [334](#)
- trunk group [161](#)
- trunking [161](#)
 - example [166](#)
- trusted ports
 - ARP inspection [244](#)
 - DHCP snooping [242](#)
 - PPPoE IA [278](#)
- Tunnel Protocol Attribute, and RADIUS [237](#)
- tutorials [52](#)
 - DHCP snooping [52](#)
 - Error Disable [65](#)
 - PPPoE IA [59](#)
- Two Rate Three Color Marker (TRTCM) [331](#)
- Type of Service (ToS) [330](#)

T

- TACACS+ [228](#)
 - setup [231](#)
- TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus) [228](#)

U

- UDLD [271](#)
- UniDirectional Link Detection, see UDLD
- untrusted ports

ARP inspection [244](#)
 DHCP snooping [242](#)
 PPPoE IA [278](#)
 user profiles [228](#)

V

Vendor Specific Attribute See VSA

ventilation [23](#)

VID [105](#), [108](#), [109](#), [200](#)

number of possible VIDs [105](#)

priority frame [105](#)

VID (VLAN Identifier) [105](#)

VLAN [86](#), [105](#)

acceptable frame type [112](#)

automatic registration [106](#)

ID [105](#)

ingress filtering [112](#)

introduction [86](#)

number of VLANs [108](#)

port number [109](#)

port settings [111](#)

port-based VLAN [121](#)

port-based, all connected [124](#)

port-based, isolation [124](#)

port-based, wizard [124](#)

static VLAN [109](#)

status [108](#), [109](#)

tagged [105](#)

trunking [107](#), [112](#)

type [88](#), [107](#)

VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) [86](#)

VLAN ID [90](#)

VLAN mapping [265](#)

activating [265](#)

configuration [266](#)

example [265](#)

priority level [265](#)

tagged [265](#)

traffic flow [265](#)

untagged [265](#)

VLAN ID [265](#)

VLAN stacking [198](#), [200](#)

configuration [200](#)

example [198](#)

frame format [200](#)

port roles [199](#), [201](#)

port-based Q-in-Q [202](#)

priority [200](#)

selective Q-in-Q [203](#)

VLAN Trunking Protocol, see VTP

VLAN, protocol based, See protocol based VLAN

VLAN, subnet based, See subnet based VLANs [112](#)

VSA [236](#)

VT100 [30](#)

VTP [270](#)

W

warranty [428](#)

web configurator [40](#)

getting help [47](#)

layout [41](#)

login [40](#)

logout [47](#)

navigation panel [42](#)

weight, queuing [196](#)

Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) [196](#)

WRR (Weighted Round Robin Scheduling) [196](#)

Z

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) [363](#)